CHAPTER 5

THE PELVIS AND PERINEUM

The pelvis is the area of transition between the trunk and the lower limbs. The bony pelvis serves as the foundation for the pelvic region and it provides strong support for the vertebral column upon the lower limbs. The pelvic cavity is continuous with the abdominal cavity, the transition occurring at the plane of the **pelvic inlet** (Fig. 5.01). The pelvic cavity contains the rectum, the urinary bladder, and the internal genitalia. **[G 185]**

The perineum is the region of the trunk that is located between the thighs. The **pelvic diaphragm** separates the pelvic cavity from the perineum (Fig. 5.01). The perineum contains the anal canal, the urethra, and the external genitalia (penis and scrotum in the male, vulva in the female).

This chapter begins with the dissection of structures in the anal triangle that are common to both sexes. Dissection of internal and external genitalia is divided into two sections, one for male cadavers and one for female cadavers. Students will be expected to demonstrate knowledge of both male and female anatomy in the pelvis and perineum. Each dissection team should partner with another dissection team that is working on a cadaver of the opposite sex.

SKELETON OF THE PELVIS

Refer to an articulated bony pelvis. The **pelvis** (L. *pelvis*, basin) is formed by two **hip bones (os coxae)** joined posteriorly by the **sacrum** (Fig. 5.02A). Each hip bone is formed by three fused bones: **pubis**, **ischium**, and **ilium**. The point of fusion of these three bones is the **acetabulum**. The **coccyx** is attached to the sacrum. **[G 185; N 341; R 422; C 253]**

On the hip bone, identify: **[G 184; N 340; R 419; C 250]**

- **Iliac fossa**
- **Iliopubic eminence**
- **Arcuate line**
- **Pecten pubis**
- **Superior pubic ramus**
- **Pubic symphysis**
- **Pubic arch**
- **Ischiopubic ramus**—formed by the ischial ramus and the inferior pubic ramus
- **Obturator foramen**
- **Ischial tuberosity**
- **Ischial spine**

On the sacrum identify: **[G 185; N 341; R 420; C 428]**

- **Sacral promontory**
- **Anterior sacral foramina**
- **Coccyx**

The hip bone and sacrum are connected by strong ligaments. On a model with pelvic ligaments, identify (Fig. 5.02A,B): **[G 186, 188; N 340; R 430; C 255, 257]**

- **Sacrotuberous ligament**
- **Sacrospinous ligament**
- **Obturator membrane**
- **Greater sciatic foramen**
- **Lesser sciatic foramen**

Note that the sacrotuberous ligament and sacrospinous ligament convert the **greater and lesser sciatic notches** into the **greater and lesser sciatic foramina.**

The sacroiliac articulation is a synovial joint between the auricular surfaces of the sacrum and the ilium. It is strengthened by an **anterior sacroiliac ligament** and a **posterior sacroiliac ligament** (Fig. 5.02A, B).

Identify the **pubic arch**. Note that the **subpubic angle** (angle of the pubic arch) is wider in females than males. **[G 190, 191; N 342; R 422; C 254, 255]**

Identify the **pelvic inlet (superior pelvic aperture)**. The bony rim of the pelvic inlet is called the **pelvic brim**. From anterior to posterior, identify the structures that form the pelvic brim: **[G 191; N 341; R 421; C 253]**

- **Superior margin of the pubic symphysis**
- **Posterior border of the pubic crest**
- **Pecten pubis**
- **Arcuate line of the ilium**

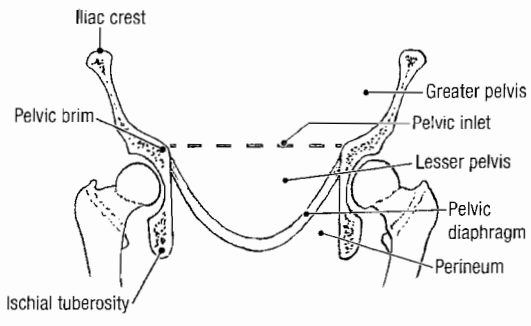


Figure 5.01. The pelvis on coronal section.

KEY TO REFERENCES
G = Grant's Atlas, 11th ed., page number
N = Netter's Atlas, 3rd ed., plate number
R = Rohen's Color Atlas of Anatomy, 5th ed., page number
C = Clemente's Atlas, 4th ed., page number

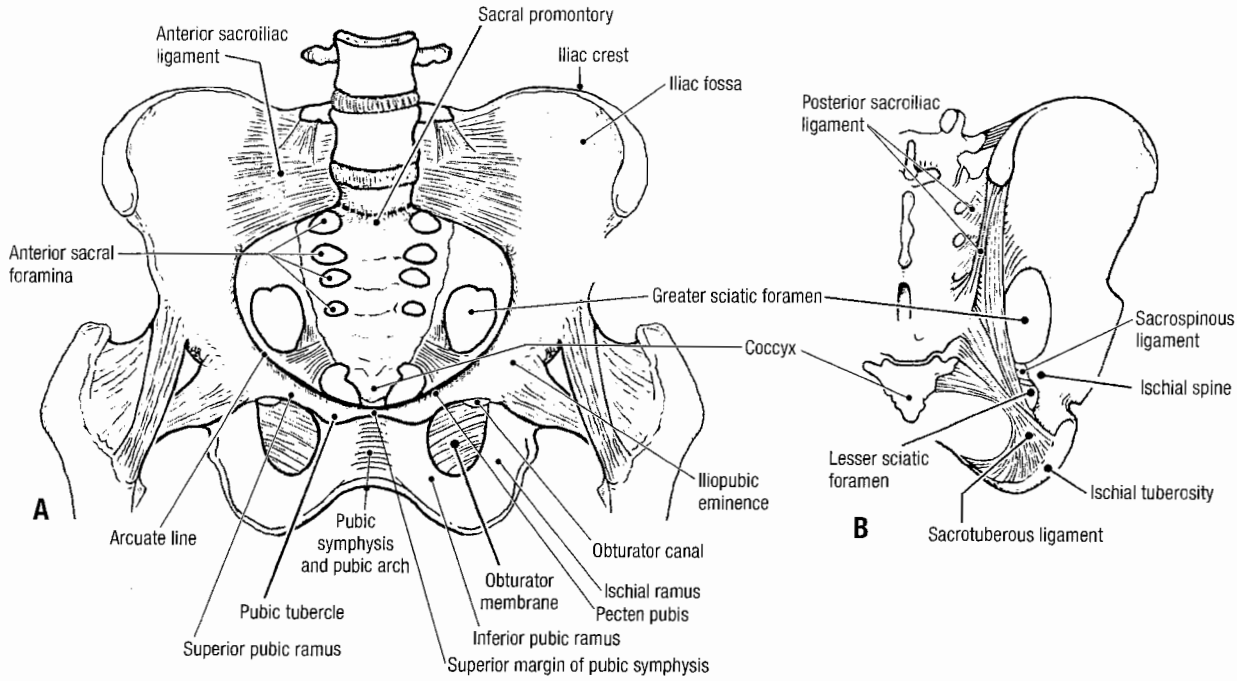


Figure 5.02. Bones and ligaments of the pelvis. **A.** Anterior view. **B.** Posterior view.

- **Anterior border of the ala (wing) of the sacrum**
- **Sacral promontory**

Identify the **pelvic outlet**. The pelvic outlet is bounded on each side by: **[G 192; N 340; R 430; C 256]**

- **Inferior margin of the pubic symphysis**
- **Ischiopubic ramus**
- **Ischial tuberosity**
- **Sacrotuberous ligament**
- **Tip of the coccyx**

The pelvic inlet divides the pelvis into the **greater (false) pelvis** and **lesser (true) pelvis** (Fig. 5.01). The greater pelvis is situated superior to the pelvic brim and is bounded bilaterally by the ala of the ilium. The lesser pelvis is located inferior to the pelvic brim. The inferior border of the lesser pelvis is the pelvic diaphragm. **[G 185]**

In the **erect posture** (anatomical position), the anterior superior iliac spines and the anterior aspect of the pubis are in the same vertical plane. In this position, the plane of the pelvic inlet forms an angle of approximately 55 degrees to the horizontal. A line connecting the superior aspect of the pubis with the tip of the coccyx lies in the horizontal plane. **[G 184; N 340; R 424]**

ANAL TRIANGLE

Before you dissect . . .

The **perineum** is a diamond-shaped area between the thighs that is divided for descriptive purposes into two triangles (Fig. 5.03). The **anal triangle** is the posterior part of the perineum and it contains the anal canal and anus. The **urogenital triangle** is the anterior part of the perineum and contains the urethra

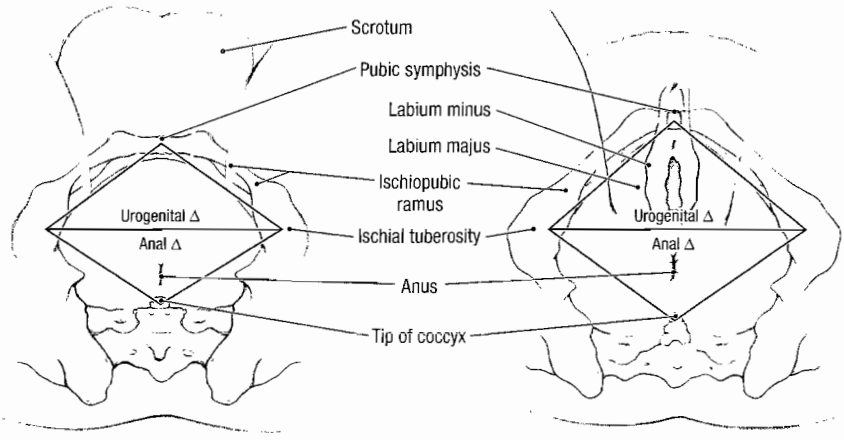


Figure 5.03. Boundaries of the urogenital and anal triangles in the male and female.

and the external genitalia. At the outset of dissection, it is important to understand that the *pelvic diaphragm separates the pelvic cavity from the perineum* (Fig. 5.01). **[G 185]**

The order of dissection will be as follows. Dissection of the anal triangle will begin with removal of skin from the gluteal region and partial reflection of the gluteus maximus muscle. The nerves and vessels of the ischioanal fossa will be dissected. The fat will be removed from the ischioanal fossa to reveal the inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm.

Dissection Instructions

SKIN INCISIONS

1. If the lower limb has been dissected previously, reflect the gluteus maximus muscle laterally and move ahead to the dissection of the *ischioanal fossa*. If the lower limb has not been dissected, continue with step 2.
2. Place the cadaver in the prone position.
3. Refer to Figure 5.04.
4. Make an incision that follows the lateral border of the sacrum and the iliac crest from the tip of the coccyx (S) to the midaxillary line (T). If the back has been skinned, this incision has been made previously.
5. Make a midline skin incision from "S" to the posterior edge of the anus.
6. Make an incision that encircles the anus.
7. Make an incision from the anterior edge of the anus down the medial surface of the thigh to point "D" (approximately 7.5 cm down the medial thigh).
8. Make an oblique skin incision from "D" across the posterior surface of the thigh to point "E" on the lateral surface of the thigh. Point E should be approximately 30 cm inferior to the iliac crest.
9. Make a skin incision along the lateral side of the thigh from "T" to "E."
10. Remove the skin from medial to lateral and place it in the tissue container.
11. Remove the superficial fascia from the surface of the gluteus maximus muscle and place it in the tissue container.

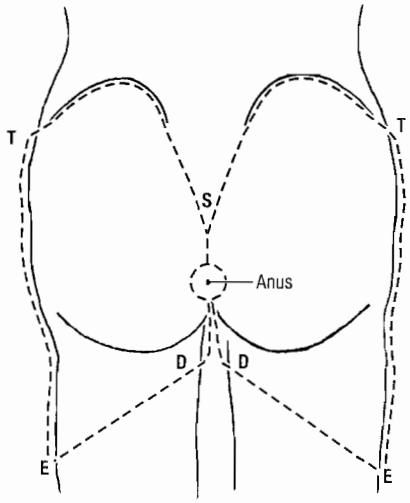


Figure 5.04. Skin incisions.

12. Clean the posterior surface of the **gluteus maximus muscle** (Fig. 5.05). Do not save the **inferior cluneal nerves**, but take care not to cut the deep fascia of the posterior thigh.
13. Use your hands to define the superior margin of the gluteus maximus muscle and separate it from the gluteal aponeurosis, which overlies the gluteus medius muscle (Fig. 5.05). The plane between the gluteus maximus muscle and the gluteus medius muscle can be found by observing the different directions of their muscle fibers.
14. Use scissors to cut the proximal attachment of the gluteus maximus muscle very close the posterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx (dotted line in Fig. 5.05). Start superiorly and work inferiorly. Insert your fingers under the superior margin of the gluteus maximus muscle and loosen it from deeper structures as you cut.
15. Inferiorly, the gluteus maximus muscle is attached to the **sacrotuberous ligament**. Use scissors to detach the gluteus maximus from the sacrotuberous ligament but do not cut the ligament.
16. Reflect the gluteus maximus muscle laterally until the inferior gluteal nerve and vessels prevent further reflection. The entire length of the sacrotuberous ligament should be visible.

ISCHIOANAL FOSSA

The **ischioanal (ischiorectal) fossa** is a wedge-shaped area on either side of the anus. The apex of the wedge is directed superiorly and the base is beneath the skin. The ischioanal fossa is filled with fat that helps accommodate the fetus during childbirth or the distended anal canal during the passage of feces. The ischioanal fat is part of the su-

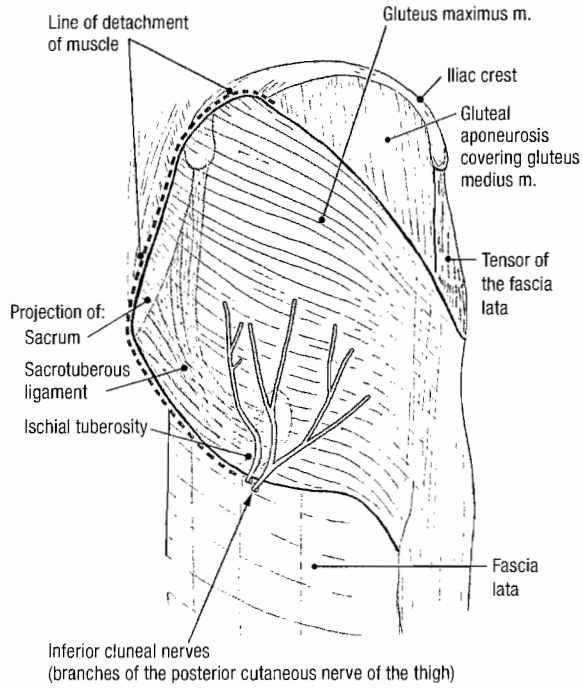


Figure 5.05. The cut used to reflect the gluteus maximus muscle.

perficial fascia of this region. The goal of this dissection is to remove the fat and identify the nerves and vessels that pass through the ischioanal fossa. [G 245; N 391; R 339; C 301]

1. Lateral to the anus, insert closed scissors 4 cm deep into the ischioanal fat. Open the scissors in the transverse direction to tear the fat (Incision, Fig. 5.06).
2. Insert your finger into the incision and move it back and forth (medial to lateral) to enlarge the opening.
3. Palpate the **inferior rectal (anal) nerve** and **vessels** (Fig. 5.06). Preserve the branches of the inferior rectal nerve and vessels but use blunt dissection to remove the fat that surrounds them. Dry the area with paper towels if necessary.
4. Use blunt dissection to clean the **external anal sphincter muscle** (Fig. 5.06). The external anal sphincter muscle has three parts:
   - **Subcutaneous** – encircling the anus (not visible in dissection)
   - **Superficial** – anchoring the anus to the perineal body and coccyx
   - **Deep** – a circular band that is fused with the pelvic diaphragm
5. Use blunt dissection to clean the **inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm** (medial boundary of the ischioanal fossa).
6. Use blunt dissection to clean the **fascia of the obturator internus muscle** (the lateral boundary of the ischioanal fossa).

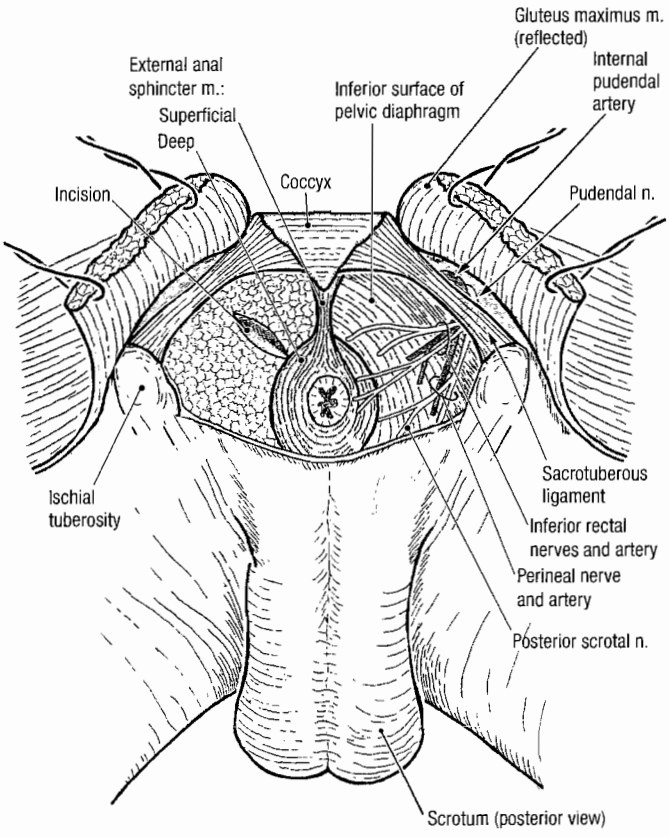


Figure 5.06. Initial incision used to begin the dissection of the ischioanal fossa.

7. Observe that the inferior rectal nerve and vessels penetrate the fascia of the obturator internus muscle. The inferior rectal vessels and nerve exit the **pudendal canal** to enter the ischioanal fossa.
8. Place gentle traction on the inferior rectal vessels and nerve and observe that a ridge is raised in the obturator internus fascia. Carefully incise the obturator fascia along this ridge to open the pudendal canal.
9. Use a probe to elevate the contents of the pudendal canal. The pudendal canal contains the **pudendal nerve** and the **internal pudendal artery and vein**.

After you dissect . . .

Review the boundaries of the true pelvis and the concept that the pelvic diaphragm separates the pelvic cavity from the perineum. In the dissected specimen, review the inferior surface of the pelvic diaphragm and understand that this is the "roof" of the perineum. Use the dissected specimen to review the lateral and medial walls of the ischioanal fossa. Review the external anal sphincter muscle and its blood and nerve supply. Understand that the external anal sphincter muscle is skeletal muscle under voluntary control.

MALE UROGENITAL TRIANGLE

If you are dissecting a female cadaver, go to the dissection of the *Female Urogenital Triangle* (page 110).

Before you dissect . . .

The order of dissection of the male urogenital triangle will be as follows. The skin will be removed from the urogenital triangle. The superficial perineal fascia will be removed and the contents of the superficial perineal pouch will be identified. The skin will be removed from the penis and its parts will be studied. The contents of the deep perineal pouch will be described, but not dissected.

Dissection Instructions

SKIN REMOVAL

1. The scrotum, testis, and spermatic cord were dissected with the anterior abdominal wall (Chapter 4). Review this material.
2. Place the cadaver in the supine position. Stretch the thighs widely apart and brace them. Usually, only one student can work on the urogenital triangle at a time. The dissector should be positioned between the thighs.
3. Make a skin incision that encircles the proximal end of the penis. The skin is very thin.
4. Make a midline skin incision posterior to the proximal end of the penis that splits the scrotum along the scrotal septum. Carry the cut posteriorly as far as the anus.
5. Make an incision in the midline superior to the penis. Stop where the skin of the abdomen was removed previously.

6. Reflect the skin flaps from medial to lateral. Detach the scrotum and skin flaps along the medial thigh and place them in the tissue container.
7. If the cadaver has a large amount of fat in the superficial fascia of the medial thighs, remove a portion of the superficial fascia starting at the ischiopubic ramus and extending down the medial thigh approximately 7 cm. Stay superficial to the deep fascia when removing the superficial fascia.
8. Note that the **posterior scrotal nerve and vessels** enter the urogenital triangle by passing lateral to the external anal sphincter muscle. The posterior scrotal nerve and vessels supply the posterior part of the scrotum.

SUPERFICIAL PERINEAL POUCH [G 245, 246; N 364; R 338; C 300]

The superficial perineal fascia has a superficial fatty layer and a deep membranous layer. The superficial fatty layer is continuous with the superficial fatty layer of the lower abdominal wall, ischioanal fossa, and thigh. The **membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia (Colles' fascia)** is continuous with the membranous layer of the superficial fascia of the anterior abdominal wall, and the **dartos fascia** of the penis and scrotum (Fig. 5.07A). The membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia is attached to the ischiopubic ramus as far posteriorly as the ischial tuberosity and to the posterior edge of the **perineal membrane**. The membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia forms the superficial boundary of the **superficial perineal pouch (space)**.

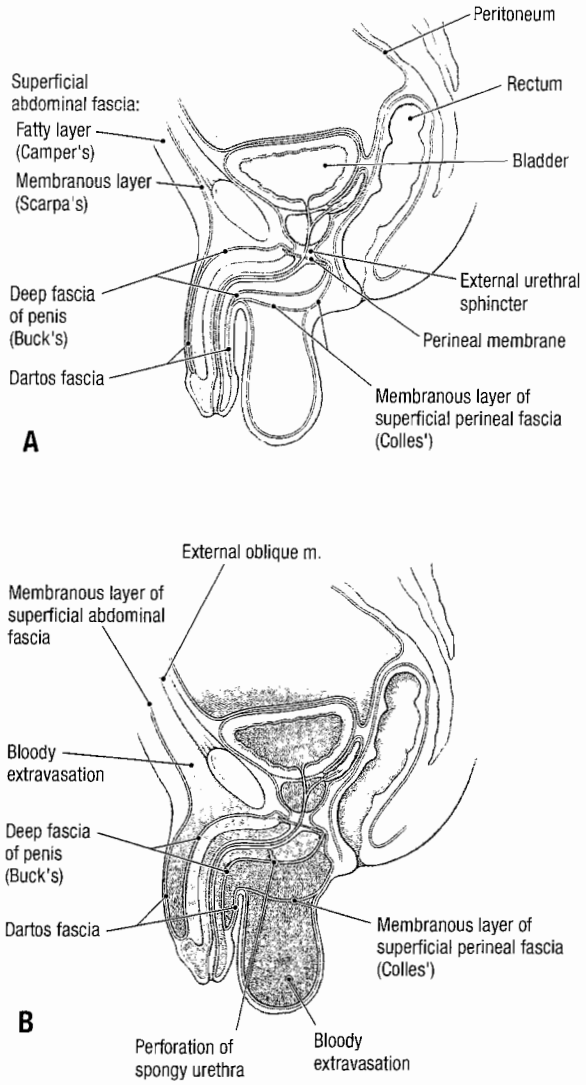


Figure 5.07. Fasciae of the perineum. **A.** The membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia (Colles' fascia) is continuous with the superficial fascia (dartos fascia) of the scrotum and the penis. It is also continuous with the membranous layer of superficial fascia of the lower abdominal wall (Scarpa's fascia) and is attached to the posterior border of the perineal membrane. **B.** After injury to the urethra in the perineum, extravasated urine is contained in the superficial perineal pouch and spreads into the lower abdominal wall.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Superficial Perineal Pouch

If the urethra is injured in the perineum, urine may escape into the superficial perineal pouch. The urine may spread into the scrotum and penis, and upward into the lower abdominal wall between the membranous layer of the abdominal superficial fascia (Scarpa's fascia) and the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle (Fig. 5.07B). The urine does not enter the thigh because the membranous layer of the superficial fascia attaches to the fascia lata, ischiopubic ramus, and posterior edge of the perineal membrane.

1. The **contents of the superficial perineal pouch in the male** are **three paired muscles (superficial transverse perineal, bulbospongiosus**, and **ischiocavernosus)**, the **crura of the penis**, and the **bulb of the penis** (Fig. 5.08A). The superficial perineal pouch also contains the arteries, veins, and nerves that supply these structures.
2. It is not necessary to identify the membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia to complete the dissection. Use a probe to dissect through the superficial perineal fascia approximately 2 cm lateral to the midline.
3. Use blunt dissection to find the **superficial transverse perineal muscle** at the posterior border of the urogenital triangle (Fig. 5.08A). The superficial transverse perineal muscle may be delicate and difficult to find; limit the time spent looking for it. The lateral attachments of the superficial transverse perineal muscle are the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus. The medial attachment of the superficial transverse perineal muscle is the **perineal body**. The perineal body is a fibromuscular mass located between the anal canal and the posterior edge of the perineal membrane. It serves as an attachment for several muscles.

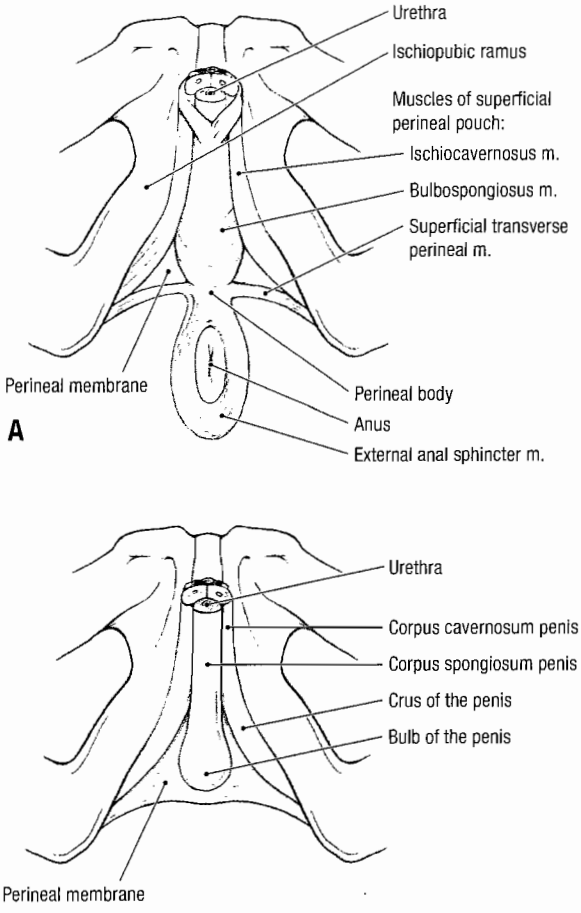


Figure 5.08. Contents of the superficial perineal pouch in the male. **A.** Muscles. **B.** Erectile bodies.

The superficial transverse perineal muscle helps to support the perineal body.

4. Use a probe to clean the surface of the **ischiocavernosus muscle**. The ischiocavernosus muscle covers the superficial surface of the **crus of the penis**. The proximal attachment of the ischiocavernosus muscle is the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus. The distal attachment of the ischiocavernosus muscle is the crus of the penis. The ischiocavernosus muscle forces blood from the crus of the penis into the corpus cavernosum penis.
5. Identify the **bulbospongiosus muscle** in the midline of the urogenital triangle. The bulbospongiosus muscle covers the superficial surface of the **bulb of the penis**. The posterior attachments of the bulbospongiosus muscle are the bulbospongiosus muscle of the opposite side (a midline raphe) and the perineal body. The anterior attachment of the bulbospongiosus muscle is the corpus cavernosum penis. The bulbospongiosus muscle compresses the bulb of the penis to expel urine or semen.
6. Use a probe to dissect between the three muscles of the superficial perineal pouch until a small triangular opening is created (Fig. 5.08A). The membrane that becomes visible through this opening is the **perineal membrane**. The perineal membrane is the deep boundary of the superficial perineal pouch and the erectile bodies are attached to it.
7. Use scissors to divide the bulbospongiosus muscles along their midline raphe. On the right side of the cadaver, remove the bulbospongiosus muscle.
8. Identify the **bulb of the penis** (Fig. 5.08B). The bulb of the penis is continuous with the corpus spongiosum penis and contains a portion of the spongy urethra.
9. On the right side of the cadaver, use blunt dissection to remove the ischiocavernosus muscle from the **crus of the penis** (Fig. 5.08B). The crus of the penis is continuous with the corpus cavernosum penis.

PENIS [G 250; N 364, 365; R 324, 327; C 182, 302]

In the anatomical position, the penis is erect. The surface of the penis that is closest to the anterior abdominal wall is the **dorsal surface of the penis**.

Study a drawing of a transverse section of the **penis** (L. *penis*, tail) (Fig. 5.09). The **superficial fascia of the penis (dartos fascia)** has no fat and contains the **superficial dorsal vein of the penis.** The **deep fascia of the penis (Buck's fascia)** is an investing fascia. Contained within the deep fascia of the penis are the **corpus spongiosum, corpus cavernosum (paired), deep dorsal vein of the penis (unpaired), dorsal artery of the penis (paired), and dorsal nerve of the penis (paired).**

1. Identify the parts of the penis:
   - **Root**
   - **Body (shaft)**
   - **Glans penis**
   - **Corona of the glans**
   - **Prepuce**
   - **Frenulum**
   - **External urethral orifice**
2. Use a scalpel to make a midline incision down the ventral surface of the penis. Remove the skin from the body of the penis, detaching it around the corona of the glans. Do not skin the glans.
3. Use a probe to dissect the **superficial dorsal vein** of the penis. The superficial dorsal vein of the penis drains into the **superficial external pudendal vein** of the inguinal region.

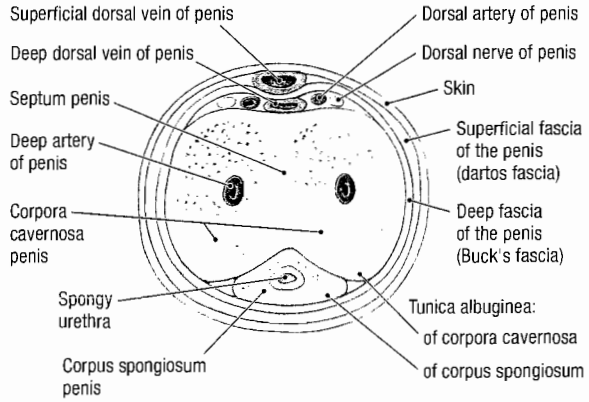


Figure 5.09. Transverse section through the body of the penis.

4. On the dorsum of the penis, use a probe to dissect through the **deep fascia of the penis** and identify (Fig. 5.10): **[G 250; R 337; C 302]**
   - **Deep dorsal vein of the penis** – a single vein in the midline. Most of the blood from the penis drains through the deep dorsal vein into the **prostatic venous plexus.**
   - **Dorsal artery of the penis (2)** – one artery on each side of the deep dorsal vein. The dorsal artery of the penis is a terminal branch of the internal pudendal artery.
   - **Dorsal nerve of the penis (2)** – one nerve on each side of the midline, lateral to the deep dorsal artery. The dorsal nerve of the penis is a branch of the pudendal nerve.
5. Use a probe to trace the vessels and nerves of the penis proximally. Use an illustration to study the course of the pudendal nerve and the internal pudendal artery (Fig. 5.10). Observe that the dorsal artery and nerve of the penis course deep to the perineal membrane before they emerge onto the dorsum of the penis. The deep dorsal vein passes between the inferior pubic ligament and the anterior edge of the perineal membrane to enter the pelvis, and does not accompany the deep dorsal artery and dorsal nerve proximal to the body of the penis. **[G 250, 254; N 383, 390; R 336; C 287, 304]**

SPONGY URETHRA [G 255; N 368; R 326, 327; C 290]

The male urethra consists of three portions: **prostatic urethra, membranous urethra**, and **spongy urethra** (Fig. 5.11). The spongy urethra is the portion that is located within the corpus spongiosum penis. The next objective is to longitudinally open the spongy urethra.

1. Examine the **external urethral orifice** at the tip of the glans penis. Push a probe into the external urethral orifice, and then use a scalpel to cut down to the probe from both the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the penis.

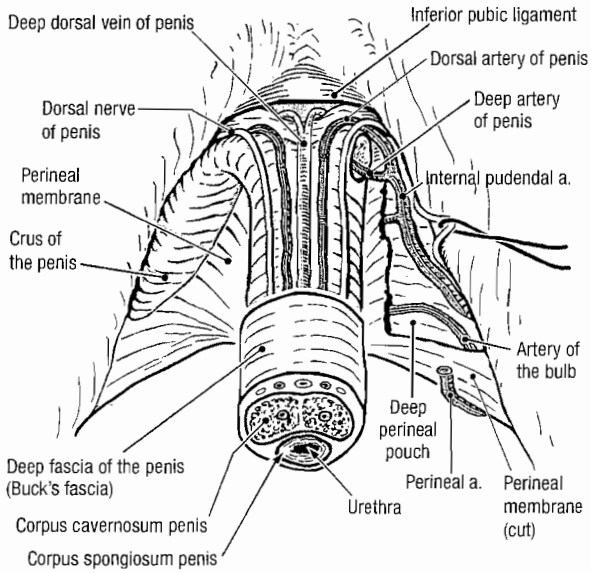


Figure 5.10. Arteries and nerves of the penis.

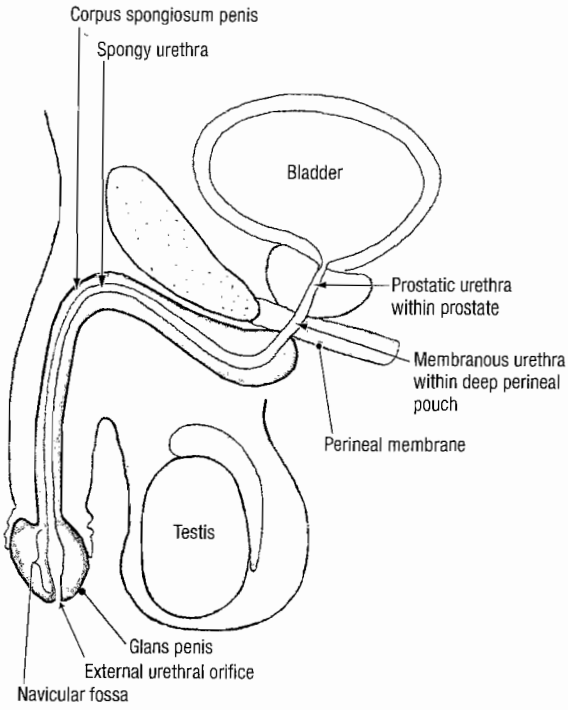


Figure 5.11. Parts of the male urethra.

Cut in the median plane *of the penis* (it may not be a straight line).

2. Advance the probe proximally, and continue to divide the penis. Dorsal to the probe, the cut should pass between the corpora cavernosa and may split the deep dorsal vein longitudinally. Stop inferior to the pubic symphysis where the two corpora cavernosa separate. Ventral to the probe the cut should divide the corpus spongiosum into equal halves. Stop at the bulb of the penis.
3. In the bulb of the penis, the urethra bends at a sharp angle and passes through the perineal membrane (Fig. 5.11). Carefully complete the cut through the bulb posterior to the urethra but do not cut through the perineal membrane.
4. Examine the interior of the spongy urethra. Identify the **navicular fossa**, a widening of the urethra in the glans penis. The openings of the ducts of the **bulbourethral glands** are in the proximal part of the spongy urethra, but may be too small to see.
5. Note that the **glans penis** (L. *glans*, acorn) is the distal expansion of the corpus spongiosum and that it caps the two corpora cavernosa penis. The spongy urethra terminates by passing through the glans.
6. On the right side of the penis, make a transverse cut through the body of the penis about midway down its length.
7. On the cut surface of the transverse section of the penis, study the relationship of the **corpus cavernosum penis** and **corpus spongiosum penis**. Identify (Fig. 5.09): **[G 254; N 364; R 327; C 182]**
   - **Tunica albuginea of the corpora cavernosa penis**

- **Tunica albuginea of the corpus spongiosum penis**
- **Septum penis** (cut)

8. Study the erectile tissue within the corpus spongiosum penis. Observe that the corpus spongiosum penis surrounds the spongy urethra.
9. Study the erectile tissue within the corpus cavernosum penis (Fig. 5.09). Identify the **deep artery of the penis** near the center of the erectile tissue. Review the origin of the deep artery of the penis from the internal pudendal artery.

DEEP PERINEAL POUCH

The deep perineal pouch (space) will not be dissected. The deep perineal pouch lies superior (deep) to the perineal membrane (Fig. 5.11). The **contents of the deep perineal pouch in the male** are the **membranous urethra, external urethral sphincter muscle, bulbourethral glands, branches of the internal pudendal vessels**, and **branches of the pudendal nerve** (Fig. 5.12).

1. Use an illustration to study the following: **[G 247; N 366; C 299]**
   - **Membranous urethra** – extends from the perineal membrane to the prostate gland (Fig. 5.11). This is the shortest (approximately 1 cm), thinnest, narrowest, and least distensible part of the urethra.
   - **External urethral sphincter (sphincter urethrae) muscle** – a voluntary muscle that surrounds the membranous urethra (Fig. 5.12). When the external urethral sphincter muscle contracts, it compresses the membranous urethra and stops the flow of urine.
   - **Deep transverse perineal muscle** – has a lateral attachment to the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus and a medial attachment to the perineal body (Fig. 5.12). Its fiber direction and function are identical to those of the superficial transverse perineal muscle, which is a content of the superficial perineal pouch.

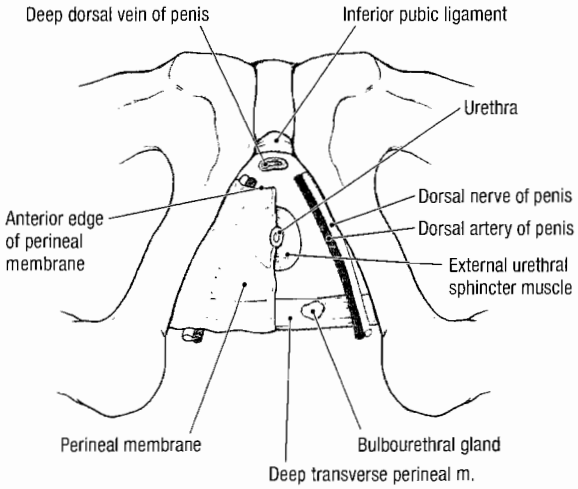


Figure 5.12. Contents of the deep perineal pouch in the male.

2. The **bulbourethral glands** are located in the deep perineal pouch. The duct of the bulbourethral gland passes through the perineal membrane and drains into the proximal portion of the spongy urethra.
3. The deep perineal pouch contains branches of the **pudendal nerve** and **internal pudendal artery** that supply the external urethral sphincter muscle, the deep transverse perineal muscle, and the penis (Fig. 5.12).
4. Collectively, the muscles within the deep perineal pouch plus the perineal membrane are known as the **urogenital diaphragm**. This older anatomical nomenclature is still in clinical use.

After you dissect . . .

Return the muscles of the urogenital triangle to their correct anatomical positions. Review the contents of the superficial perineal pouch. Use an illustration to review the course of the internal pudendal artery from its origin in the pelvis to the dorsum of the penis. Use an illustration to review the course and branches of the pudendal nerve. Study an illustration showing the course of the deep dorsal vein of the penis into the pelvis to join the prostatic venous plexus. Draw a cross-section of the penis showing the erectile bodies, superficial fascia, deep fascia, vessels, and nerves. Review an illustration that shows the entire male urethra and identify its parts by name.

MALE PELVIC CAVITY

Before you dissect . . .

The male pelvic cavity contains the urinary bladder anteriorly, male internal genitalia, and the rectum posteriorly (Fig. 5.13). The order of dissection will be as follows. The peritoneum will be studied in the male pelvic cavity. The pelvis will be sectioned in the midline and the cut surface of the sectioned pelvis will be studied. The ductus deferens will be traced from the anterior abdominal wall to the region between the urinary bladder and rectum. The seminal vesicles and prostate gland will be studied.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Pelvic Peritoneum

As the urinary bladder fills, the peritoneal reflection is elevated above the level of the pubis and is raised from the anterior abdominal wall. A filled urinary bladder can be approached with a needle just superior to the pubis without entering the peritoneal cavity.

Dissection Instructions

PERITONEUM [G 197, 198; N 348; R 324; C 286]

Examine the **peritoneum** in the male pelvis (Fig. 5.13). The peritoneum passes from the anterior abdominal wall (1) superior to the pubis (2), then onto the superior surface of the urinary bladder (3). The peritoneum then passes inferiorly along the posterior surface of the urinary bladder (4) to the superior ends of the seminal vesicles (5). The peritoneum passes inferiorly between the urinary bladder and the rectum to form the **rectovesical pouch** (6). The peritoneum contacts the anterior surface of the second part of the rectum. At more superior levels, the peritoneum envelops the sides of the rectum (7). At the level of the third sacral vertebra, the peritoneum becomes the sigmoid mesocolon (8). Laterally, a **paravesical fossa** is apparent on each side of the urinary bladder. Further posteriorly, a **pararectal fossa** is apparent on each side of the rectum.

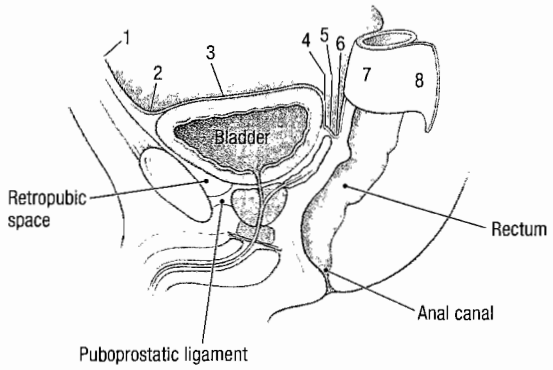


Figure 5.13. Peritoneum in the male pelvis. The numbered features of the peritoneum are explained in the text.

SECTION OF THE PELVIS

The pelvis will be divided in the midline. First, the pelvic viscera and the soft tissues of the perineum will be cut in the midline with a scalpel. The pubic symphysis and vertebral column (up to vertebral level L3) will be cut in the midline with a saw. Subsequently, the right side of the body will be transected at vertebral level L3. The left lower limb and left side of the pelvis will remain attached to the trunk.

Both halves of the pelvis will be used to dissect the pelvic viscera, pelvic vasculature, and nerves of the pelvis. One half of the pelvis will be used to demonstrate the muscles of the pelvic diaphragm.

1. Begin this dissection with a new scalpel blade.
2. In the pelvic cavity make a midline cut, beginning posterior to the pubic symphysis. Carry this midline cut through the superior surface of the urinary bladder. Open the bladder and sponge the interior, if necessary.
3. Identify the internal urethral orifice and insert a probe. Use the probe as a guide and continue the midline cut inferior to the urinary bladder. Divide the prostate gland.
4. Extend the midline cut in the posterior direction. Cut through the anterior and posterior walls of the rectum and the distal part of the sigmoid colon. Sponge them clean.
5. In the perineum, insert the scalpel blade inferior to the pubic symphysis with the cutting edge directed inferiorly. Cut between the halves of the bulb of the penis (sectioned earlier). Cut in the midline through the perineal membrane, perineal body, and anal canal (from pubic symphysis to coccyx).
6. Use a saw to make two cuts in the midline:
   - Pubic symphysis – cut through the pubic symphysis from anterior to posterior.
   - Sacrum – turn the cadaver to the prone position. Cut through the sacrum from posterior to anterior. Do not allow the saw to pass between the soft tissue structures that were cut with the scalpel. Spread the opening and extend the midline cut as far superiorly as the body of the third lumbar vertebra.
7. Return the cadaver to the supine position. To mobilize the right lower limb, use a scalpel to cut the right common iliac vein, right common iliac artery, and right testicular vessels. Cut the right ureter and the branches of the right lumbar plexus.
8. In the transverse plane, cut the psoas major muscle and the quadratus lumborum muscle at vertebral level L3. Use the saw to cut horizontally through the right half of the intervertebral disc between L3 and L4. Now, the right lower limb can be removed.
9. Clean the rectum and anal canal.

MALE INTERNAL GENITALIA [G 197; N 348; R 324; C 289]

1. Study the cut surface of the sectioned specimen. Use an illustration to guide you.
2. Identify the **perineal membrane**. It is located deep to the bulb of the penis and can be identified where the bulb ends (Fig. 5.11). Superior (deep) to the perineal membrane, the **external urethral sphincter muscle** surrounds the **membranous urethra**. The external urethral sphincter muscle may be difficult to see in the sectioned specimen.
3. On the sectioned pelvis, identify the three parts of the urethra: **prostatic urethra**, **membranous urethra**, and **spongy urethra** (Fig. 5.11).
4. Examine the **interior of the prostatic urethra**. The prostatic urethra is approximately 3 cm in length and is the part that passes through the prostate. On the posterior wall of the prostatic urethra identify (Fig. 5.14): **[G 209; N 368; R 326; C 289]**
   - **Urethral crest** – a longitudinal ridge
   - **Seminal colliculus** – an enlargement of the urethral crest
   - **Prostatic sinus** – the groove on either side of the seminal colliculus
   - **Prostatic utricle** – a small opening on the midline of the seminal colliculus
   - **Opening of the ejaculatory duct** – one on either side of the prostatic utricle
5. Find the **ductus deferens** where it enters the **deep inguinal ring** lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels. Use a probe to break through the peritoneum at the deep inguinal ring. Use blunt dissection to peel the

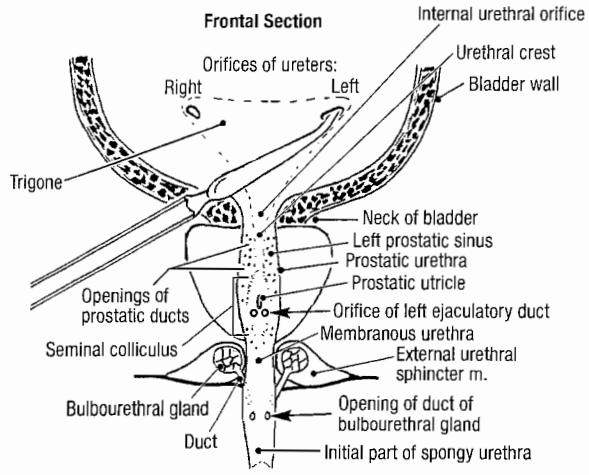


Figure 5.14. Urinary bladder and proximal portion of the male urethra seen in frontal section. The tip of the probe is located in the orifice of the left ureter.

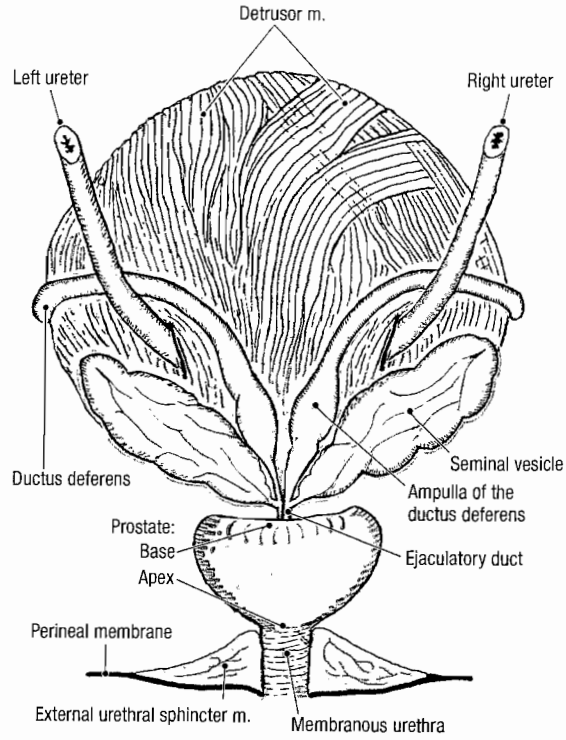


Figure 5.15. Posterior view of the urinary bladder and the male internal genitalia.

peritoneum off the lateral wall of the pelvis. Strip the peritoneum from lateral to medial, stopping where it comes in contact with the rectum and urinary bladder. Detach the peritoneum and place it in the tissue container.

6. Use blunt dissection to trace the ductus deferens from the deep inguinal ring toward the midline. Observe that the ductus deferens passes superior and then medial to the branches of the internal iliac artery. Note that the ductus deferens crosses superior to the ureter. **[G 214; N 350; R 324; C 287]**
7. Trace the ductus deferens into the **rectovesical septum**, which is the fascia between the rectum and the urinary bladder. Observe that the ductus deferens is in contact with the fundus (posterior surface) of the urinary bladder.
8. Identify the **ampulla of the ductus deferens**, which is the enlarged portion just before its termination (Fig. 5.15). **[G 208; N 367; R 327; C 288]**
9. Identify the **seminal vesicle**. The seminal vesicle is located lateral to the ampulla of the ductus deferens in the rectovesical septum. Use blunt dissection to release the seminal vesicle from the connective tissue of the rectovesical septum.
10. Identify the point where the duct of the seminal vesicle joins the ductus deferens to form the **ejaculatory duct** (Fig. 5.15). The ejaculatory duct is delicate and easily torn where it enters the prostate. The ejaculatory duct empties into the prostatic urethra on the seminal colliculus.
11. Observe the **prostate**. The **apex** of the prostate is directed inferiorly and the **base** of the prostate is located superiorly against the neck of the urinary bladder. Use a textbook to study the **lobes of the prostate**.

After you dissect . . .

Review the position of the male pelvic viscera within the lesser pelvis. Review the peritoneum in the pelvic cavity. Trace the ductus deferens from the epididymis to the ejaculatory duct, recalling its relationships to vessels, nerves, the ureter, and the

URINARY BLADDER, RECTUM, AND ANAL CANAL

Before you dissect . . .

The urinary bladder is a reservoir for urine. When empty, it is located within the pelvic cavity. When filled, it extends into the abdominal cavity. The urinary bladder is a retroperitoneal organ that is surrounded by **endopelvic fascia**. Between the pubic symphysis and the urinary bladder is a potential space called the **retropubic space (prevesical space)** (Fig. 5.13). The retropubic space is filled with fat and loose connective tissue that accommodates the expansion of the urinary bladder. The **puboprostatic ligament** is a condensation of fascia that ties the prostate to the pubis across the retropubic space (Fig. 5.13). The lower one-third of the rectum is surrounded by endopelvic fascia. The middle and upper thirds of the rectum are partially covered by peritoneum (Fig. 5.13).

The order of dissection will be as follows. The parts of the urinary bladder will be studied. The interior of the urinary bladder will be studied. The interior of the rectum and anal canal will be studied.

Dissection Instructions

URINARY BLADDER [G 209; N 353; R 324; C 289]

1. Identify the **parts of the urinary bladder** (Fig. 5.16):
   - **Apex** – the pointed part directed toward the anterior abdominal wall. The apex of the urinary blad-

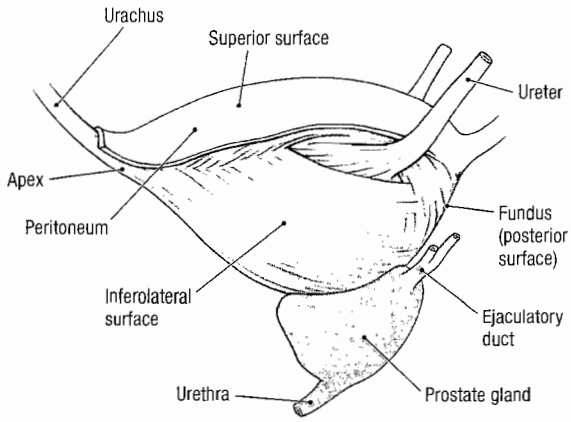


Figure 5.16. Parts of the urinary bladder in the male.

der can be identified by the attachment of the urachus.

- **Body** – between the apex and fundus
- **Fundus** – the posterior wall, also called the **base of the urinary bladder.** In the male the fundus is related to the ductus deferens, seminal vesicles, and rectum.
- **Neck** – where the urethra exits the urinary bladder. In the neck of the urinary bladder, the wall thickens to form the involuntary **internal urethral sphincter muscle.**

2. Identify the four **surfaces of the urinary bladder** (Fig. 5.16):
   - **Superior** – covered by peritoneum
   - **Posterior** – covered by the endopelvic fascia of the rectovesical septum
   - **Inferolateral (2)** – covered by endopelvic fascia
3. Examine the **wall of the urinary bladder** and note its thickness. The wall of the urinary bladder consists of bundles of smooth muscle called the **detrusor muscle** (L. *detrudere*, to thrust out).
4. Identify the **trigone** on the inner surface of the fundus (Fig. 5.14). The angles of the trigone are the **internal urethral orifice** and the two **orifices of the ureters.** The internal urethral orifice is located at the most inferior point in the urinary bladder. **[G 209; N 353; R 326; C 288]**
5. Observe that the mucous membrane over the trigone is smooth. The mucous membrane lining the other parts of the urinary bladder lies in folds when the bladder is empty but will accommodate expansion.
6. Insert the tip of a probe into the orifice of the ureter and observe that the ureter passes through the muscular wall of the urinary bladder in an oblique fashion. When the urinary bladder is full (distended), the pressure of the accumulated urine flattens the part of the ureter that is within the wall of the bladder and prevents reflux of urine.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Kidney Stones

Kidney stones pass through the ureter to the urinary bladder and may become lodged in the ureter. The point where the ureter passes through the wall of the urinary bladder is a relatively narrow passage. If a kidney stone becomes lodged, severe colicky pain results. The pain stops suddenly once the stone passes into the bladder.

7. Find the ureter where it crosses the external iliac artery or the bifurcation of the common iliac artery. Use blunt dissection to follow the ureter to the fundus of the urinary bladder.

RECTUM AND ANAL CANAL [G 197, 199; N 348, 374; R 325; C 289, 292]

1. The rectum begins at the level of the third sacral vertebra. Observe the sectioned pelvis and note that the rectum follows the curvature of the sacrum.
2. Identify the **ampulla of the rectum** (Fig. 5.17). At the ampulla, the rectum turns approximately 80 degrees posteriorly (**anorectal flexure**) and is continuous with the anal canal. Observe that the prostate and seminal vesicles are located close to the anterior wall of the rectum (Fig. 5.13).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Rectal Examination

Digital rectal examination is part of the physical examination. The size and consistency of the prostate gland can be assessed by palpation through the anterior wall of the rectum.

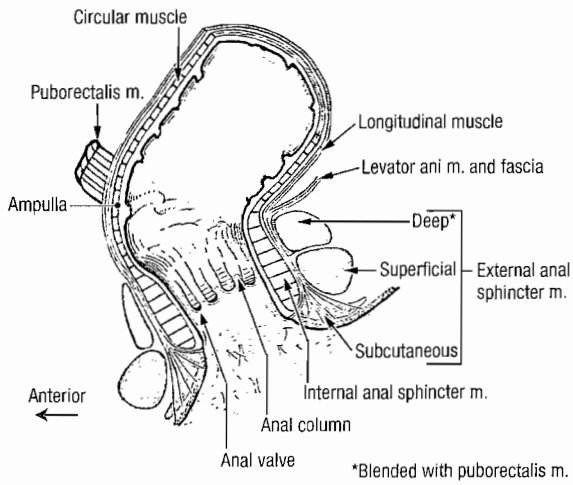


Figure 5.17. Rectum, anal canal, and anal sphincter muscles.

3. Examine the inner surface of the rectum. Note that the mucous membrane is smooth except for the presence of **transverse rectal folds**. There is usually one transverse rectal fold on the right side and two on the left side. The transverse rectal folds may be difficult to identify in some cadavers.
4. Observe that the **anal canal** is only 2.5 to 3.5 cm in length. The anal canal passes out of the pelvic cavity and enters the anal triangle of the perineum.
5. Examine the inner surface of the anal canal (Fig. 5.17). The mucosal features of the anal canal may be difficult to identify in older individuals. Attempt to identify the following:
   - **Anal columns** – five to 10 longitudinal ridges of mucosa in the proximal part of the anal canal. The anal columns contain branches of the **superior rectal artery** and **vein**.
   - **Anal valves** – semilunar folds of mucosa that unite the distal ends of the anal columns. Between the anal valve and the wall of the anal canal is a small pocket called an **anal sinus**.
   - **Pectinate line** – the irregular line formed by all of the anal valves.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Hemorrhoids

In the anal columns, the superior rectal veins of the hepatic portal system anastomose with middle and inferior rectal veins of the inferior vena caval system. An abnormal increase in blood pressure in the hepatic portal system causes engorgement of the veins contained in the anal columns, resulting in **internal hemorrhoids**. Internal hemorrhoids are covered by mucous membrane and are relatively insensitive to painful stimuli because the mucous membrane is innervated by autonomic nerves.

External hemorrhoids are enlargements of the tributaries of the inferior rectal veins. External hemorrhoids are covered by skin and are very sensitive to painful stimuli because they are innervated by somatic nerves (inferior rectal nerves).

6. The anal sphincter muscles surround the anal canal. Identify the **external anal sphincter muscle** and the **internal anal sphincter muscle** in the sectioned specimen (Fig. 5.17). The longitudinal muscle of the anal canal separates the two sphincter muscles. If you have difficulty identifying them, use a new scalpel blade to cut another section through the wall of the anal canal to improve the clarity of the dissection.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the features of the urinary bladder, rectum, and anal canal. Review the relationships of the seminal vesicles, ampulla of the ductus deferens, and ureters to the rectum and fundus of the urinary bladder. Review the kidney, the abdominal course of the ureter, the pelvic course of the ureter, and the function of the urinary bladder as a storage organ. Review the parts of the male urethra. Review all parts of the large intestine and recall its function in absorption of water, compaction, and elimination of fecal material. Recall that the external anal sphincter muscle is composed of skeletal muscle and is under voluntary control, whereas the internal anal sphincter muscle is composed of smooth muscle and is involuntary.

INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY AND SACRAL PLEXUS

Before you dissect . . .

Anterior to the sacroiliac articulation, the **common iliac artery** divides to form the **external** and **internal iliac arteries** (Fig. 5.18). The external iliac artery distributes to the lower limb and the internal iliac artery to the pelvis. The internal iliac artery commonly divides into an anterior division and a posterior division. Branches arising from the anterior division are mainly visceral (branches to the urinary bladder, internal genitalia, external genitalia, rectum, and gluteal region). Branches arising from the posterior division are parietal (branches to the pelvic walls and gluteal region). The branching pattern of the internal iliac artery is variable, so it is important to identify the arteries by their distribution. The internal iliac vein is typically plexiform. To clear the dissection field, remove all tributaries to the internal iliac vein.

The order of dissection will be as follows. The branches of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery will be identified. The branches of the posterior division of the internal iliac artery will be identified. The nerves of the sacral plexus will be dissected. Subsequently, the pelvic portion of the sympathetic trunk will be dissected.

Dissection Instructions

BLOOD VESSELS [G 212; N 382, 383; R 333; C 266]

1. Identify the **common iliac artery** and follow it to its bifurcation.
2. Identify the **internal iliac artery**. Use blunt dissection to follow the internal iliac artery into the lesser pelvis.

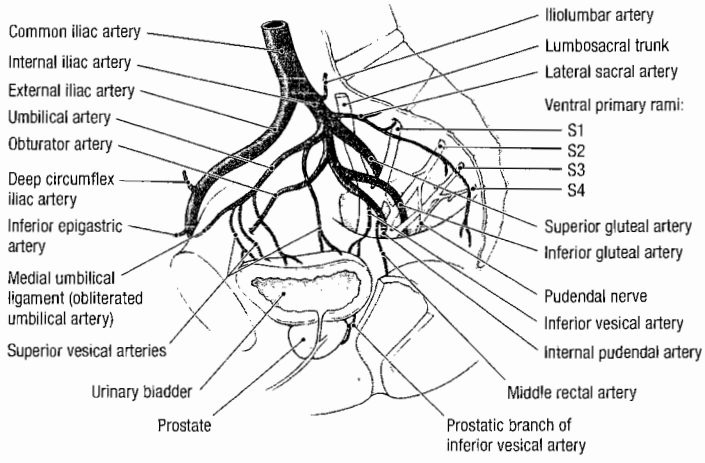


Figure 5.18. Branches of the internal iliac artery in the male.

3. Identify the branches of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 5.18):
   - **Umbilical artery** – in the medial umbilical fold, find the **umbilical ligament** (the obliterated portion of the umbilical artery) and use blunt dissection to trace it posteriorly to the umbilical artery. Note that several **superior vesical arteries** arise from the inferior surface of the umbilical artery and descend to the superolateral part of the urinary bladder.
   - **Obturator artery** – passes through the obturator canal. Find the obturator artery where it enters the obturator canal in the lateral wall of the lesser pelvis, and follow the artery posteriorly to its origin. In approximately 20% of cases, the obturator artery arises from the inferior epigastric artery (**aberrant obturator artery**). An aberrant obturator artery crosses the pelvic brim and is at risk for injury during surgical repair of a femoral hernia.
   - **Inferior vesical artery** – courses toward the fundus of the urinary bladder to supply the bladder, seminal vesicle, and prostate. The inferior vesical artery is a named branch only in the male; in the female, it is an unnamed branch of the vaginal artery.
   - **Middle rectal artery** – courses medially toward the rectum. It often arises in common with the inferior vesical artery, making positive identification difficult. Identify the middle rectal artery by tracing it to the rectum. The middle rectal artery, like the inferior vesical artery, sends branches to the seminal vesicle and prostate.
   - **Internal pudendal artery** – exits the pelvic cavity by passing through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis muscle. The internal pudendal artery often arises from a common trunk with the inferior gluteal artery.
   - **Inferior gluteal artery** – passes out of the pelvic cavity between ventral primary rami S2 and S3. The inferior gluteal artery exits the pelvis by passing through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis muscle. The inferior gluteal artery may share a common trunk with the internal pudendal artery.
4. Identify the branches of the posterior division of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 5.18):
   - **Iliolumbar artery** – passes posteriorly between the lumbosacral trunk and the obturator nerve. It may arise from a common trunk with the lateral sacral artery.
   - **Lateral sacral artery** – gives rise to a superior branch and an inferior branch. Observe the inferior branch that passes anterior to the sacral ventral primary rami.
   - **Superior gluteal artery** – exits the pelvic cavity by passing between the lumbosacral trunk and the ventral primary ramus of S1.
5. Use an illustration to study the **prostatic venous plexus**, **vesical venous plexus**, and **rectal venous plexus**. All of these plexuses drain into the internal iliac vein.
6. On the dissected specimen, observe the **deep dorsal vein of the penis** just inferior to the pubic symphysis. Verify that the deep dorsal vein of the penis empties into the prostatic venous plexus.
7. Identify the **internal iliac vein**. Follow the internal iliac vein to its junction with the **external iliac vein**. At this junction, the **common iliac vein** is formed.

NERVES [G 220, 221; N 390, 481; R 456; C 296]

The somatic plexuses of the pelvic cavity are the **sacral plexus** and **coccygeal plexus**. They are located between the pelvic viscera and the lateral pelvic wall. These somatic nerve plexuses are formed by contributions from ventral primary rami of spinal nerves L4 to S4. The primary visceral nerve plexus of the pelvic cavity is the **inferior hypogastric plexus**. It is formed by contributions from the hypogastric nerves, sympathetic trunks, and pelvic splanchnic nerves.

1. Use your fingers to dissect the rectum from the anterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx.
2. Retract the rectum medially. Identify the **sacral plexus** of nerves. The sacral plexus is closely related to the anterior surface of the piriformis muscle. Verify the following (Fig. 5.19):
   - The **lumbosacral trunk** (ventral primary rami of L4, L5) joins the sacral plexus.
   - The ventral primary rami of S2 and S3 emerge between the proximal attachments of the piriformis muscle.
   - The **sciatic nerve** is formed by the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves L4 through S3. The sciatic nerve exits the pelvis by passing through the greater sciatic foramen, usually inferior to the piriformis muscle.
   - The **superior gluteal artery** usually passes between the **lumbosacral trunk** and the **ventral primary ramus of spinal nerve S1**, and exits the pelvis by passing superior to the piriformis muscle.

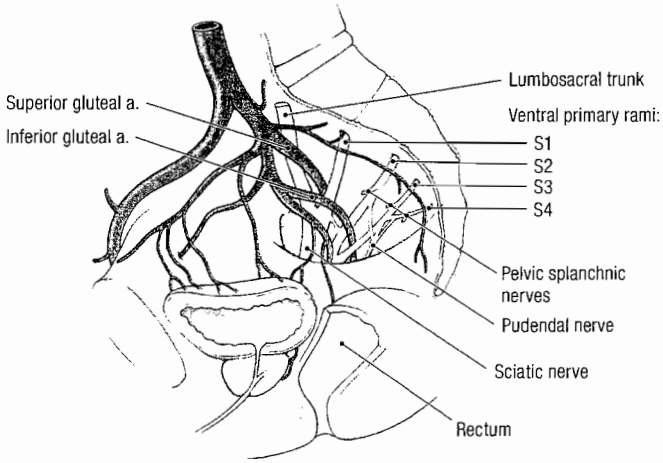


Figure 5.19. Sacral plexus of nerves in the male.

- The **inferior gluteal artery** usually passes between the **ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2 and S3**. The inferior gluteal artery exits the pelvis by passing inferior to the piriformis muscle.
- The **pudendal nerve** receives a contribution from the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2, S3, and S4. The pudendal nerve exits the pelvis by passing inferior to the piriformis muscle.

3. Identify the **pelvic splanchnic nerves (nervi erigentes)**. Pelvic splanchnic nerves are branches of the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2 to S4 (Fig. 5.19). Pelvic splanchnic nerves carry preganglionic parasympathetic axons for the innervation of pelvic organs and the distal gastrointestinal tract (from the left colic flexure through the anal canal). **[G 220; N 390; R 334; C 296]**
4. The **sacral portion of the sympathetic trunk** is located on the anterior surface of the sacrum, medial to the ventral sacral foramina. Identify the following:

- **Sympathetic trunk** – continues from the abdominal region into the pelvis. The sympathetic trunks of the two sides join in the midline near the level of the coccyx to form the **ganglion impar**.
- **Gray rami communicantes** – connect the sympathetic ganglia to the sacral ventral primary rami. Each gray ramus communicans carries postganglionic sympathetic fibers to a ventral primary ramus for distribution to the lower extremity and perineum.
- **Sacral splanchnic nerves** – arise from two or three of the sacral sympathetic ganglia and pass directly to the **inferior hypogastric plexus**. Sacral splanchnic nerves carry sympathetic fibers that distribute to the pelvic viscera.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Pelvic Nerve Plexuses

The pelvic splanchnic nerves (parasympathetic outflow of S2, S3, S4) are closely related to the lateral aspects of the rectum. The inferior hypogastric plexus is located in the connective tissue lateral to the prostate. These autonomic nerve plexuses can be injured during surgery, causing loss of bladder control and erectile dysfunction.

After you dissect . . .

Review the abdominal aorta and its terminal branches. Use the dissected specimen to review the branches of the internal iliac artery. Review the region supplied by each branch. Review the formation of the sacral plexus and the branches that were dissected in the pelvis. Use the dissected specimen and an illustration to review the course of the pudendal nerve from the pelvis to the urogenital triangle.

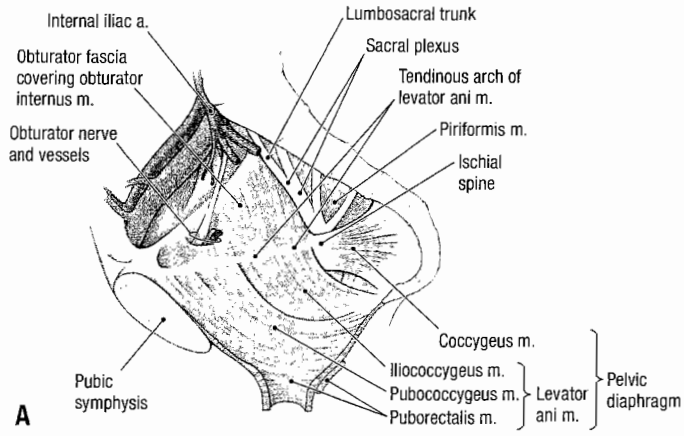
PELVIC DIAPHRAGM

Before you dissect . . .

The **pelvic diaphragm** is the muscular floor of the pelvic cavity. The pelvic diaphragm is formed by the levator ani muscle and coccygeus muscle plus the fasciae covering their superior and inferior surfaces (Fig. 5.20A,B). The pelvic diaphragm extends from the pubic symphysis to the coccyx. Laterally, the pelvic diaphragm is attached to the fascia covering the obturator internus muscle. The urethra and anal canal pass through a midline opening in the pelvic diaphragm called the **urogenital hiatus**.

Dissection Instructions

1. Perform the dissection of the pelvic diaphragm on one side of the cadaver. Save the side with the best dissection of arteries and nerves for review. **[G 193, 194; N 343-345; C 299]**
2. Retract the rectum, urinary bladder, prostate, and seminal vesicles medially.



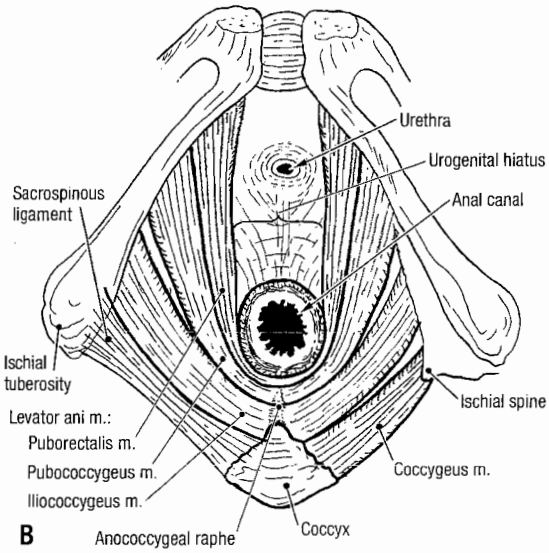


Figure 5.20. Pelvic diaphragm in the male. **A.** Left lateral view. **B.** Inferior view.

3. Use blunt dissection to remove any remaining fat and connective tissue from the superior surface of the pelvic diaphragm.
4. Find the **tendinous arch of the levator ani muscle** (Fig. 5.20A). Palpate the medial surface of the ischial spine. Locate the obturator canal. The tendinous arch lies just inferior to a line connecting these two structures. Note that the tendinous arch is the superior edge of the pelvic diaphragm.
5. Identify the three muscles that form the **levator ani muscle**. The muscles are identified by their proximal attachments. Learn, but do not dissect, their distal attachments. Identify the following:
   - **Puborectalis muscle** – its proximal attachment is the body of the pubis. Its distal attachment is the puborectalis muscle of the opposite side (midline raphe). The pubococcygeus muscle forms the lateral boundary of the urogenital hiatus. The two puborectalis muscles form a "puborectal sling," which causes the **anorectal flexure** at the ampulla of the rectum (Fig. 5.17). During defecation, the puborectalis muscles relax, the anorectal flexure straightens, and the elimination of fecal matter is facilitated.
   - **Pubococcygeus muscle** – its proximal attachment is the body of the pubis. Its distal attachment is the coccyx and the **anococcygeal raphe**.
   - **Iliococcygeus muscle** – its proximal attachment is the tendinous arch. Its distal attachment is the coccyx and the anococcygeal raphe.
6. The levator ani muscle supports the pelvic viscera and resists increases in intra-abdominal pressure.
7. Identify the **coccygeus muscle**. The coccygeus muscle completes the pelvic diaphragm posteriorly. The proximal attachment of the coccygeus muscle is the ischial spine and its distal attachment is the lateral border of the coccyx and the lowest part of the sacrum.
8. Place one hand in the ischioanal fossa and the other on the superior surface of the pelvic diaphragm. Palpate the thinness of the pelvic diaphragm.
9. Observe that the **obturator internus muscle** forms the lateral wall of the ischioanal fossa. The proximal attachment of the obturator internus muscle is the margin of the obturator foramen and inner surface of the obturator membrane. The distal attachment of the obturator internus muscle will be studied when the gluteal region is dissected. Superior to the tendinous arch of the levator ani muscle, the obturator internus muscle forms the lateral wall of the pelvic cavity. Inferior to the tendinous arch, the obturator internus muscle forms the lateral wall of the perineum.
10. Use your textbook to learn the general pattern of lymphatic drainage of the pelvis, and the location of each of the following groups of lymph nodes: **[G 203, 218, 219; N 388]**
    - **Internal iliac nodes**
    - **External iliac nodes**
    - **Common iliac nodes**
    - **Sacral nodes**
    - **Lumbar nodes**

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the proximal attachment and action of each muscle of the pelvic diaphragm. Review the relationship of the branches of the internal iliac artery to the pelvic diaphragm. Review the relationship of the sacral plexus to the pelvic diaphragm. Use an illustration to review the role of the pelvic diaphragm in dividing the pelvic cavity from the perineum. Review the function of the pelvic diaphragm and perineal body in supporting the pelvic and abdominal viscera. Use an illustration to review the lymphatic drainage from the pelvis and perineum. Realize that structures in the perineum (including the scrotum and the lower part of the anal canal) drain into superficial inguinal lymph nodes. The lymphatic drainage of the testis follows the testicular vessels to the lumbar chain of nodes, bypassing the perineal and pelvic drainage systems. Review the formation of the thoracic duct to complete your understanding of the lymph drainage from this region.

FEMALE UROGENITAL TRIANGLE

Before you dissect . . .

The order of dissection of the female urogenital triangle will be as follows. The external genitalia will be examined. The skin will be removed from the labia majora. The superficial perineal fascia will be removed and the contents of the superficial perineal pouch will be identified. The contents of the deep perineal pouch will be described, but not dissected.

Dissection Instructions

EXTERNAL GENITALIA [G 256; N 359; R 350; C 274]

1. Place the cadaver in the supine position. Stretch the thighs widely apart and brace them. Usually, only one student can work on the urogenital triangle at a time. The dissector should be positioned between the thighs.
2. Examine the **vulva** (female external genitalia) (Fig. 5.21). Identify the following structures:
   - **Mons pubis**
   - **Anterior labial commissure**
   - **Labium majus**
   - **Clitoris and prepuce of clitoris**
   - **Labium minus**
   - **Vestibule of the vagina** – the area between the labia minora
   - **External urethral orifice**
   - **Vaginal orifice**
   - **Openings of the paraurethral ducts** – on each side of the external urethral orifice
   - **Posterior labial commissure**

SKIN REMOVAL

1. Refer to Figure 5.22.
2. Make a skin incision in the midline from the anterior margin of the anus to the posterior labial commissure.
3. Make a skin incision that follows the medial surface of the labium majus on each side. Each incision should

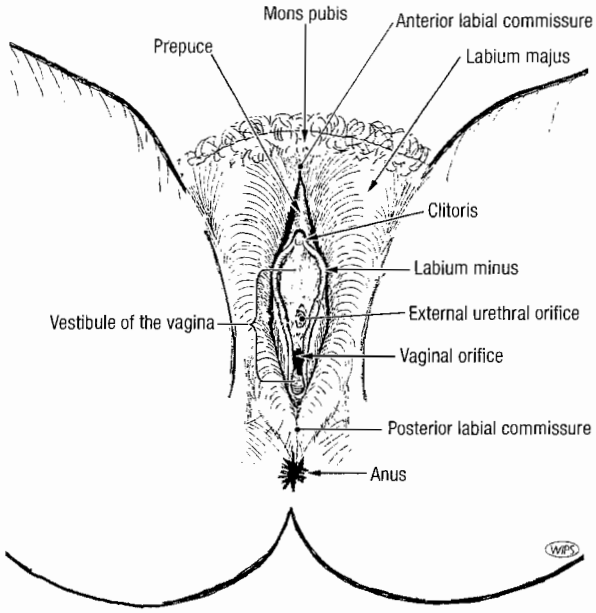


Figure 5.21. Female external genitalia.

begin at the posterior labial commissure, pass lateral to the labium minus, and end at the anterior labial commissure. Extend the incision in the midline to the mons pubis.

4. Make a transverse incision across the mons pubis that extends from the right thigh to the left thigh.
5. Remove the skin from the labium majus (lateral to the incisions). Detach each skin flap along the medial surface of the thigh and place the skin in the tissue container (Fig. 5.22, dashed lines).
6. If the cadaver has a large amount of fat in the superficial fascia of the medial thighs, remove a portion of the superficial fascia that corresponds to the skin that was removed.

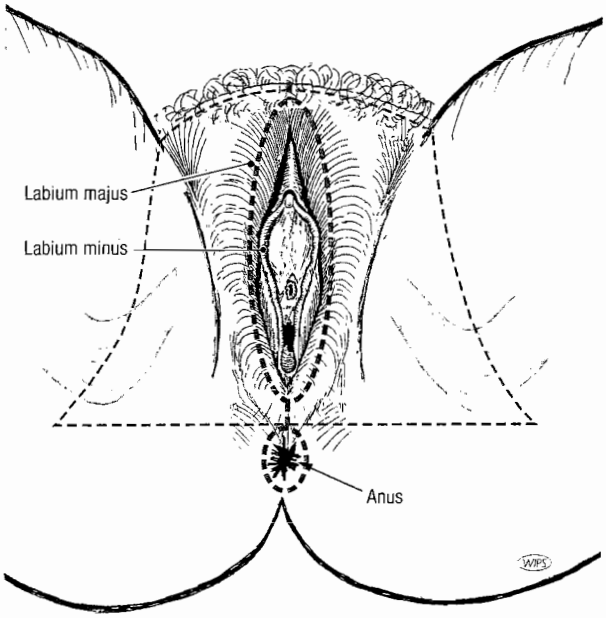


Figure 5.22. Skin incisions.

7. Note that the posterior labial nerve and vessels enter the urogenital triangle by passing lateral to the external anal sphincter muscle. The posterior labial nerve and vessels supply the posterior part of the labium majus.

SUPERFICIAL PERINEAL POUCH AND CLITORIS [G 256-258; N 360, 361; R 352, 353; C 276, 277]

The superficial perineal fascia has a superficial fatty layer and a deep membranous layer. In the female, the superficial fatty layer provides the shape of the labium majus and is continuous with the fat of the lower abdominal wall, ischioanal fossa, and thigh. The **membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia (Colles' fascia)** is attached to the ischiopubic ramus as far posteriorly as the ischial tuberosity, and to the posterior edge of the **perineal membrane** (Fig. 5.23). The membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia forms the superficial boundary the **superficial perineal pouch (space)**.

1. The **contents of the superficial perineal pouch in the female** include **three muscles** (**ischiocavernosus, bulbospongiosus**, and **superficial transverse perineal**), the **crus of the clitoris**, the **bulb of the vestibule**, and the **greater vestibular gland** (Fig. 5.24). These structures are paired. The superficial perineal pouch also contains the blood vessels and nerves for these structures.
2. It is not necessary to identify the membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia to complete the dissection. Use a probe to dissect through the superficial perineal fascia approximately 2 cm lateral to the labium minus. Remove the fat that forms the labium majus and place it in the tissue container.
3. Use blunt dissection to find the **superficial transverse perineal muscle** at the posterior border of the urogenital triangle (Fig. 5.24A). The superficial transverse perineal muscle may be delicate and difficult to find; limit the time spent looking for it. The lateral attachment of the superficial transverse perineal muscle

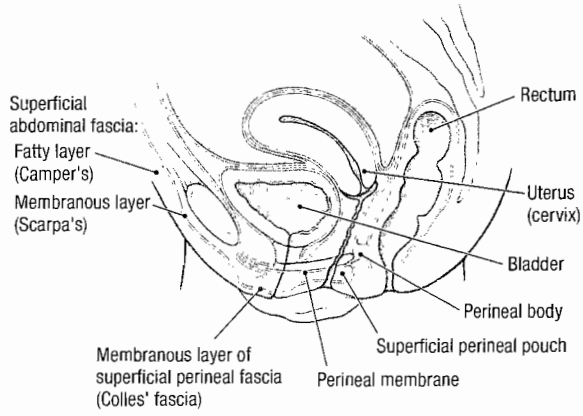


Figure 5.23. Perineal fasciae in the female. The membranous layer of superficial perineal fascia (Colles' fascia) is continuous with the membranous layer of superficial fascia of the lower abdominal wall (Scarpa's fascia). The membranous layer of the superficial perineal fascia is attached along the posterior border of the perineal membrane.

1. Use an illustration to study the following: [G 242; N 361; C 278]
   - **Urethra** – extends from the internal urethral orifice in the urinary bladder to the external urethral orifice in the vestibule of the vagina (approximately 4 cm).
   - **External urethral sphincter (sphincter urethrae) muscle** – a voluntary muscle that surrounds the urethra. When the external urethral sphincter muscle contracts, it compresses the urethra and stops the flow of urine.
   - **Deep transverse perineal muscle** – has a lateral attachment to the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus and a medial attachment to the perineal body. Its fiber direction and function are identical to those of the superficial transverse perineal muscle, which is a content of the superficial perineal pouch.
2. Other contents of the deep perineal pouch include **branches of the internal pudendal artery** and **branches of the pudendal nerve** that supply the external urethral sphincter muscle, the deep transverse perineal muscle, and the clitoris (Fig. 5.25).
3. Collectively, the muscles within the deep perineal pouch plus the perineal membrane are known as the **urogenital diaphragm**. This older anatomical nomenclature is still in clinical use.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Obstetrical Considerations

As the head of the baby pushes through the vagina during childbirth, the anus and the levator ani muscle are forced posteriorly toward the sacrum and coccyx. The urethra is forced anteriorly toward the pubic symphysis. Perineal lacerations during childbirth are common, and it may be necessary to surgically widen the vaginal orifice (episiotomy). If the perineal body is lacerated, it must be repaired to prevent weakness of the pelvic floor, which could result in prolapse of the urinary bladder, uterus, or rectum.

To alleviate the pain of childbirth, a **pudendal nerve block** is performed by injecting a local anesthetic around the pudendal nerve where it passes near the ischial spine. To perform the injection, the ischial spine is palpated through the vagina, and the needle is inserted through the skin and directed toward ischial spine.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the muscles of the urogenital triangle in their correct anatomical positions. Review the contents of the superficial perineal pouch. Use an illustration to review the course of the internal pudendal artery from its origin in the pelvis. Use an illustration to review the course and branches of the pudendal nerve. Review an illustration showing the urethra and note its course from the urinary bladder to the perineum.

FEMALE PELVIC CAVITY

Before you dissect . . .

The female pelvic cavity contains the urinary bladder anteriorly, the female internal genitalia, and the rectum posteriorly (Fig. 5.26). The term **adnexa** (L. *adnexa*, adjacent parts) refers to the ovaries, uterine tubes, and ligaments of the uterus. Removal of the uterus (hysterectomy), with or without the ovaries, is a common surgical procedure. If the uterus has been surgically removed from your cadaver, examine it in other cadavers.

The order of dissection will be as follows. The peritoneum will be studied in the female pelvic cavity. The pelvis will be sectioned in the midline and the cut surface of the sectioned pelvis will be studied. The uterus and vagina will be studied. The uterine tube will be traced from the uterus to the ovary. The ovary will be studied.

Dissection Instructions

PERITONEUM [G 224, 225; N 347; R 345; C 258]

1. Examine the **peritoneum** in the female pelvis (Fig. 5.26). The peritoneum passes from the anterior abdominal wall (1) superior to the pubis (2), then onto the superior surface of the urinary bladder (3). The peritoneum then passes from the superior surface of the urinary bladder to the uterus where it forms the **vesicouterine pouch** (4). The peritoneum covers the fundus and body of the uterus (5). It extends over the posterior wall of the vagina near the posterior part of the vaginal fornix. Between the uterus and the rectum, the peritoneum forms the **rectouterine pouch** (6). From the rectouterine pouch, the peritoneum passes onto the anterior surface and sides of the rectum (7). At the level of the third sacral vertebra, the peritoneum forms the sigmoid mesocolon (8). Laterally, a **paravesical fossa** is apparent on each side of the urinary bladder. Further posteriorly, a **pararectal fossa** is apparent on each side of the rectum.

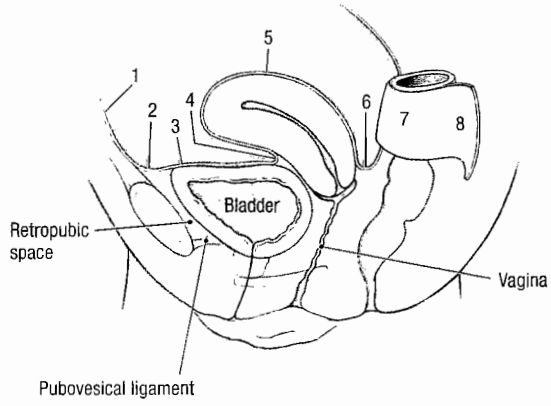


Figure 5.26. Peritoneum in the female pelvis. The numbered features of the peritoneum are explained in the text.

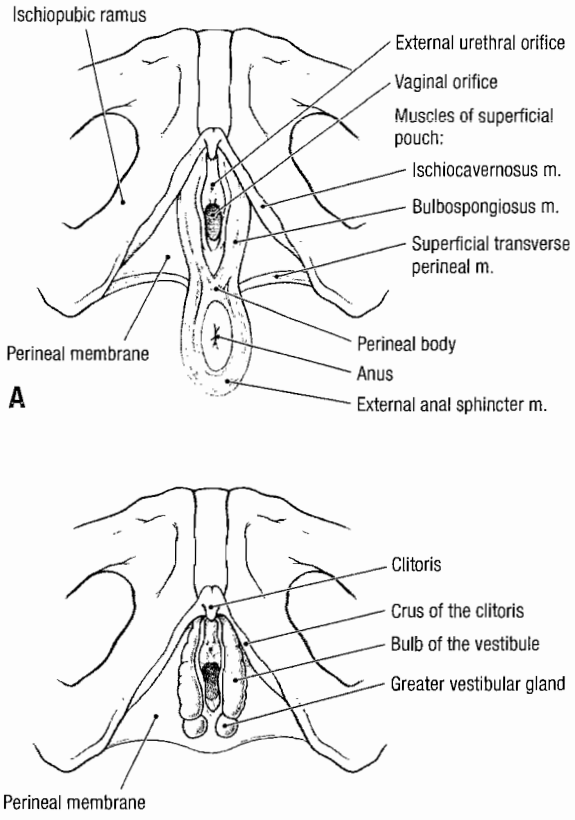


Figure 5.24. Contents of the superficial perineal pouch in the female. **A.** Muscles. **B.** Erectile bodies.

is the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus. The medial attachment of the superficial transverse perineal muscle is the **perineal body**. The perineal body is a fibromuscular mass located between the anal canal and the posterior edge of the perineal membrane that serves as an attachment for several muscles. The superficial transverse perineal muscle helps to support the perineal body.

4. Use blunt dissection to clean the surface of the **ischiocavernosus muscle.** The ischiocavernosus muscle covers the superficial surface of the **crus of the clitoris**. The proximal attachments of the ischiocavernosus muscle are the ischial tuberosity and the ischiopubic ramus. The distal attachment of the ischiocavernosus muscle is the crus of the clitoris. The ischiocavernosus muscle forces blood from the crus of the clitoris into the corpus cavernosum clitoris.
5. Identify the **bulbospongiosus muscle**, which is lateral to the labium minus. The bulbospongiosus muscle covers the superficial surface of the **bulb of the vestibule**. The posterior attachment of the bulbospongiosus muscle is the perineal body. The anterior attachment of the bulbospongiosus muscle is the corpus cavernosum clitoris. The bulbospongiosus muscle in the female does not join the bulbospongiosus muscle of the opposite side across the midline as it does in the male.
6. Note that the **greater vestibular gland** is found in the superficial perineal pouch immediately posterior to the bulb of the vestibule (Fig. 5.24B).
7. Use a probe to dissect between the three muscles of the superficial perineal pouch until a small triangular opening is created. The membrane that becomes visible through this opening is the **perineal membrane** (Fig. 5.24A). The perineal membrane is the deep boundary of the superficial perineal pouch, and the erectile bodies are attached to it.
8. On the right side of the cadaver, use blunt dissection to remove the bulbospongiosus muscle and identify the **bulb of the vestibule** (Fig. 5.24B). The bulb of the vestibule is an elongated mass of erectile tissue that lies lateral to the vaginal orifice. Anteriorly, the bulbs of the two sides are joined at the **commissure of the bulbs** and the commissure is continuous with the **glans of the clitoris**.
9. On the right side of the cadaver, use blunt dissection to remove the ischiocavernosus muscle from the **crus of the clitoris** (Fig. 5.24B). The crus of the clitoris is continuous with the corpus cavernosum clitoris. The two corpora cavernosa form the **body of the clitoris**.
10. Use an illustration to study the erectile bodies of the clitoris. Note that the glans of the clitoris caps the two corpora cavernosa.

DEEP PERINEAL POUCH

The deep perineal pouch (space) will not be dissected. The deep perineal pouch lies superior (deep) to the perineal membrane (Fig. 5.25). The **contents of the deep perineal pouch in the female** are the **urethra**, a portion of the **vagina**, **external urethral sphincter muscle**, **branches of the internal pudendal vessels**, and **branches of the pudendal nerve**.

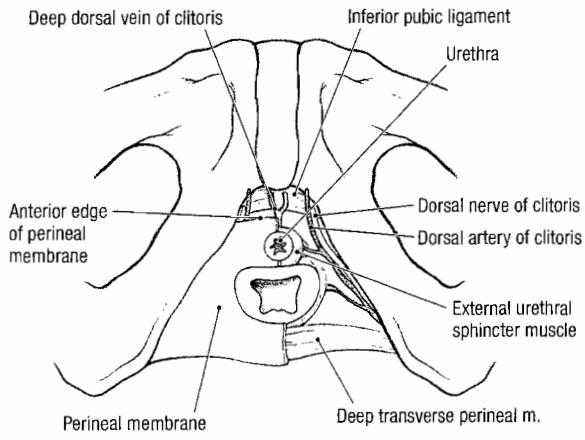


Figure 5.25. Contents of the deep perineal pouch in the female.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Pelvic Peritoneum

As the urinary bladder fills, the peritoneal reflection from the anterior abdominal wall to the bladder is elevated above the level of the pubis. A filled urinary bladder can be approached with a needle superior to the pubis without entering the peritoneal cavity.

2. Identify the **broad ligament of the uterus**. The broad ligament of the uterus is formed by two layers of peritoneum that extend from the lateral side of the uterus to the lateral pelvic wall. The **uterine tube** is contained within the superior margin of the broad ligament. The broad ligament has three parts (Fig. 5.27): **[G 229; N 355; R 347; C 262]**
   - **Mesosalpinx** (Gr. *salpinx*, tube) – supports the uterine tube
   - **Mesovarium** – attaches the ovary to the posterior aspect of the broad ligament
   - **Mesometrium** – the part of the broad ligament that is below the attachment of the mesovarium
3. The tissue enclosed between the two layers of the broad ligament is called **parametrium** (Gr. *para*, beside; *metra*, womb, uterus) (Fig. 5.27).
4. Identify the **round ligament of the uterus**, which is visible through the anterior layer of the broad ligament. Observe that the round ligament of the uterus passes over the pelvic brim and exits the abdominal cavity by passing through the deep inguinal ring, lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels. The round ligament of the uterus passes through the inguinal canal and ends in the labium majus.
5. Identify the **ligament of the ovary**, which is a fibrous cord within the broad ligament that connects the ovary to the uterus.
6. Identify the **suspensory ligament of the ovary**, which is a peritoneal fold that covers the ovarian vessels. The suspensory ligament of the ovary extends into the greater pelvis from the superior aspect of the ovary.
7. The **endopelvic fascia** contains condensations of connective tissue that passively support the uterus. Study an illustration and note the following (Fig. 5.28):
   - **Uterosacral (sacrogenital) ligament**—extends from the cervix to the sacrum. The uterosacral ligament underlies the **uterosacral fold**.
   - **Transverse cervical ligament (cardinal ligament)**—extends from the cervix to the lateral wall of the pelvis
   - **Pubocervical (pubovesical) ligament**—extends from the pubis to the cervix

SECTION OF THE PELVIS

The pelvis will be divided in the midline. First, the pelvic viscera and the soft tissues of the perineum will be cut in the midline with a scalpel. The pubic symphysis and vertebral column (up to vertebral level L3) will be cut in the midline with a saw. Subsequently, the right side of the body will be transected at vertebral level L3. The left

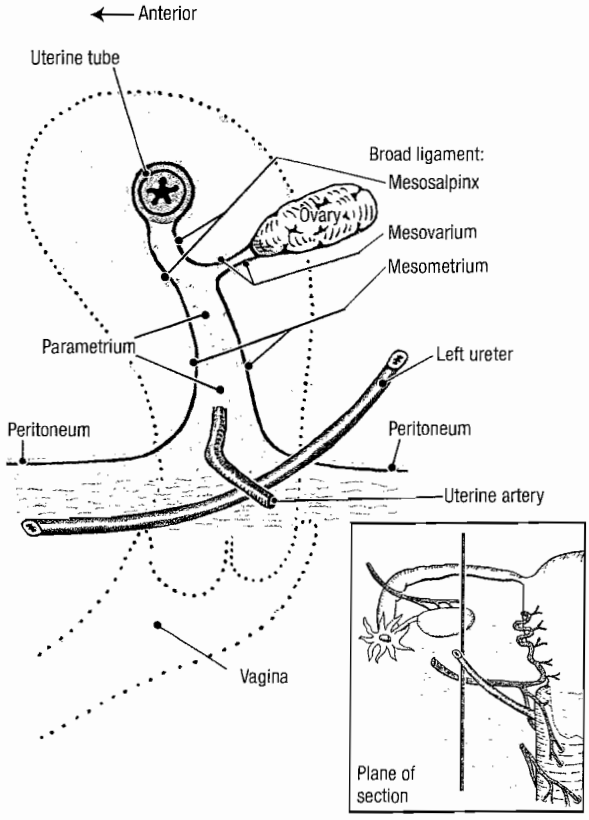


Figure 5.27. Parts of the broad ligament of the uterus.

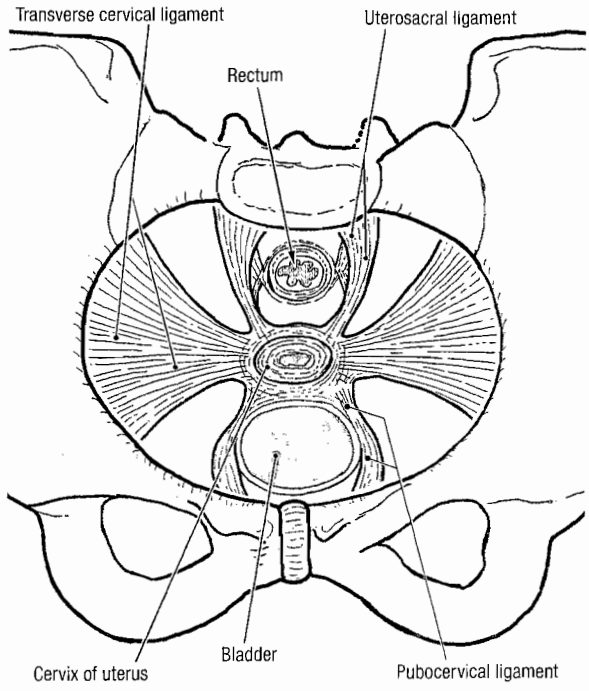


Figure 5.28. Ligaments of the endopelvic fascia that support the uterus.

lower limb and left side of the pelvis will remain attached to the trunk.

Both halves of the pelvis will be used to dissect the pelvic viscera, pelvic vasculature, and nerves of the pelvis. One half of the pelvis will be used to demonstrate the muscles of the pelvic diaphragm.

1. Begin this dissection with a new scalpel blade.
2. Use your hand to position the uterus in the midline. Use a scalpel to divide the uterus in its median plane. Extend the cut through the cervix and into the fornix of the vagina.
3. Beginning posterior to the pubic symphysis, make a midline cut through the superior surface of the urinary bladder. Open the bladder and sponge the interior, if necessary.
4. Identify the internal urethral orifice and insert a probe. Use the probe as a guide and cut through the inferior part of the bladder.
5. Extend the midline cut in the posterior direction. Cut through the anterior and posterior walls of the rectum and the distal part of sigmoid colon. Sponge them clean.
6. In the perineum, insert the tip of a probe into the external urethral orifice. Use the probe as a guide to make a midline cut through the clitoris, dividing it into right and left sides. Extend this cut posteriorly, dividing the urethra and vagina into right and left sides.
7. In the midline, cut through the perineal membrane, perineal body, and anal canal. Extend the cut to the tip of the coccyx.
8. Use a saw to make two cuts in the midline:
   - Pubic symphysis – cut through the pubic symphysis from anterior to posterior.
   - Sacrum – turn the cadaver to the prone position. Cut through the sacrum from posterior to anterior. Do not allow the saw to pass between the soft tissue structures that were cut with the scalpel. Spread the opening and extend the midline cut as far superiorly as the body of the third lumbar vertebra.
9. Return the cadaver to the supine position. To mobilize the right lower limb, use a scalpel to cut the right common iliac vein, right common iliac artery, and right ovarian vessels. Cut the right ureter and the branches of the right lumbar plexus.
10. In the transverse plane, cut the psoas major muscle and the quadratus lumborum muscle at vertebral level L3. Use the saw to cut horizontally through the right half of the intervertebral disc between L3 and L4. Now, the right lower limb can be removed.
11. Clean the rectum and anal canal.

FEMALE INTERNAL GENITALIA [G 224; N 347, 352; R 345; C 258]

1. Study the cut surface of the sectioned specimen. Use an illustration to guide you.
2. Trace the sectioned urethra anteroinferiorly from the urinary bladder to the **external urethral orifice**. Identify the **external urethral sphincter muscle** that surrounds the urethra. The external urethral sphincter muscle may be difficult to see.
3. In the sectioned specimen, observe the **vagina**. Identify the **vaginal fornix**. The vaginal fornix has four parts: **anterior**, **lateral (2)**, and **posterior** (Fig. 5.29). Observe that the anterior vaginal wall is shorter than the posterior vaginal wall.
4. Observe that the posterior wall of the vagina (near the posterior part of the vaginal fornix) is in contact with the peritoneum that lines the rectouterine pouch.
5. Study the **uterus** (Fig. 5.29). Observe that the uterus is tilted approximately 90 degrees anterior to the axis of the vagina (anteverted). The position of the uterus changes during pregnancy and as the urinary bladder fills. **[G 227, 230; N 356; R 346, 347; C 262, 263]**
6. Identify the following features of the uterus:
   - **Fundus** – the rounded part of the body that lies superior to the attachments of the uterine tubes
   - **Body** – the part of the uterus between the fundus and the cervix. The **vesical surface** of the body of the uterus faces the vesicouterine pouch and the **intestinal surface** faces the rectouterine pouch. Note that the broad ligament is attached to the lateral surface of the body of the uterus.

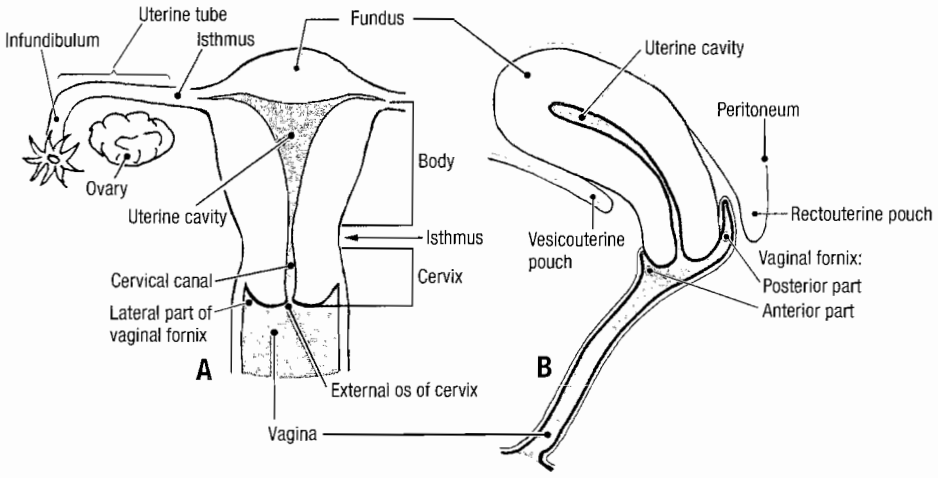


Figure 5.29. The uterus. **A.** Coronal section. **B.** Midsagittal section.

- **Isthmus** – the narrowed portion of the body that is superior to the cervix
- **Cervix** – the thick walled portion of the uterus that protrudes into the vaginal canal

8. Identify the **uterine cavity**. In a coronal section, it is triangular (Fig. 5.29A). In a sagittal section, it is a slit (Fig. 5.29B).
9. Note that the uterine mucosa is called **endometrium**. The thick muscular wall of the uterus is called **myometrium**. The peritoneal covering on the surface of the uterus is called **perimetrium** (Gr. *pari*, around). The tissues within the broad ligament are called **parametrium** (Gr. *para*, beyond).
10. Identify the **uterine (fallopian) tube** (Fig. 5.29). Use your fingers to follow the uterine tube laterally within the mesosalpinx. Observe the **isthmus**, which is the narrow, medial one-third of the uterine tube. Note that the distal end of the uterine tube is expanded to form the **infundibulum.** Identify the **fimbriae** around the margin of the infundibulum.
11. Observe the **ovary**. The ovary is ovoid, with a **tubal (distal) extremity** and a **uterine (proximal) extremity**. The ovarian vessels enter the tubal extremity, and the ovarian ligament is attached to the uterine extremity.
12. The ovary sits in the **ovarian fossa**. The ovarian fossa is a shallow depression in the lateral pelvic wall bounded by the ureter, external iliac vein, and uterine tube.
13. Review the abdominal origin and course of the ovarian vessels. Note that they pass through the **suspensory ligament of the ovary**.

After you dissect . . .

Review the relationships of the female internal genitalia. Use the dissected specimen to review the peritoneum in the pelvic cavity. Trace the round ligament of the uterus from the labium majus to the uterus. Review the parts of the broad ligament and review the function of the endopelvic fascia in passive support of the uterus.

URINARY BLADDER, RECTUM, AND ANAL CANAL

Before you dissect . . .

The urinary bladder is a reservoir for urine. When empty, it is located within the pelvic cavity. When filled, it extends into the abdominal cavity. The urinary bladder is a retroperitoneal organ that is surrounded by **endopelvic fascia**. Between the pubic symphysis and the urinary bladder is a potential space called the **retropubic space (prevesical space)** (Fig. 5.26). The retropubic space is filled with fat and loose connective tissue that accommodates the expansion of the urinary bladder. The **pubovesical ligament** is a condensation of fascia that ties the neck of the urinary bladder to the pubis across the retropubic space. The lower one-third of the rectum is surrounded by endopelvic fascia. The middle and upper thirds of the rectum are partially covered by peritoneum (Fig. 5.26).

The order of dissection will be as follows. The parts of the urinary bladder will be studied. The interior of the urinary bladder will be studied. The interior of the rectum and anal canal will be studied.

Dissection Instructions

URINARY BLADDER [N 353; C 262]

1. Identify the **parts of the urinary bladder** (Fig. 5.30):
   - **Apex** – the pointed part directed toward the anterior abdominal wall. The apex of the urinary bladder can be identified by the attachment of the urachus.
   - **Body** – between the apex and fundus
   - **Fundus** – the posterior wall, also called the **base of the bladder**. In the female the fundus is related to the vagina and cervix.
   - **Neck** – where the urethra exits the urinary bladder. In the neck of the urinary bladder, the wall thickens to form the involuntary **internal urethral sphincter muscle**.
2. Identify the four **surfaces of the urinary bladder** (Fig. 5.30):
   - **Superior** – covered by peritoneum
   - **Posterior** – covered by endopelvic fascia
   - **Inferolateral (2)** – covered by endopelvic fascia
3. Examine the **wall of the urinary bladder** and note its thickness. The wall of the urinary bladder consists of bundles of smooth muscle called the **detrusor muscle** (L. *detrudere*, to thrust out).
4. Identify the **trigone** on the inner surface of the fundus (Fig. 5.31). The angles of the trigone are the **internal urethral orifice** and the two **orifices of the ureters**. The internal urethral orifice is located at the most inferior point in the urinary bladder. **[N 353]**
5. Observe that the mucous membrane over the trigone is smooth. The mucous membrane lining the other parts of the urinary bladder lies in folds when the bladder is empty but will accommodate expansion.

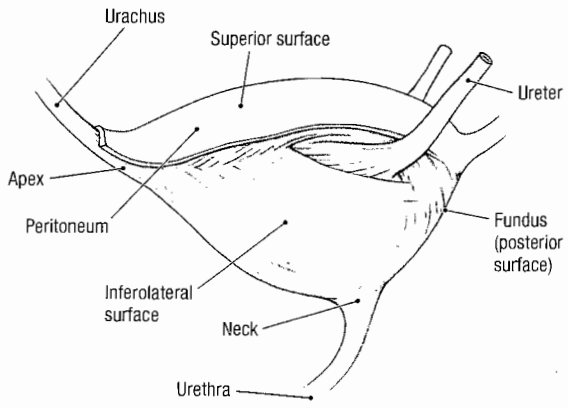


Figure 5.30. Parts of the urinary bladder in the female.

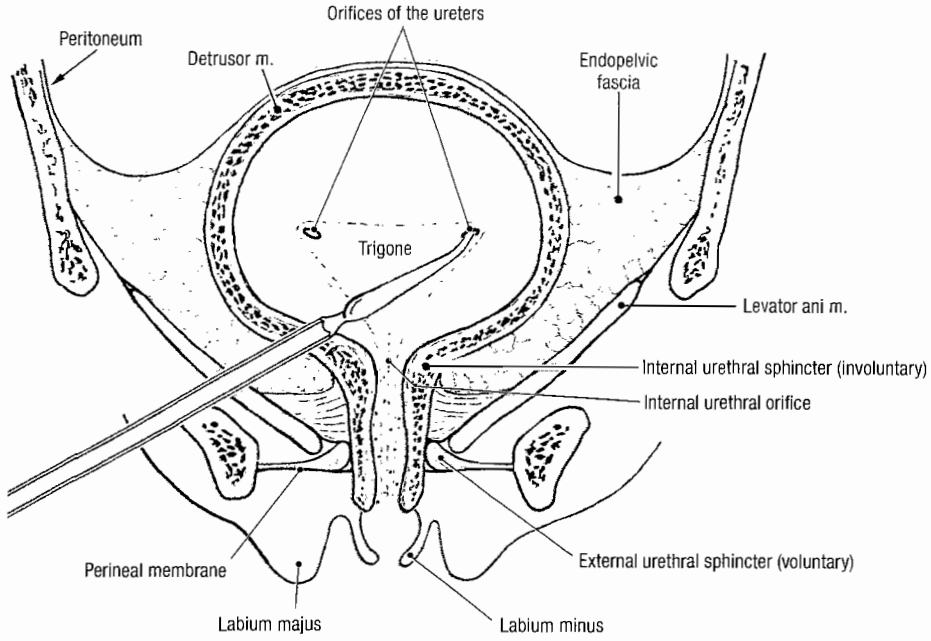


Figure 5.31. Urinary bladder and urethra in the female seen in frontal section. The tip of the probe is located in the orifice of the left ureter.

6. Insert the tip of a probe into the orifice of the ureter and observe that the ureter passes through the wall of the urinary bladder in an oblique fashion. When the urinary bladder is full (distended), the pressure of the accumulated urine flattens the part of the ureter that is within the wall of the bladder and prevents reflux of urine.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Kidney Stones

Kidney stones pass through the ureter to the urinary bladder and may become lodged in the ureter. The point where the ureter passes through the wall of the urinary bladder is a relatively narrow passage. If a kidney stone becomes lodged, severe colicky pain results. The pain stops suddenly once the stone passes into the bladder.

7. Find the ureter where it crosses the external iliac artery or the bifurcation of the common iliac artery. Use a probe to follow the ureter to the fundus of the urinary bladder. Observe that the ureter crosses inferior to the **uterine artery** and superior to the **vaginal artery.** **[G 228; N 380; R 344; C 269]**

RECTUM AND ANAL CANAL [G 199, 224; N 347, 374; R 345; C 258, 292]

1. Recall that the rectum begins at the level of the third sacral vertebra. Observe the sectioned pelvis and note that the rectum follows the curvature of the sacrum.
2. Identify the **ampulla of the rectum** (Fig. 5.32). At the ampulla, the rectum turns approximately 80 degrees posteriorly (**anorectal flexure**) and is continuous with the anal canal.
3. Examine the inner surface of the rectum. Note that the mucous membrane is smooth except for the presence of **transverse rectal folds**. There is usually one transverse rectal fold on the right side and two on the left side. The transverse rectal folds may be difficult to identify in some cadavers.
4. Observe that the **anal canal** is only 2.5 to 3.5 cm in length. The anal canal passes out of the pelvic cavity and enters the anal triangle of the perineum.
5. Examine the inner surface of the anal canal (Fig. 5.32). Note that the mucosal features of the anal canal may

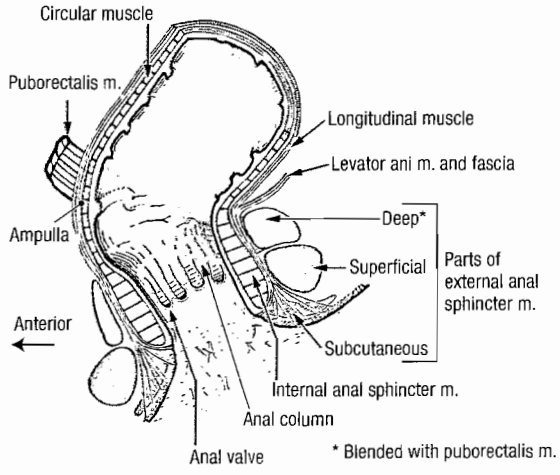


Figure 5.32. Rectum, anal canal, and anal sphincter muscles.

be difficult to identify in older individuals. Attempt to identify the following:

- **Anal columns** – five to 10 longitudinal ridges of mucosa in the proximal part of the anal canal. The anal columns contain branches of the **superior rectal artery** and **vein**.
- **Anal valves** – semilunar folds of mucosa that unite the distal ends of the anal columns. External to each anal valve is a small pocket called an **anal sinus**.
- **Pectinate line** – the irregular line formed by all of the anal valves.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Hemorrhoids

In the anal columns, the superior rectal veins of the hepatic portal system anastomose with middle and inferior rectal veins of the inferior vena caval system. An abnormal increase in blood pressure in the hepatic portal system causes engorgement of the veins contained in the anal columns, resulting in **internal hemorrhoids**. Internal hemorrhoids are covered by mucous membrane and are relatively insensitive to painful stimuli because the mucous membrane is innervated by autonomic nerves.

External hemorrhoids are enlargements of the tributaries of the inferior rectal veins. External hemorrhoids are covered by skin and are very sensitive to painful stimuli because they are innervated by somatic nerves (inferior rectal nerves).

6. The anal sphincter muscles surround the anal canal. Identify the **external anal sphincter muscle** and the **internal anal sphincter muscle** in the sectioned specimen (Fig. 5.32). The longitudinal muscle of the anal canal separates the two sphincter muscles. If you have difficulty identifying them, use a new scalpel blade to cut another section through the wall of the anal canal to improve the clarity of the dissection.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the features of the urinary bladder, rectum, and anal canal. Review the relationships of the uterus, vagina, and ureters to the rectum and fundus of the urinary bladder. Review the kidney, the abdominal course of the ureter, the pelvic course of the ureter, and the function of the urinary bladder as a storage organ. Review the female urethra. Review all parts of the large intestine and recall its function in absorption of water, compaction, and elimination of fecal material. Recall that the external anal sphincter muscle is composed of skeletal muscle and is under voluntary control, whereas the internal anal sphincter muscle is composed of smooth muscle and is involuntary.

INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY AND SACRAL PLEXUS

Before you dissect . . .

Anterior to the sacroiliac articulation, the **common iliac artery** divides to form the **external** and **internal iliac arteries** (Fig. 5.33). The external iliac artery distributes to the lower limb and the internal iliac artery to the pelvis. The internal iliac artery commonly divides into an anterior division and a posterior division. Branches arising from the anterior division are mainly visceral (branches to the urinary bladder, internal genitalia, external genitalia, rectum, and gluteal region). Branches arising from the posterior division are parietal (branches to the pelvic walls and gluteal region). The branching pattern of the internal iliac artery is variable, so it is important to identify the arteries by their distribution. The internal iliac vein is typically plexiform. To clear the dissection field, remove all tributaries to the internal iliac vein.

The order of dissection will be as follows. The branches of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery will be identified. The branches of the posterior division of the internal iliac artery will be identified. The nerves of the sacral plexus will be dissected. Finally, the pelvic portion of the sympathetic trunk will be dissected.

Dissection Instructions

BLOOD VESSELS [G 234; N 380, 382; C 269]

1. Identify the **common iliac artery** and follow it to its bifurcation.
2. Identify the **internal iliac artery**. Use blunt dissection to follow the **internal iliac artery** into the lesser pelvis.
3. Identify the branches of the anterior division of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 5.33):
   - **Umbilical artery** – in the medial umbilical fold, find the **umbilical ligament** (the obliterated portion of the umbilical artery) and use blunt dissection to trace it posteriorly to the umbilical artery. Note that several **superior vesical arteries** arise from the inferior surface of the umbilical artery and descend to the superolateral aspect of the urinary bladder.
   - **Obturator artery** – passes through the obturator canal. Find the obturator artery where it enters the obturator canal in the lateral wall of the lesser pelvis, and follow the artery posteriorly to its origin. In approximately 20% of cases, the obturator artery arises from the inferior epigastric artery (**aberrant obturator artery**). An aberrant obturator artery crosses the pelvic brim and is at risk of injury during surgical repair of a femoral hernia.
   - **Uterine artery** – courses along the inferior margin of the broad ligament. Use blunt dissection to trace it to the lateral aspect of the uterus and note that it passes superior to the ureter. The uterine artery divides into a large superior branch to the body and fundus of the uterus and a smaller branch to the

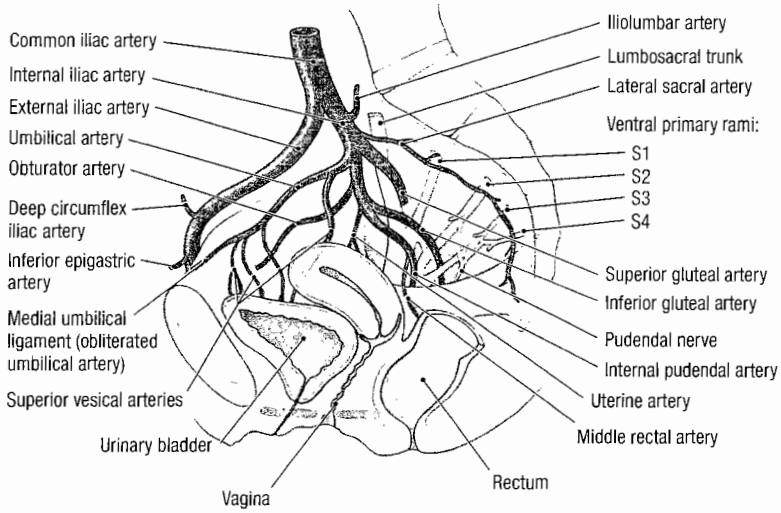


Figure 5.33. Branches of the internal iliac artery in the female.

cervix and vagina. Observe the close relationship of the lateral part of the vaginal fornix to the uterine artery. In the living body, the pulsations of the uterine artery may be felt through the lateral part of the vaginal fornix.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Uterine Artery

The close proximity of the ureter and the uterine artery near the lateral fornix of the vagina is of clinical importance. During hysterectomy, the uterine artery is tied off and cut. The ureter may be unintentionally clamped, tied off, and severed where it crosses the uterine artery. This would have serious consequences for the corresponding kidney. To recall this relationship, use the mnemonic device "water under the bridge."

- **Vaginal artery** – passes across the floor of the pelvis, inferior to the ureter. The vaginal artery supplies the vagina and the urinary bladder. Note that the ureter passes between the vaginal artery and the uterine artery.
- **Middle rectal artery** – courses medially toward the rectum. To confirm the identity of the middle rectal artery, follow it to the rectum.
- **Internal pudendal artery** – exits the pelvic cavity by passing through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis muscle. The internal pudendal artery often arises from a common trunk with the inferior gluteal artery.
- **Inferior gluteal artery** – passes out of the pelvic cavity between ventral primary rami S2 and S3. The inferior gluteal artery exits the pelvis by passing through the greater sciatic foramen inferior to the piriformis muscle. The inferior gluteal artery may share a common trunk with the internal pudendal artery.

4. Identify the branches of the posterior division of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 5.33):
   - **Iliolumbar artery** – passes posteriorly between the lumbosacral trunk and the obturator nerve. It may arise from a common trunk with the lateral sacral artery.
   - **Lateral sacral artery** – gives rise to a superior branch and an inferior branch. Observe the inferior branch that passes anterior to the sacral ventral primary rami.
   - **Superior gluteal artery** – exits the pelvic cavity by passing between the lumbosacral trunk and the ventral primary ramus of spinal nerve S1.
5. Use an illustration to study the **vesical venous plexus, uterine venous plexus, vaginal venous plexus**, and **rectal venous plexus**. All of these plexuses drain into the internal iliac vein.
6. In the cadaver, identify the **internal iliac vein**. Follow the internal iliac vein to its junction with the **external iliac vein**. At this junction, the **common iliac vein** is formed.

NERVES [G 220, 234; N 392, 481; R 456; C 296]

The somatic plexuses of the pelvic cavity are the **sacral plexus** and **coccygeal plexus**. They are located between the pelvic viscera and the lateral pelvic wall. These somatic nerve plexuses are formed by contributions from ventral primary rami of spinal nerves L4 to S4. The primary visceral nerve plexus of the pelvic cavity is the **inferior hypogastric plexus**. It is formed by contributions from the hypogastric nerves, sympathetic trunks, and pelvic splanchnic nerves.

1. Use your fingers to dissect the rectum from the anterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx.

2. Retract the rectum medially. Identify the **sacral plexus** of nerves. The sacral plexus is closely related to the anterior surface of the piriformis muscle. Verify the following (Fig. 5.34):
   - The **lumbosacral trunk** (ventral primary rami of L4, L5) joins the sacral plexus.
   - The ventral primary rami of S2 and S3 emerge between the proximal attachments of the piriformis muscle.
   - The **sciatic nerve** is formed by the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves L4 through S3. The sciatic nerve exits the pelvis by passing through the greater sciatic foramen, usually inferior to the piriformis muscle.
   - The **superior gluteal artery** usually passes between the **lumbosacral trunk** and the **ventral primary ramus of spinal nerve S1**, and exits the pelvis by passing superior to the piriformis muscle.
   - The **inferior gluteal artery** usually passes between the **ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2 and S3**. The inferior gluteal artery exits the pelvis by passing inferior to the piriformis muscle.
   - The **pudendal nerve** receives a contribution from the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2, S3, and S4. The pudendal nerve exits the pelvis by passing inferior to the piriformis muscle.
3. Identify the **pelvic splanchnic nerves (nervi erigentes)**. Pelvic splanchnic nerves are branches of the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves S2 to S4 (Fig. 5.34). Pelvic splanchnic nerves carry preganglionic parasympathetic axons for the innervation of pelvic organs and the distal gastrointestinal tract (from the left colic flexure through the anal canal). **[G 236, 237, 239; N 392; C 296]**
4. The **sacral portion of the sympathetic trunk** is located on the anterior surface of the sacrum, medial to the ventral sacral foramina. Identify the following:
   - **Sympathetic trunk** – continues from the abdominal region into the pelvis. The sympathetic trunks of the two sides join in the midline near the level of the coccyx to form the **ganglion impar**.
   - **Gray rami communicantes** – connect the sympathetic ganglia to the sacral ventral primary rami. Each gray ramus communicans carries postganglionic sympathetic fibers to a ventral primary ramus for distribution to the lower extremity and the perineum.
   - **Sacral splanchnic nerves** – arise from two or three of the sacral sympathetic ganglia and pass directly to the **inferior hypogastric plexus**. Sacral splanchnic nerves carry sympathetic fibers that distribute to the pelvic viscera.

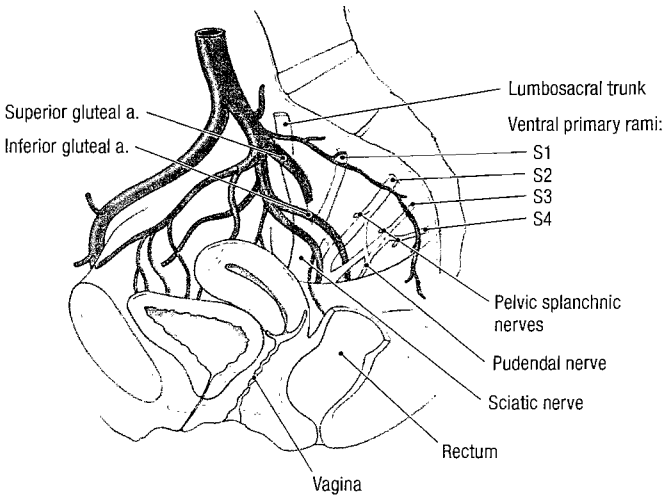


Figure 5.34. Sacral plexus of nerves in the female.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Pelvic Nerve Plexuses

The pelvic splanchnic nerves (parasympathetic outflow of S2, S3, S4) are closely related to the lateral aspects of the rectum. The inferior hypogastric plexus is located in the connective tissue lateral to the uterus. These autonomic nerve plexuses can be injured during surgery, causing loss of bladder control.

After you dissect . . .

Review the abdominal aorta and its terminal branches. Use the dissected specimen to review the branches of the internal iliac artery. Review the region supplied by each branch. Review the formation of the sacral plexus and the branches that were dissected in the pelvis. Use the dissected specimen and an illustration to review the course of the pudendal nerve from the pelvis to the urogenital triangle.

PELVIC DIAPHRAGM

Before you dissect . . .

The **pelvic diaphragm** is the muscular floor of the pelvic cavity. The pelvic diaphragm is formed by the levator ani muscle and coccygeus muscle plus the fasciae covering their superior and inferior surfaces (Fig. 5.35A,B). The pelvic diaphragm extends from the pubic symphysis to the coccyx. Laterally, the pelvic diaphragm is attached to the fascia covering the obturator internus muscle. The urethra, vagina, and anal canal pass through a midline opening in the pelvic diaphragm called the **urogenital hiatus**.

Dissection Instructions

1. Perform the dissection of the pelvic diaphragm on one side of the cadaver. Save the side with the best dissection of arteries and nerves for review. **[G 193, 195; N 343, 344; C 271, 272]**

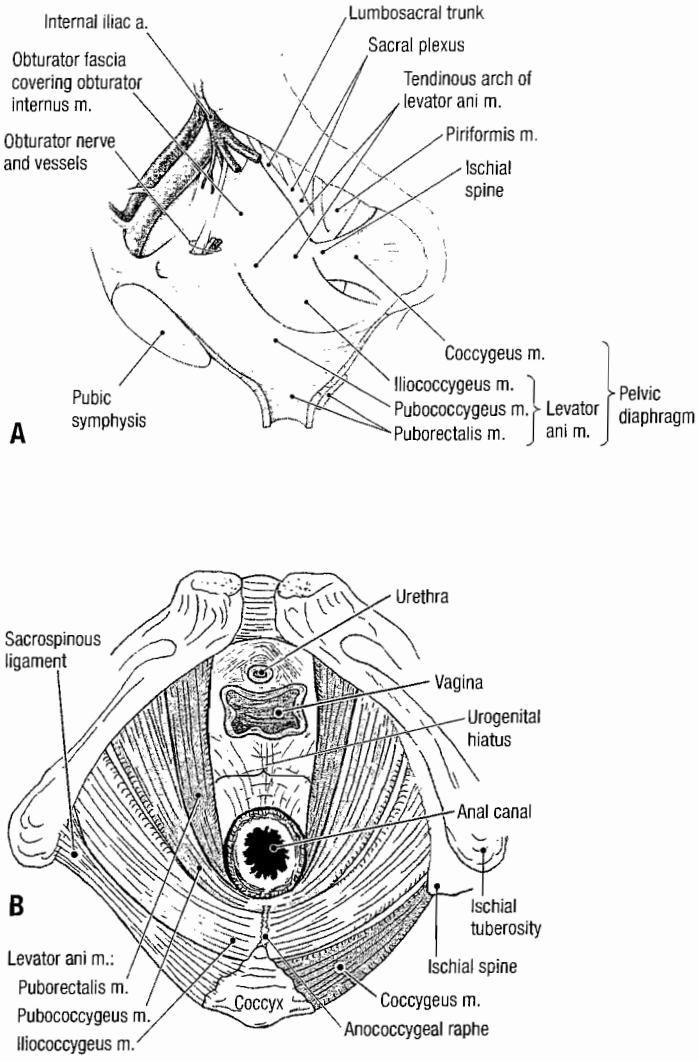


Figure 5.35. Pelvic diaphragm in the female. **A.** Left lateral view. **B.** Inferior view.

2. Retract the urinary bladder, uterus, and rectum toward the midline.
3. Use blunt dissection to remove any remaining fat and connective tissue from the superior surface of the pelvic diaphragm.
4. Find the **tendinous arch of the levator ani muscle** (Fig. 5.35A). Palpate the medial surface of the ischial spine. Locate the obturator canal. The tendinous arch lies just inferior to a line connecting these two structures. Note that the tendinous arch is the superior edge of the pelvic diaphragm.
5. Identify the three muscles that form the **levator ani muscle**. The muscles are identified by their proximal attachments. Learn, but do not dissect, their distal attachments. Identify the following:
   - **Puborectalis muscle** – its proximal attachment is the body of the pubis. Its distal attachment is the puborectalis muscle of the opposite side (midline raphe). The pubococcygeus muscle forms the lateral boundary of the urogenital hiatus. The two puborectalis muscles form a "puborectal sling," which causes the **anorectal flexure** at the ampulla of the rectum (Fig. 5.32). During defecation, the puborectalis muscles relax, the anorectal flexure straightens, and the elimination of fecal matter is facilitated.
   - **Pubococcygeus muscle** – its proximal attachment is the body of the pubis. Its distal attachment is the coccyx and the **anococcygeal** raphe.
   - **Iliococcygeus muscle** – its proximal attachment is the tendinous arch. Its distal attachment is the coccyx and the anococcygeal raphe.
6. The levator ani muscle supports the pelvic viscera and resists increases in intra-abdominal pressure.
7. Identify the **coccygeus muscle**. The coccygeus muscle completes the pelvic diaphragm posteriorly. The proximal attachment of the coccygeus muscle is the ischial spine and its distal attachment is the lateral border of the coccyx and the lowest part of the sacrum.
8. Place one hand in the ischioanal fossa and the other on the superior surface of the pelvic diaphragm. Palpate the thinness of the pelvic diaphragm.
9. Observe that the **obturator internus muscle** forms the lateral wall of the ischioanal fossa. The proximal attachment of the obturator internus muscle is the margin of the obturator foramen and inner surface of the obturator membrane. The distal attachment of the obturator internus muscle will be studied when the gluteal region is dissected. Superior to the tendinous arch of the levator ani muscle, the obturator internus muscle forms the lateral wall of the pelvic cavity. Inferior to the tendinous arch, the obturator internus muscle forms the lateral wall of the perineum.
10. Use your textbook to learn the general pattern of lymphatic drainage of the pelvis, and the location of each of the following groups of lymph nodes: **[G 203, 236, 237; N 386; R 349; C 269]**
    - **Internal iliac nodes**
    - **External iliac nodes**
    - **Common iliac nodes**
    - **Sacral nodes**
    - **Lumbar nodes**

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the proximal attachment and action of each muscle of the pelvic diaphragm. Review the relationship of the branches of the internal iliac artery to the pelvic diaphragm. Review the relationship of the sacral plexus to the pelvic diaphragm. Use an illustration to review the role of the pelvic diaphragm in dividing the pelvic cavity from the perineum. Review the function of the pelvic diaphragm and perineal body in supporting the pelvic and abdominal viscera. Use an illustration to review the lymphatic drainage from the pelvis and perineum. Realize that structures in the perineum (including the labia majora and the lower part of the anal canal) drain into superficial inguinal lymph nodes. The lymphatic drainage of the ovary follows the ovarian vessels to the lumbar chain of nodes, bypassing the pelvic drainage systems. Review the formation of the thoracic duct to complete your understanding of the lymph drainage from this region.

CHAPTER 6

THE LOWER LIMB

The functional requirements of the lower limb are weight bearing, locomotion, and maintenance of equilibrium. As such, it is constructed for strength at the cost of mobility. The lower limb is divided into four parts: **hip**, **thigh**, **leg**, and **foot** (Fig. 6.01). It is worth noting that the term *leg* refers only to the portion of the lower limb between the knee and ankle, not to the entire lower limb.

SURFACE ANATOMY [G 343; N 467; C 310]

The surface anatomy of the lower limb can be studied on a living subject or the cadaver. Place the cadaver in the supine position and palpate the following structures (Fig. 6.01):

- **Iliac crest**
- **Anterior superior iliac spine**
- **Inguinal ligament**
- **Pubic tubercle**
- **Patella**
- **Medial femoral epicondyle**
- **Lateral femoral epicondyle**
- **Medial malleolus**
- **Lateral malleolus**

SUPERFICIAL VEINS AND CUTANEOUS NERVES

Before you dissect . . .

The order of dissection will be as follows: The entire lower limb will be skinned. The superficial veins and cutaneous nerves will be dissected. The subcutaneous connective tissue and fat will be removed leaving selected superficial veins and nerves intact. The deep fascia of the thigh will be studied.

KEY TO REFERENCES
G = Grant's Atlas, 11th ed., page number
N = Netter's Atlas, 3rd ed., plate number
R = Rohen's Color Atlas of Anatomy, 5th ed., page number
C = Clemente's Atlas, 4th ed., page number

Dissection Instructions

SKIN INCISIONS

1. Refer to Figure 6.02A. The objective is to remove the skin from the lower limb, leaving the superficial veins and cutaneous nerves undisturbed.
2. Make a cut from the anterior superior iliac spine (D) along the inguinal ligament to the pubic tubercle. Extend this cut around the medial side of the thigh to the posterior surface of the thigh (E). If the abdomen and perineum have been dissected, this cut has been made previously.
3. Make a cut from the midpoint of the inguinal ligament (F) to the dorsum of the foot (G) passing over the patella.
4. Make a cut across the dorsum of the foot at the webs of the toes (H to H). The skin is very thin on the dorsum of the foot. Do not cut too deep.

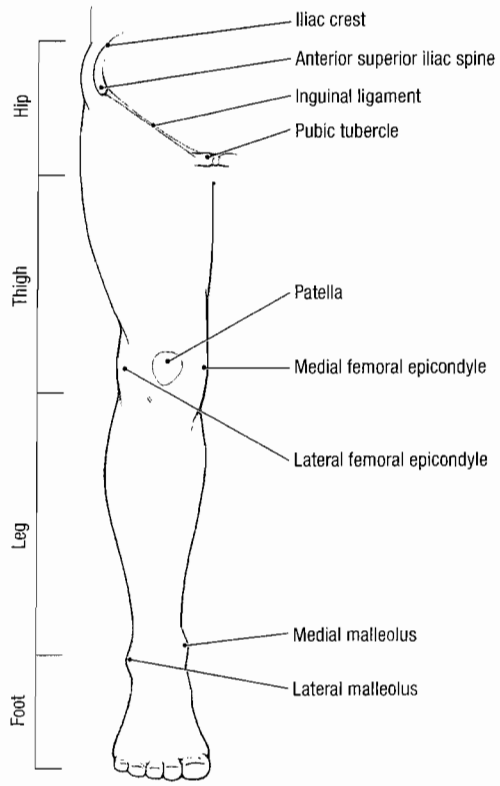


Figure 6.01. Surface anatomy of the lower limb

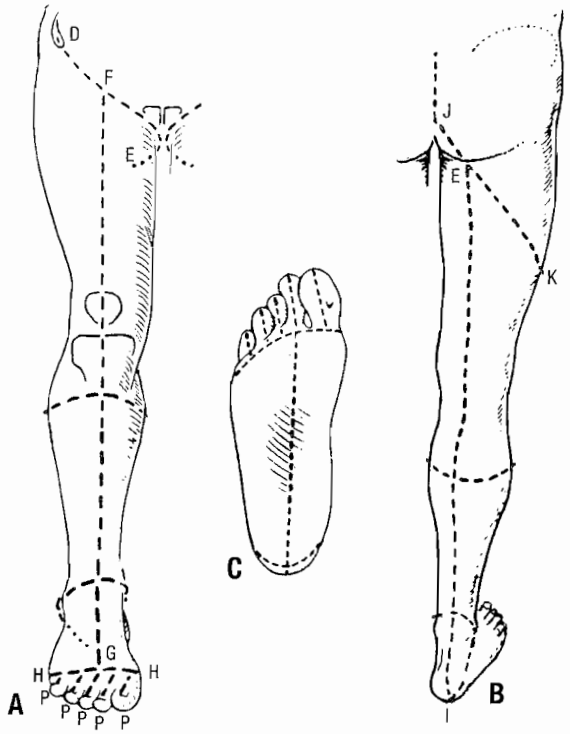


Figure 6.02. Skin incisions.

5. Make one cut along the dorsal midline of each toe to the proximal end of the nail (H to P).
6. Remove the skin from the thigh, leg and dorsum of the foot as far laterally and medially as possible. Make as many transverse skin incisions as are needed to speed up the skinning process.
7. Turn the cadaver into the prone position and refer to Figure 6.02B.
8. If not already done during the dissection of the pelvis, begin at the midline over the sacrum and remove all of the skin from the gluteal region. Detach this skin along line J-K and place it in the tissue container.
9. Make a cut along the midline of the thigh and leg from the gluteal fold to the heel (E to I).
10. Extend the previous transverse skin incisions around the limb to join incision E-I. Remove the skin completely from the lower limb and place it in the tissue container.
11. Remove the skin from the sole of the foot using the cuts indicated in Figure 6.02C. The skin is thick over the heel and over the heads of the metatarsal bones, but it is thinner on the toes and the instep.

SUPERFICIAL FASCIA OF THE POSTERIOR LOWER LIMB [G 340, 342; N 527; R 468, 473; C 505, 538]

1. With the cadaver still in the prone position, examine the structures contained in the superficial fascia of the posterior aspect of the lower limb (Fig. 6.03B).
2. The skin of the gluteal region is innervated by **cluneal nerves** (L. *clunis*, buttock).
   - **Superior cluneal nerves** and **middle cluneal nerves**—are branches of dorsal primary rami. Do not attempt to find these nerves.
   - **Inferior cluneal nerves** are branches of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh (Fig. 6.03B). The inferior cluneal nerves wrap around the inferior border of the gluteus maximus muscle and they have been removed if the perineum has been dissected previously.
3. The **posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh** runs deep to the deep fascia (Fig. 6.03, *dotted lines*). Branches of the posterior cutaneous nerve pierce the deep fascia to supply the skin on the posterior surface of the thigh and popliteal fossa.

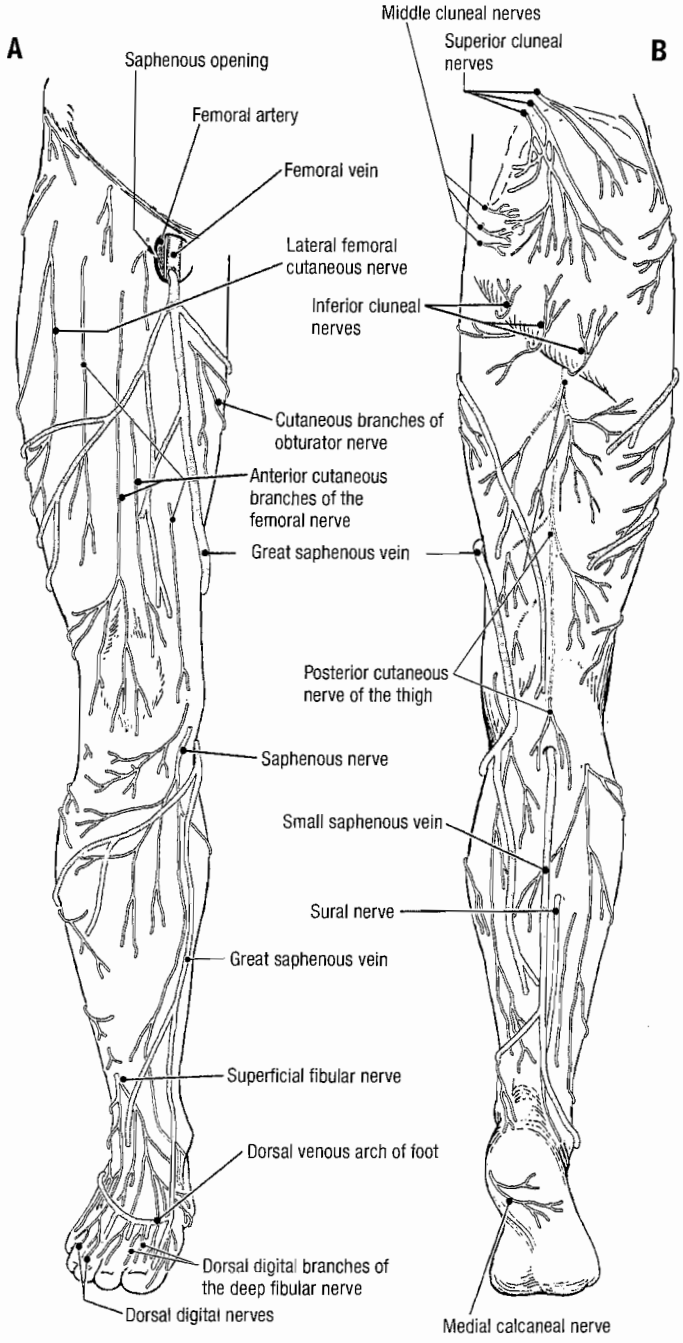


Figure 6.03. Cutaneous nerves and superficial veins of the lower limb. **A.** Anterior view. **B.** Posterior view.

4. Find the **small saphenous vein** where it passes posterior to the lateral malleolus at the ankle (Fig. 6.03B). The small saphenous vein arises from the lateral end of the **dorsal venous arch**. Clean the small saphenous vein and follow it superiorly until it pierces the deep fascia in the popliteal fossa to join the popliteal vein.
5. Identify the **sural nerve** (L. *sura*, calf of the leg). The sural nerve pierces the deep fascia half way down the posterior aspect of the leg and courses parallel to the small saphenous vein. The sural nerve innervates the skin of the lateral aspect of the ankle and foot.
6. Remove all **superficial fascia** from the posterior aspect of the gluteal region, thigh, and leg. Preserve the deep fascia, nerves, and veins that you have dissected.

SUPERFICIAL FASCIA OF THE ANTERIOR LOWER LIMB [G 340, 342; N 526; R 462, 476; C 314, 342, 350]

1. Turn the cadaver to the supine position and refer to Figure 6.03A.
2. Find the **great saphenous vein** (Gr., *saphenous*, manifest; obvious) where it arises from the medial end of the **dorsal venous arch of the foot** (Fig. 6.03A). Use blunt dissection to follow it proximally. At the ankle, the great saphenous vein passes anterior to the medial malleolus. At the knee, it passes over the posterior border of the medial epicondyle of the femur. The great saphenous vein then courses anterolaterally to lie on the anterior surface of the thigh.
3. Inferior to the inguinal ligament, the great saphenous vein passes deeply through the **saphenous opening** in the deep fascia and drains into the femoral vein. The saphenous opening will be dissected later.
4. Note the following characteristics of the great saphenous vein:
   - The **saphenous nerve** accompanies the great saphenous vein in the leg.
   - **Perforating veins** connect the great saphenous vein to the deep venous system.
   - Unnamed superficial veins join the great saphenous vein, and some of these are quite large.
   - Three named superficial veins (**superficial external pudendal**, **superficial epigastric**, and **superficial circumflex iliac**) join the great saphenous vein near its proximal end.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Great Saphenous Vein

Superficial veins and perforating veins have valves that prevent the back flow of blood. If these valves become insufficient, then the veins become distended, a condition known as varicose veins.

Portions of the great saphenous vein may be removed and used as graft vessels in coronary bypass surgery. The distal end of the vein is attached to the aorta, reversing the direction of blood flow through the vessel so that the valves do not impede the flow of blood.

5. Use an illustration to study the cutaneous innervation of the anterior surface of the lower limb and note the following (Fig. 6.03A):
   - **Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve** – passes deep to the inguinal ligament and innervates the skin of the lateral thigh.
   - **Anterior cutaneous branches of the femoral nerve** – innervate the skin of the anterior thigh. These branches enter the superficial fascia lateral to the great saphenous vein.
   - **Cutaneous branches of the obturator nerve** – innervate the skin of the medial thigh.
   - **Saphenous nerve** – pierces the deep fascia on the medial aspect of the knee and accompanies the great saphenous vein into the leg. The saphenous nerve is a branch of the femoral nerve. The saphenous nerve innervates the anterior and medial aspects of the leg and the medial side of the ankle and foot.
6. In the distal third of the leg, identify the **superficial fibular (peroneal) nerve**. The superficial fibular nerve pierces the deep fascia proximal to the lateral malleolus. Follow the superficial fibular nerve distally and note that it innervates the dorsum of the foot and sends **dorsal digital nerves** to the skin of the toes. The skin between the 1st toe and the 2nd toe is innervated by the **dorsal digital branches of the deep fibular nerve**. This innervation pattern is used for the assessment of nerve injuries in the leg.
7. Identify the **superficial inguinal lymph nodes**. Two subgroups can be identified (Fig. 6.04):
   - **Horizontal group**—about 2 cm below the inguinal ligament
   - **Vertical group**—around the proximal end of the great saphenous vein
8. Note that the superficial inguinal lymph nodes collect lymph from the lower limb, lower anterior abdominal wall, gluteal region, perineum, and external genitalia. The superficial inguinal lymph nodes drain into the **deep inguinal lymph nodes**. Do not attempt to dissect the deep inguinal lymph nodes.

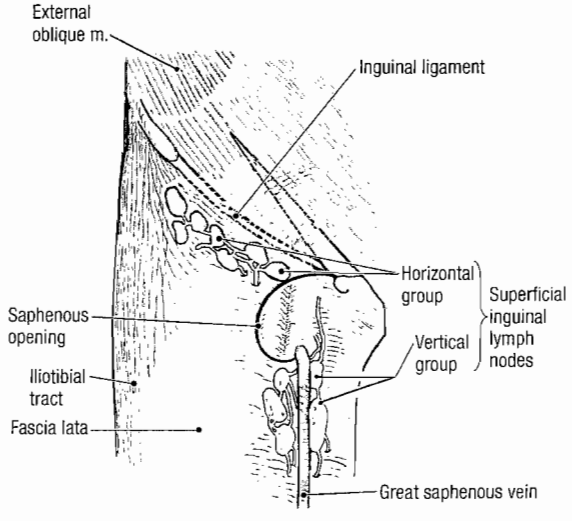


Figure 6.04. Saphenous opening and superficial inguinal lymph nodes.

9. Remove the superficial fascia from the anterior thigh, leg, and foot. Preserve the superficial veins, the cutaneous nerves, and the deep fascia.
10. Examine the deep fascia of the lower limb. It is named regionally: **fascia lata** (L., *latus*, broad) in the thigh, **crural fascia** in the leg and **pedal fascia** in the foot. The lateral portion of the fascia lata is particularly strong and is called the **iliotibial tract.**

After you dissect . . .

Review the superficial fascia of the lower limb. Review the course of the superficial veins from distal to proximal. Review the locations and distributions of the cutaneous nerves that you have dissected. Review the deep fascia and name its parts.

ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF THE THIGH

Before you dissect . . .

The fascia lata is connected to the femur by intermuscular septa to form three fascial compartments of the thigh: **anterior (extensor), medial (adductor),** and **posterior (flexor)** (Fig. 6.05). The anterior compartment of the thigh contains five muscles: sartorius, rectus femoris, vastus lateralis, vastus intermedius, and vastus medialis. The shared action of these muscles is extension of the leg. The major blood supply to the lower limb (femoral artery and deep femoral artery) passes through the anterior compartment of the thigh. **[G 345; N 487; R 441; C 400]**

The order of dissection will be as follows: The fascia lata of the thigh will be reviewed and its saphenous opening will be studied. The anterior surface of the fascia lata will be opened to expose the femoral triangle. The femoral triangle will be dissected and its contents traced distally. The adductor canal will be dissected and the anterior thigh muscles will be studied.

SKELETON OF THE THIGH

Refer to a skeleton and Figure 6.06.

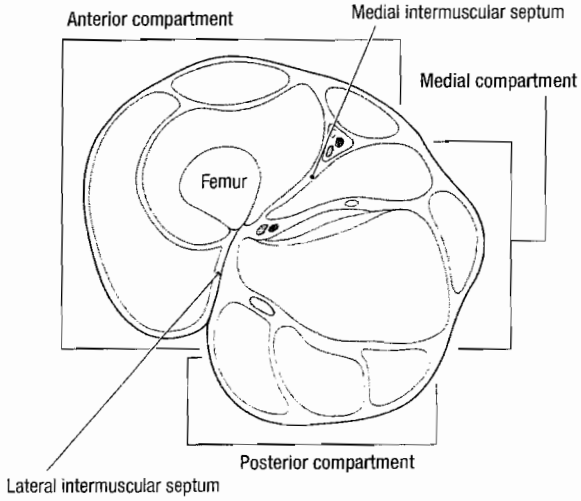


Figure 6.05. Compartments of the right thigh from an inferior view

On the pelvis, identify: **[G 362; N 468; R 422; C 250]**

- **Anterior superior iliac spine**
- **Anterior inferior iliac spine**
- **Pubic tubercle**

On the femur, identify: **[G 362; N 471; R 425; C 374, 375]**

- **Greater trochanter**
- **Lesser trochanter**
- **Lateral condyle** and **lateral epicondyle**
- **Medial condyle** and **medial epicondyle**
- **Medial supracondylar line**
- **Adductor tubercle**
- **Linea aspera**
- **Pectineal line**

On the tibia, identify: **[G 362; N 495; R 426; C 388]**

- **Tuberosity**

On the patella, identify:

- **Anterior surface**
- **Articular surface**

Dissection Instructions

SAPHENOUS OPENING [G 350, 352; N 526; R 454; C 314]

1. Clean the fascia lata in the region of the **saphenous opening** (Fig. 6.07). Observe that the great saphenous vein passes through the saphenous opening to enter the deeper part of the anterior thigh.
2. Use scissors to make a vertical incision through the fascia lata from the saphenous opening to the sartorius muscle.
3. Use your fingers to separate the fascia lata from deeper structures. Make a second incision that extends laterally from the lateral margin of the saphenous opening, parallel to the inguinal ligament. Open the fascia lata widely.
4. Identify the **femoral sheath** (Fig. 6.07). The femoral sheath envelops the femoral artery, femoral vein, and some deep inguinal lymph nodes. Note that the femoral sheath is shaped like a short cone. The femoral sheath is subdivided into **three compartments** (Fig. 6.07):
   - **Lateral** – containing the femoral artery
   - **Intermediate** – containing the femoral vein
   - **Medial** – containing lymphatics. The medial compartment of the femoral sheath is called the **femoral canal** and its proximal opening is called the **femoral ring.**

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Femoral Hernia

The femoral ring is a site of potential herniation. A femoral hernia is a protrusion of abdominal viscera through the femoral ring into the femoral canal. A femoral hernia may become strangulated due to the inflexibility of the inguinal ligament.

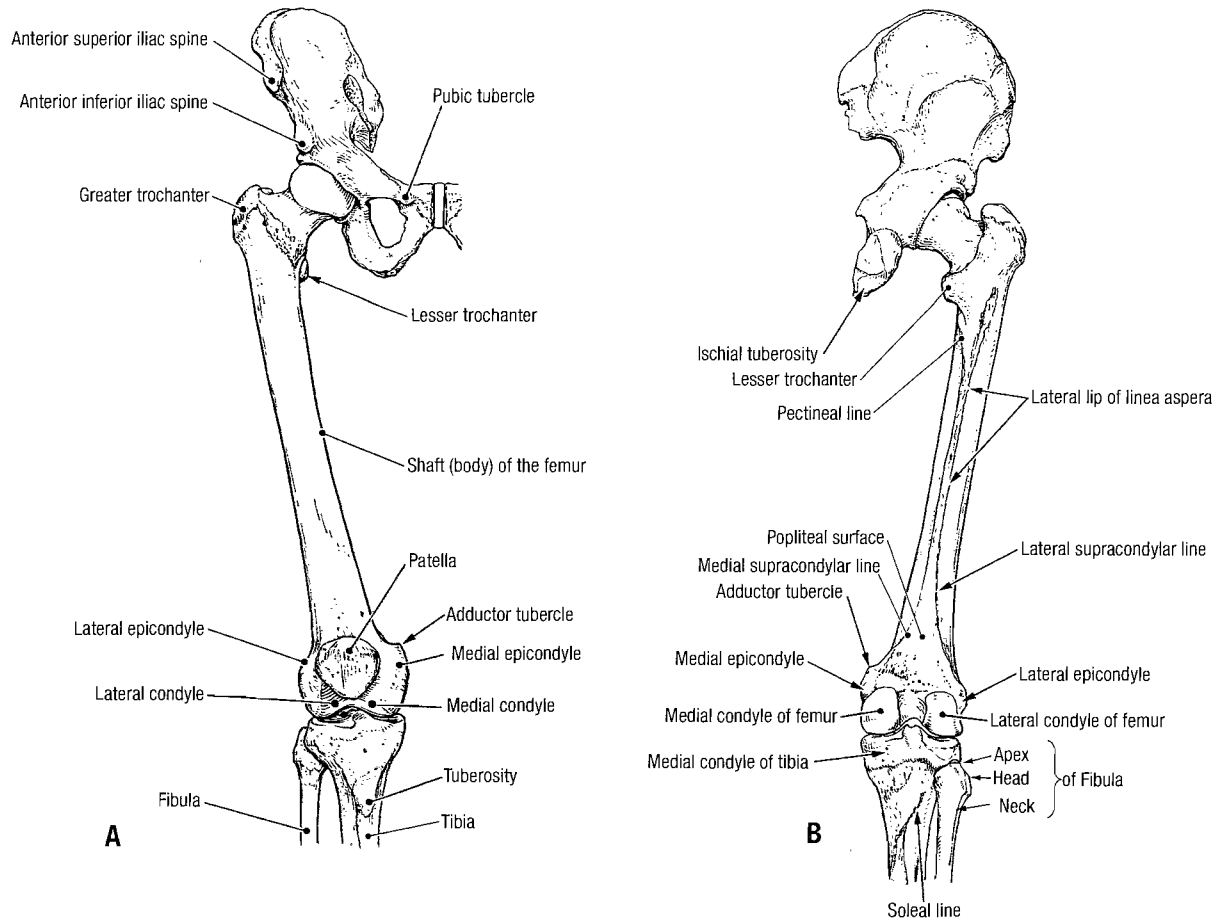


Figure 6.06. Bones of the thigh. **A.** Anterior view. **B.** Posterior view.

FEMORAL TRIANGLE [G 354, 355; N 482; R 463-465; C 318, 321]

1. Identify the **femoral triangle** (Fig. 6.08). The femoral triangle is bounded superiorly by the **inguinal ligament,** laterally by the medial border of the **sartorius muscle** and medially by the lateral border of the **adductor longus muscle.** The base of the femoral triangle is the inguinal ligament and the apex is located inferiorly. The **contents of the femoral triangle** are the:
   - **Femoral nerve** and its branches
   - **Femoral artery** and some of its branches
   - **Femoral vein** and some of its tributaries (notably, the great saphenous vein)
   - **Femoral sheath**

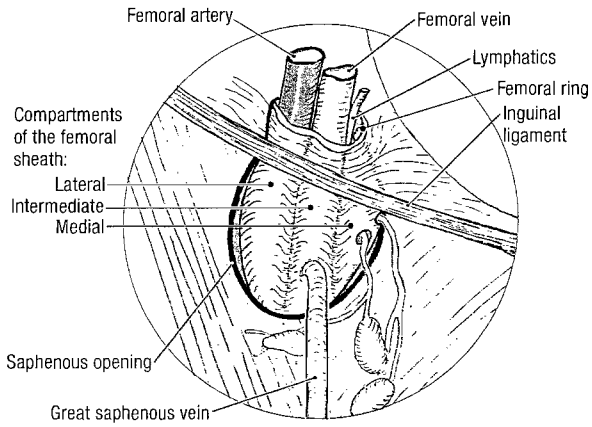


Figure 6.07. The femoral sheath.

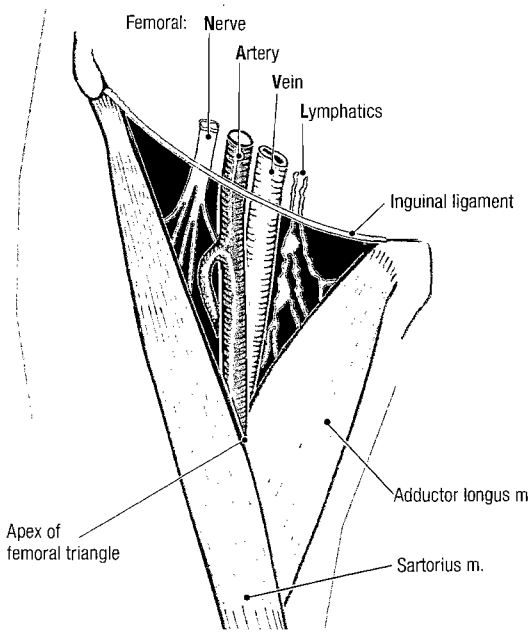


Figure 6.08. Boundaries and contents of the femoral triangle.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Femoral Triangle

The pulse of the femoral artery can be palpated about 3 cm inferior to the midpoint of the inguinal ligament. Within the femoral triangle, the femoral vessels are accessed for diagnostic purposes. A catheter introduced into the femoral artery can be advanced proximally into the aorta and its branches. A catheter introduced into the femoral vein can be advanced through the inferior vena cava into the right atrium of the heart.

2. Use blunt dissection to clean the **femoral artery** and **femoral vein** within the femoral triangle. Three small arteries arise from the femoral artery just distal to the inguinal ligament: **superficial external pudendal artery**, **superficial epigastric artery**, and **superficial circumflex iliac artery**. Respectively, these arteries pass medially, superiorly and laterally from their origin and they supply the superficial fascia of the abdominal wall, proximal thigh and part of the perineum. Do not attempt to follow these vessels.
3. Three large arteries arise within the femoral triangle: **deep artery of the thigh (deep femoral artery, profunda femoris artery)**, **lateral circumflex femoral artery**, and **medial circumflex femoral artery** (Fig. 6.09B). The medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries usually arise from the deep artery of the thigh, but each may arise from the femoral artery.
4. Preserve the major veins (femoral vein, deep vein of the thigh, great saphenous vein) but remove their tributaries to clear the dissection field.
5. The **femoral artery** courses distally between the sartorius muscle and the adductor longus muscle (Fig. 6.09A).
6. Retract the femoral artery laterally or medially and identify the **deep artery of the thigh**. The deep artery of the thigh courses parallel to the femoral artery but posterior to the adductor longus muscle (Fig. 6.09C). The deep artery of the thigh supplies the medial and posterior compartments of the thigh.
7. Identify the **lateral circumflex femoral artery**. The lateral circumflex femoral artery usually arises from the deep artery of the thigh very close to its origin from the femoral artery. The lateral circumflex femoral artery passes laterally, deep to the proximal end of the rectus femoris muscle, and supplies the lateral part of the thigh.
8. Identify the **medial circumflex femoral artery**. The medial circumflex femoral artery typically arises from the deep artery of the thigh close to the origin of the lateral circumflex femoral artery. The medial circumflex femoral artery passes posteriorly, between the pectineus and iliopsoas muscles.
9. The floor of the femoral triangle is formed by the iliopsoas muscle and the pectineus muscle. Use blunt dissection to clean the floor of the femoral triangle.
10. The iliacus and psoas major muscles collectively are named the **iliopsoas muscle**. The proximal attachment of the iliacus muscle is the iliac fossa and the proximal attachments of the psoas major muscle are the transverse processes and bodies of vertebra T12-L5. The distal attachment of the iliopsoas muscle is the lesser trochanter of the femur and it is a strong flexor of the thigh.
11. The proximal attachment of the **pectineus muscle** is the superior ramus of the pubis and its distal attach-

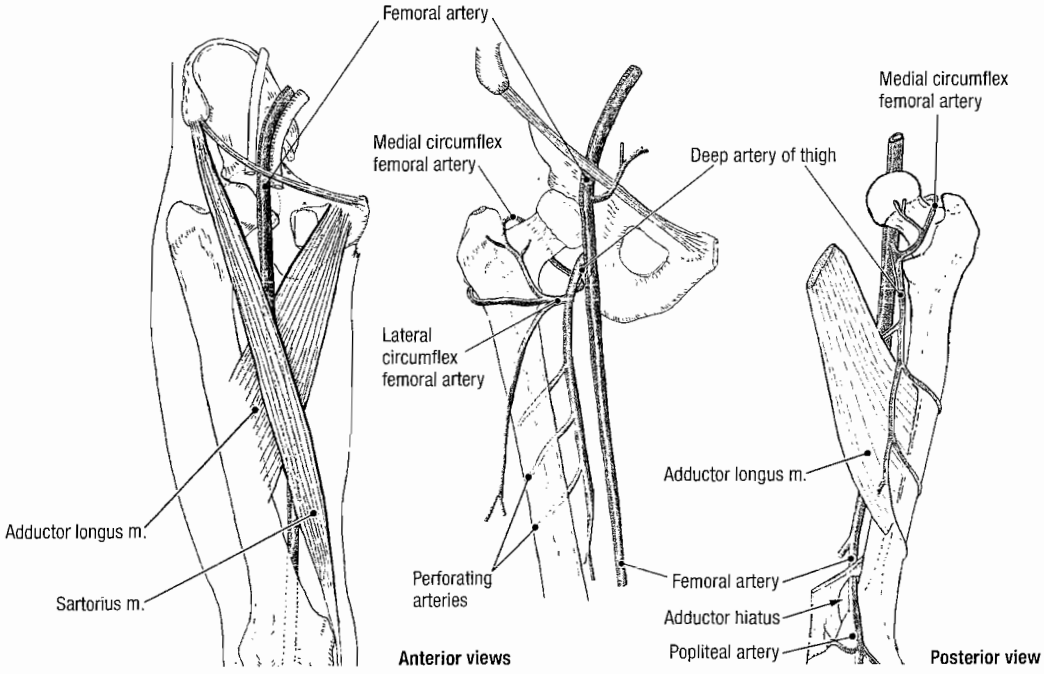


Figure 6.09. Arteries of the thigh.

ment is the pectineal line of the femur. The pectineus muscle adducts and flexes the thigh.

12. Use blunt dissection to expose the **femoral nerve**, which lies on the lateral side of the femoral artery (Fig. 6.08). Follow the femoral nerve inferiorly and observe that it divides into numerous branches. The femoral nerve innervates the anterior thigh muscles and the skin of the anterior thigh. Its motor branches will be identified later.
13. Verify that the **anterior cutaneous branches of the femoral nerve** enter the superficial fascia by penetrating the fascia lata along the anterior surface of the sartorius muscle (Fig. 6.03).

ADDUCTOR CANAL [G 364; N 482; R 464; C 321]

1. The **adductor canal** begins at the **apex of the femoral triangle** and ends at the **adductor hiatus**, which is an opening in the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle located just above the knee (Fig. 6.09C). The femoral vessels pass through the adductor canal to reach the popliteal fossa.
2. Use scissors to cut the fascia lata along the superficial surface of the sartorius muscle. The cut should extend from the anterior superior iliac spine to the medial epicondyle of the femur.
3. Use your fingers to separate the **sartorius muscle** from the deep fascia that is posterior to it. The proximal attachment of the sartorius muscle is the anterior superior iliac spine and its distal attachment is the medial surface of the proximal tibia. Observe that the sartorius muscle crosses both the hip joint and the knee joint. It flexes and laterally rotates the thigh, and flexes the leg.
4. Transect the sartorius muscle near the apex of the femoral triangle. Reflect the distal part of the sartorius muscle inferiorly. The adductor canal is now exposed deep to the inferior part of the sartorius muscle.
5. Examine the femoral vessels within the adductor canal. Observe that the **femoral vein** lies posterior to the **femoral artery**. Follow the femoral artery distally through the adductor hiatus, where its name changes to **popliteal artery** (Fig. 6.09C).
6. The **nerve to vastus medialis** and the **saphenous nerve** accompany the femoral vessels in the adductor canal. The saphenous nerve innervates the skin of the medial side of the leg, ankle, and foot.

QUADRICEPS FEMORIS MUSCLE [G 358, 364; N 483; R 465; C 322]

1. Use scissors to make a vertical cut through the fascia lata between the apex of the femoral triangle and the patella. Make a transverse incision in the fascia lata above the patella. Open the fascia lata widely.
2. Use your fingers to follow the inner surface of the fascia lata laterally. Here, the fascia lata is continuous with the **lateral intermuscular septum** (Fig. 6.10). The lateral intermuscular septum is attached to the **linea aspera** on the posterior aspect of the femur.

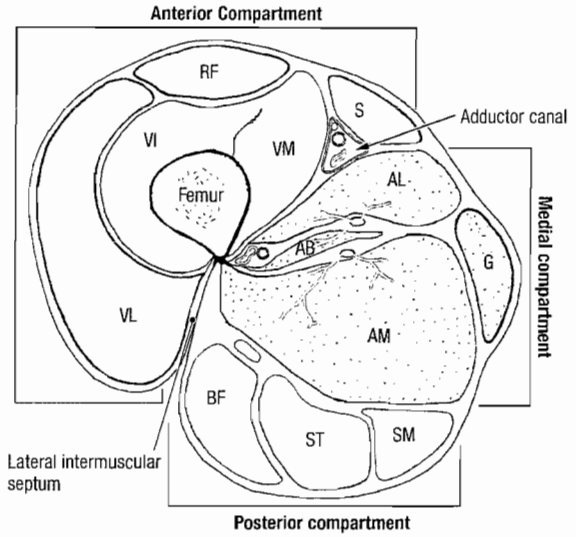


Figure 6.10. Transverse section through the right thigh, inferior view. Anterior compartment: **VI**, vastus intermedius; **VL**, vastus lateralis; **VM**, vastus medialis; **RF**, rectus femoris; **S**, sartorius; Medial compartment: **AB**, adductor brevis; **AL**, adductor longus; **AM**, adductor magnus; **G**, gracilis; Posterior compartment: **BF**, biceps femoris; **ST**, semitendinosus; **SM**, semimembranosus.

3. The **quadriceps femoris muscle** occupies most of the anterior compartment of the thigh (Fig. 6.10). The four parts of the quadriceps femoris muscle are the rectus femoris, vastus lateralis, vastus intermedius, and vastus medialis. The tendons of all four muscles unite to form the **quadriceps femoris tendon**. The quadriceps femoris tendon is attached to the patella. The **patellar ligament** attaches the patella to the tibial tuberosity, so the ultimate attachment of the quadriceps femoris muscle is the tibial tuberosity (Fig. 6.11).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Patellar Tendon (Quadriceps) Reflex

Tapping the patellar ligament stimulates the patellar reflex (quadriceps reflex; knee jerk). Tapping activates muscle spindles in the quadriceps femoris muscle, and afferent impulses travel in the femoral nerve to spinal segments L2, L3, and L4. Efferent impulses are then carried by the femoral nerve to the quadriceps femoris muscle, resulting in a brief contraction. The patellar tendon reflex tests the function of the femoral nerve, and spinal cord segments L2-L4.

4. Identify the **rectus femoris muscle** in the midline of the anterior thigh. The proximal attachment of the rectus femoris muscle is the anterior inferior iliac spine and its distal attachment is the tibial tuberosity. The rectus femoris muscle crosses both the hip joint and the knee joint. It flexes the thigh and extends the leg.
5. Identify the **vastus lateralis muscle** on the lateral side of the anterior thigh (Fig. 6.11). The proximal attachments of the vastus lateralis muscle are the lateral lip

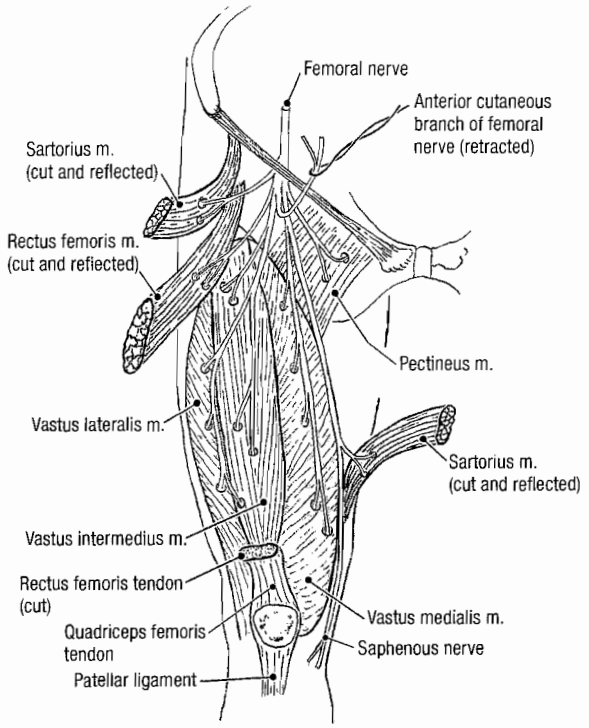


Figure 6.11. Branches of the femoral nerve.

of the linea aspera and greater trochanter of the femur. The distal attachment of the vastus lateralis muscle is the tibial tuberosity, and it extends the leg.

6. Identify the **vastus medialis muscle** on the medial side of the anterior thigh. The proximal attachments of the vastus medialis muscle are the medial lip of the linea aspera of the femur and the intertrochanteric line. The distal attachment of the vastus medialis muscle is the tibial tuberosity and it extends the leg.
7. Expose the **vastus intermedius muscle** by retracting the rectus femoris muscle to one side. The proximal attachments of the vastus intermedius muscle are the anterior and lateral surfaces of the femur (Fig. 6.10). The distal attachment of the vastus intermedius muscle is the tibial tuberosity and it extends the leg.
8. Identify the **motor branches of the femoral nerve** to the anterior thigh muscles (Fig. 6.11). The motor branches of the femoral nerve are located between the rectus femoris muscle and the vastus muscles. Note that the femoral nerve innervates the sartorius muscle and the pectineus muscle in addition to innervating the quadriceps femoris muscle.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the anterior thigh muscles in their correct anatomical positions. Use the dissected specimen to review the boundaries and contents of the femoral triangle. Review the origin and course of the femoral artery and its branches in the thigh. Use the dissected specimen to review the attachments and actions of the muscles of the anterior compartment of the thigh. Recall the rule of innervation of the anterior compartment of the thigh: **All muscles in the anterior compartment of the thigh are innervated by the femoral nerve.**

MEDIAL COMPARTMENT OF THE THIGH [G 360; N 483; R 465; C 324]

Before you dissect . . .

The medial compartment of the thigh contains five muscles: adductor magnus, adductor longus, adductor brevis, gracilis, and obturator externus. The shared function of this group of muscles is to adduct the thigh. Therefore, they are also known as the adductor group of thigh muscles.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The fascia lata will be removed from the medial thigh. The gracilis muscle will be studied. The adductor muscles will be dissected by following the medial circumflex femoral artery, the deep artery of the thigh, and the branches of the obturator nerve.

Dissection Instructions

1. On the medial aspect of the thigh, use your hands to separate the fascia lata from the muscles of the medial compartment. Begin at the medial border of the femoral triangle and work medially. Be careful not to remove the gracilis muscle. Use scissors to cut the fascia lata and remove it.
2. Identify the **gracilis muscle**. With your fingers, follow the gracilis muscle to its inferior attachment on the medial condyle of the tibia. The gracilis muscle crosses both the hip and knee joints. It adducts the thigh and assists in flexion of the leg.
3. Use an illustration to observe the proximal attachments of the **pectineus muscle**, **adductor longus muscle**, and **gracilis muscle** along a curved line on the pubic bone. **[G 362; N 472; R 439; C 374]**
4. Observe the anterior surface of the **pectineus** and **adductor longus muscles**. They fan out to their distal attach on the linea aspera of the femur. Both muscles are adductors of the thigh.
5. Note that the **deep artery of the thigh** passes between the pectineus and adductor longus muscles. Follow the deep artery of the thigh between the pectineus and adductor longus muscles and use blunt dissection to define the muscle borders.
6. Follow the deep artery of the thigh posterior to the adductor longus muscle to separate the adductor longus muscle from the adductor brevis muscle. Transect the adductor longus muscle 5 cm inferior to its proximal attachment and reflect it (Fig. 6.12).
7. Clean the deep artery of the thigh and identify one or two **perforating arteries**. Perforating arteries penetrate the adductor brevis muscle, encircle the femur, and supply the muscles of the medial and posterior compartments of the thigh.
8. The **adductor brevis muscle** can now be seen at a deeper plane. The proximal attachments of the adductor brevis muscle are the body and inferior ramus of the pubis and its distal attachments are the pectineal line and linea aspera of the femur. The adductor brevis muscle adducts the thigh.

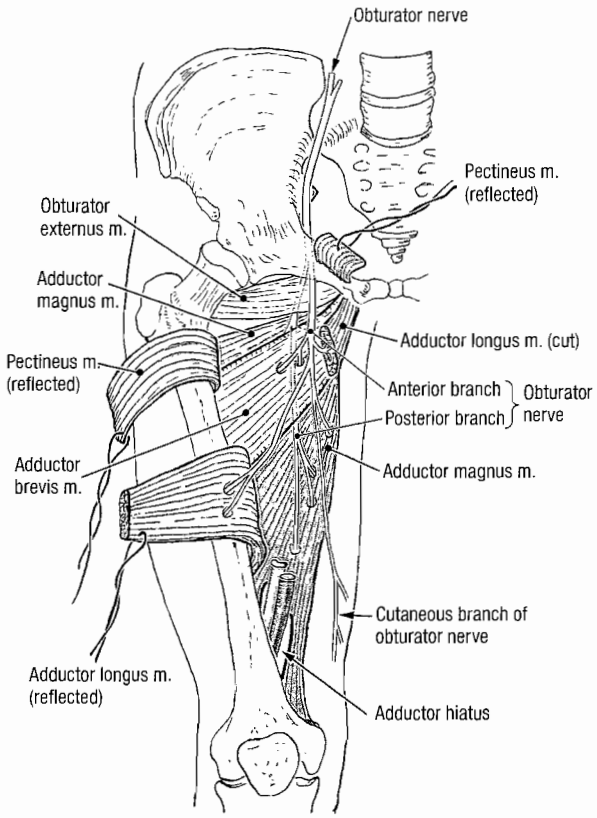


Figure 6.12. How to dissect the adductor brevis muscle using the branches of the obturator nerve.

9. Refer to Figure 6.12 and note that the **anterior branches of the obturator nerve** cross the anterior surface of the adductor brevis muscle and the **posterior branches of the obturator nerve** cross its posterior surface.
10. Follow the anterior branch of the obturator nerve proximally to separate the pectineus muscle from the adductor brevis muscle. Transect the pectineus muscle about 5 cm inferior to its proximal attachment and reflect it (Fig. 6.12). Note that the superior border of the adductor brevis muscle is deep to the pectineus muscle. Use blunt dissection to clean the adductor brevis. Do not damage the anterior branches of the obturator nerve.
11. The posterior branches of the obturator nerve pass between the adductor brevis muscle and **adductor magnus muscle**. Use blunt dissection to follow the posterior branch of the obturator nerve proximally to separate the adductor brevis muscle from the adductor magnus muscle.
12. Raise the adductor brevis muscle and observe the **adductor magnus muscle**. The proximal attachments of the adductor magnus muscle are the ischiopubic ramus and the ischial tuberosity, and its distal attachments are the gluteal tuberosity, linea aspera, medial supracondylar line, and adductor tubercle of the femur. The adductor magnus muscle adducts and extends the thigh.
13. Trace the adductor magnus tendon to the **adductor tubercle** on the medial epicondyle of the femur. Observe the **adductor hiatus** in the adductor magnus tendon. Note that femoral artery and vein pass from the anterior compartment of the thigh to the posterior compartment of the thigh through the adductor hiatus.
14. Study an illustration of the **obturator externus muscle**. Do not attempt to dissect this muscle, as it lies deep to the pectineus muscle and iliopsoas tendon. The obturator externus muscle is a lateral rotator of the thigh. **[G 376; N 483; C 323]**

After you dissect . . .

Replace the medial thigh muscles in their correct anatomical positions. Use the dissected specimen to review the attachments and action of each muscle dissected. Trace the deep artery of the thigh from its origin to its termination as the 4th perforating artery. Trace the medial femoral circumflex artery from its origin to where it disappears between the iliopsoas and pectineus muscles. Trace the course of the anterior and posterior branches of the obturator nerve. Recall the rule for innervation of the medial thigh muscles: **The obturator nerve innervates the muscles of the medial compartment of the thigh**. Note that the pectineus muscle may receive a motor contribution from the obturator nerve in addition to its innervation by the femoral nerve.

GLUTEAL REGION

Before you dissect . . .

The gluteal region (Gr. *gloutos*, buttock) lies on the posterior aspect of the pelvis. It is the most superior part of the lower limb. If you have already dissected the pelvis and perineum, the gluteus maximus has been reflected so that the blood supply to the perineal region could be traced.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The borders of the gluteus maximus muscle will be defined and it will be reflected to expose the muscles that lie deep to it. Arteries and nerves in the region will be studied. The greater and lesser sciatic foramina and the piriformis muscle will be key structures in understanding the relationships of this region.

SKELETON OF THE GLUTEAL REGION

Refer to a skeleton and a drawing of an articulated pelvis with intact ligaments. On the pelvis, identify (Fig. 6.13): **[G 363; N 468; R 423; C 249]**

- **Gluteal lines (posterior, anterior, inferior)**
- **Greater sciatic notch**
- **Greater sciatic foramen**
- **Ischial spine**
- **Lesser sciatic notch**
- **Lesser sciatic foramen**
- **Ischial tuberosity**
- **Sacrotuberous ligament**
- **Sacrospinous ligament**

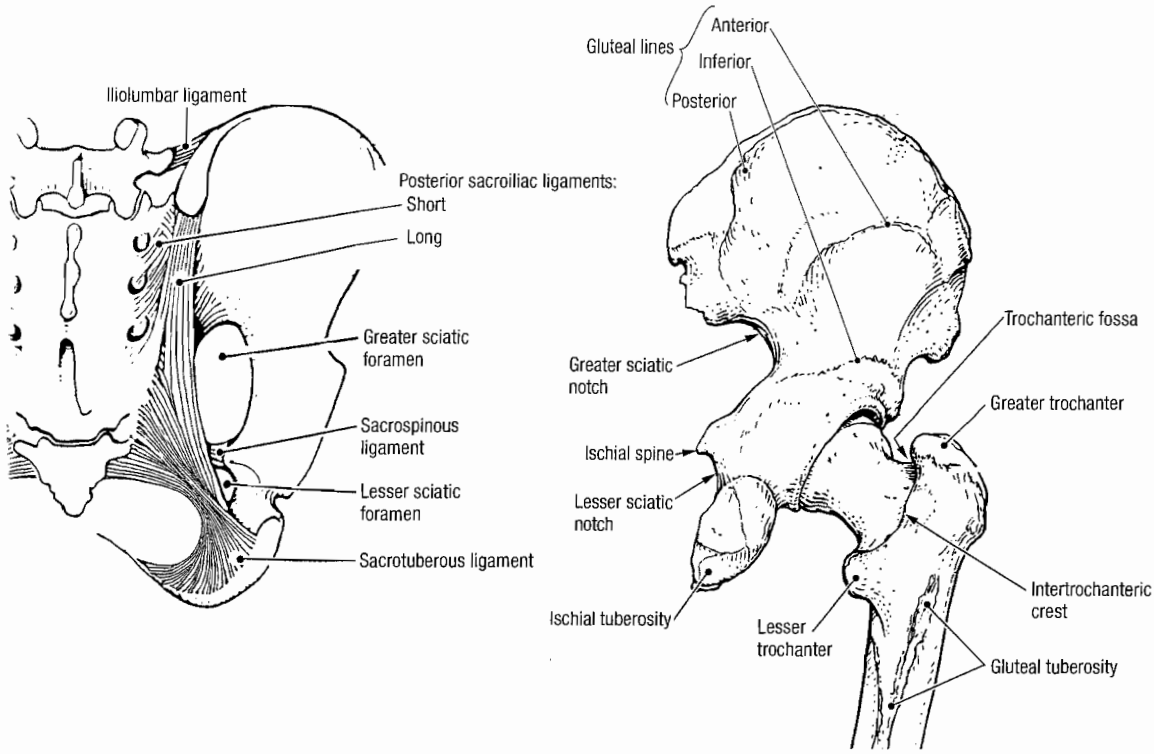


Figure 6.13. Skeleton of the gluteal region.

On the femur, identify (Fig. 6.13): **[G 363; N 471; R 425; C 375]**

- **Greater trochanter**
- **Intertrochanteric crest**
- **Trochanteric fossa**
- **Gluteal tuberosity**

Dissection Instructions

1. Place the cadaver in the prone position. If the pelvis and perineum have been dissected previously, go to step 8.
2. Remove the superficial fascia from the surface of the gluteal region.
3. Identify the **gluteus maximus muscle** (Fig. 6.14). The proximal attachment of the gluteus maximus muscle is the ilium, sacrum, coccyx, and sacrotuberous ligament. The distal attachment of the gluteus maximus muscle is the iliotibial tract, and through it, the lateral condyle of the tibia. A small part of the gluteus maximus muscle attaches the gluteal tuberosity of the femur. The gluteus maximus muscle is a powerful extensor of the thigh. **[G 366; N 477; R 440; C 329]**
4. Remove the fascia lata from the surface of the gluteus maximus muscle. The fascia lata is relatively thin at this location.
5. The **gluteal aponeurosis** is a thickening of the fascia lata that spans from the iliac crest to the superior border of the gluteus maximus muscle. Use your fingers to define the superior border of the gluteus maximus muscle and separate it from the gluteal aponeurosis.
6. Use blunt dissection to define the inferior border of the gluteus maximus muscle.
7. Use scissors to detach the gluteus maximus from its proximal attachment. Start at the superior border of the muscle and cut the gluteus maximus close to the ilium, sacrum, and sacrotuberous ligament.

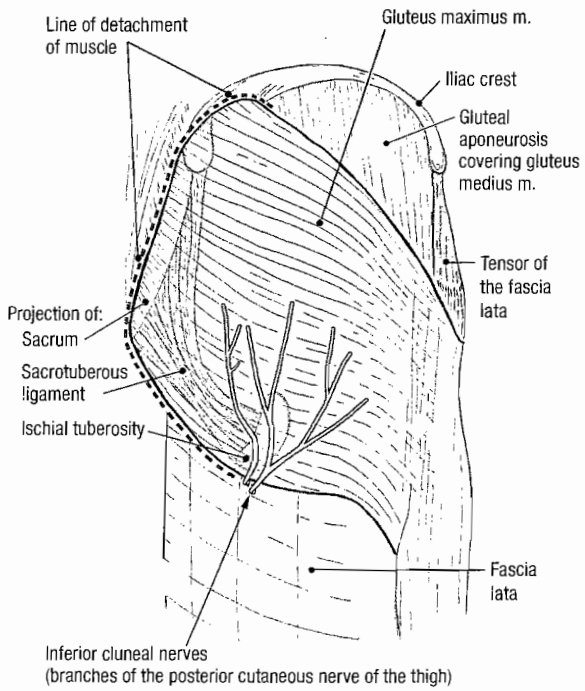


Figure 6.14. Muscles of the gluteal region, superficial dissection.

8. Insert your fingers deep to the gluteus maximus muscle and palpate the **inferior gluteal artery**, **vein**, and **nerve**. The inferior glutcal nerve is the only nerve supply to the gluteus maximus muscle.
9. Use scissors to cut the inferior gluteal vessels and nerve and reflect the gluteus maximus muscle laterally. Leave the distal attachment of the gluteus maximus muscle intact. The deeper structures of the gluteal region are now exposed (Fig. 6.15). **[G 368, 371; N 477; R 440; C 330]**
10. Use a scalpel to incise the gluteal aponeurosis along the iliac crest. Use skinning motions to remove the gluteal aponeurosis from the gluteus medius muscle.
11. The proximal attachment of the **gluteus medius muscle** is the deep surface of the gluteal aponeurosis and the lateral surface of the ilium between the **posterior gluteal line** and the **anterior gluteal line**. The distal attachment of the gluteus medius muscle is the greater trochanter of the femur and it is an abductor of the thigh.
12. The **piriformis muscle** is located inferior to the gluteus medius muscle. The proximal attachment of the piriformis muscle is the anterior surface of the sacrum and its distal attachment is the greater trochanter of the femur. The piriformis muscle is a lateral rotator of the thigh. Verify that the piriformis muscle passes through the greater sciatic foramen.
13. Use a probe to define the superior border of the piriformis muscle. Note that the **superior gluteal artery**, **vein**, and **nerve** pass between the piriformis muscle and the gluteus medius muscle.
14. Clean the inferior border of the piriformis muscle. Note that the **sciatic nerve, posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh, inferior gluteal vessels, inferior gluteal nerve, pudendal nerve**, and **internal pudendal vessels** all appear at the inferior border of the piriformis muscle.
15. Identify the **sciatic nerve** (Fig. 6.15). The sciatic nerve is the largest nerve in the body and it has a **tibial division** and a **common fibular division**. The divisions may emerge separately through the piriformis muscle. Use scissors to make a vertical cut (6 or 7 cm in length) through the posterior surface of the fascia lata and use your fingers to trace the sciatic nerve into the thigh.
16. Identify the **posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh**, which lies on the medial side of the sciatic nerve (Fig. 6.15).
17. Identify the cut ends of the **inferior gluteal vessels** and **nerve** (Fig. 6.15).
18. Identify the **pudendal nerve** and **the internal pudendal artery** and **vein** near the medial end of the inferior border of the piriformis muscle (Fig. 6.15). The pudendal nerve and internal pudendal vessels enter

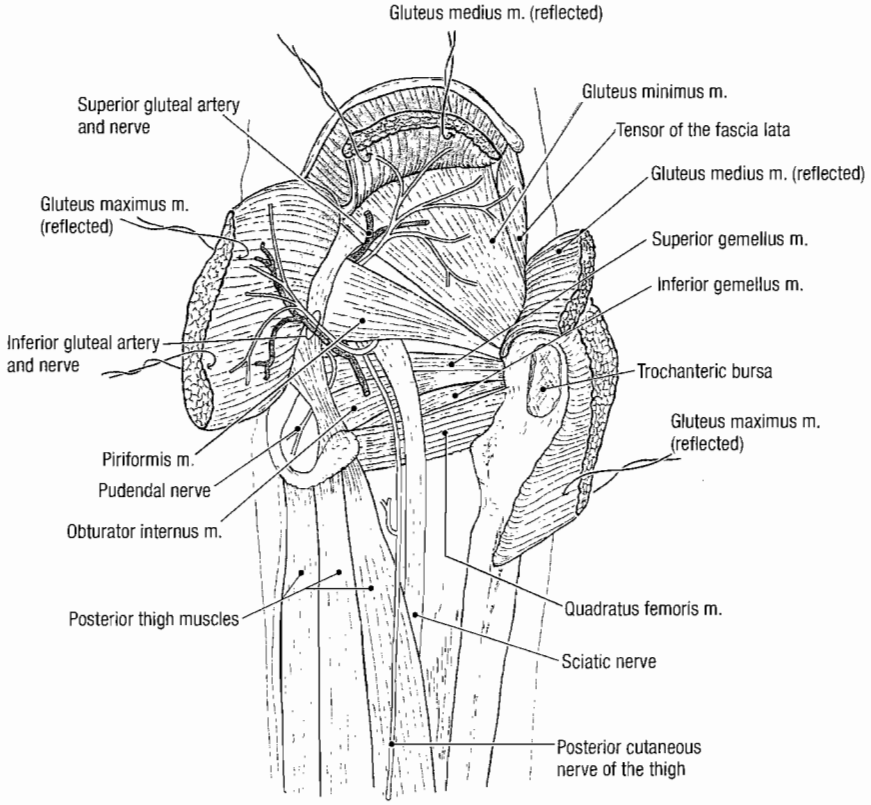


Figure 6.15. Muscles of the gluteal region, deep dissection. The gluteus maximus and gluteus medius muscles have been reflected.

the gluteal region by passing through the greater sciatic foramen and enter the perineum by passing through lesser sciatic foramen. The pudendal nerve and internal pudendal vessels supply the anal and urogenital triangles.

19. Identify the tendon of the **obturator internus muscle** (Fig. 6.15). The obturator internus muscle is inferior to the piriformis muscle. The proximal attachment of the obturator internus muscle is the margin of the obturator foramen and the inner surface of the obturator membrane. The distal attachment of the obturator internus muscle is the trochanteric fossa on the medial side of the greater trochanter of the femur. The obturator internus muscle is a lateral rotator of the thigh. The obturator internus muscle exits the lesser pelvis by passing through the lesser sciatic foramen.
20. Identify the two **gemellus muscles** (L. *gemellus*; twin) (Fig. 6.15). The proximal attachment of the **superior gemellus muscle** is the ischial spine superior to the obturator internus muscle. The proximal attachment of the **inferior gemellus muscle** is the ischial tuberosity inferior to the obturator internus muscle. Both gemellus muscles attach with the obturator internus muscle on the greater trochanter of the femur and both are lateral rotators of the thigh.
21. Identify the **quadratus femoris muscle** (Fig. 6.15), which is inferior to the inferior gemellus muscle. The proximal attachment of the quadratus femoris muscle is the ischial tuberosity and its distal attachment is the intertrochanteric crest of the femur. The quadratus femoris muscle is a lateral rotator of the thigh.
22. Locate the branches of the **superior gluteal vessels** superior to the piriformis muscle (Fig. 6.15). Use your fingers to follow these vessels deep to the gluteus medius muscle. Your fingers are in the plane between the gluteus medius muscle and the **gluteus minimus muscle**.
23. Use scissors to transect the gluteus medius muscle, following the course of the superior gluteal vessels. Gently reflect the proximal portion of the muscle superiorly and observe the **superior gluteal nerve**.
24. Reflect the distal part of the gluteus medius muscle and identify the **gluteus minimus muscle** (Fig. 6.15). The proximal attachment of the gluteus minimus muscle is the lateral surface of the ilium between the anterior gluteal line and the inferior gluteal line. The distal attachment of the gluteus minimus muscle is on the greater trochanter of the femur and it abducts the thigh.
25. Identify the **tensor of the fascia lata (tensor fasciae latae muscle)**. It is within the fascia lata inferior to the anterior superior iliac spine (Fig. 6.15). The proximal attachment of the tensor of the fascia lata is the anterior superior iliac spine and its distal attachment is the **iliotibial tract**. The tensor of the fascia lata is an abductor and medial rotator of the thigh.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Intragluteal Injections

The gluteal region is commonly used for intramuscular injections. These injections are made in the **superior lateral quadrant of the gluteal region**. Injections into the two inferior quadrants of the gluteal region would endanger the sciatic nerve, or the nerves and vessels that pass inferior to the piriformis muscle. Injections into the superior medial quadrant may injure the superior gluteal nerve and vessels. Intragluteal injections into the superior lateral quadrant are relatively safe since the superior gluteal nerve and vessels are well ramified in this region.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the muscles of the gluteal region in their correct anatomical positions. Review the attachments, action, and innervation of each muscle. Study the functions of muscles in the gluteal region. Extend your thigh. This movement is accomplished by the gluteus maximus muscle. Abduct your thigh. This movement is accomplished by the gluteus medius muscle, gluteus minimus muscle, and tensor of the fascia lata. Laterally rotate your thigh. This motion is accomplished by the piriformis muscle, obturator internus muscle, superior gemellus muscle, inferior gemellus muscle, and quadratus femoris muscle. Review the anatomy of the safe intragluteal injection site.

If you have completed the dissection of the pelvis and perineum prior to dissection of the lower limb, study the continuity of muscles, vessels, and nerves observed in the gluteal and pelvic regions. Within the lesser pelvis identify the obturator internus muscle and follow the muscle posteriorly into the gluteal region. Within the pelvis, identify the piriformis muscle then follow this muscle laterally to the greater trochanter of the femur. Within the pelvis, study the gluteal vessels and their relationship to the piriformis muscle and the sacral plexus. Review the sacral plexus and its contribution to the sciatic nerve. Note that the muscles of the gluteal region are innervated by branches of the sacral nerve plexus.

POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF THE THIGH

Before you dissect . . .

The posterior compartment of the thigh contains the posterior thigh muscles: biceps femoris, semimembranosus, and semitendinosus. The muscles of the posterior group extend the thigh and flex the leg. The posterior thigh muscles are commonly known as the "hamstring" muscles.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh will be studied. The course and branches of the sciatic nerve will be studied. The dissection will be extended into the popliteal fossa. The muscular boundaries of the popliteal fossa will be identified and the contents of the popliteal fossa will be studied.

SKELETON OF THE POSTERIOR THIGH

Refer to a skeleton. On the pelvis, identify (Fig. 6.06B): **[G 363; N 468; R 424; C 249]**

- **Ischial tuberosity**

On the femur, identify: **[G 363; N 471; R 425; C 375]**

- **Lateral lip of linea aspera**
- **Lateral supracondylar line**
- **Medial condyle**
- **Lateral condyle**
- **Popliteal surface**

On the fibula, identify: **[G 363; N 495; R 426; C 389]**

- **Apex**
- **Head**
- **Neck**

On the tibia, identify:

- **Medial condyle**
- **Soleal line**

Dissection Instructions

POSTERIOR THIGH [G 367, 369; N 477; R 469; C 334-337]

1. Place the cadaver in the prone position. Incise the fascia lata from the superior thigh to the knee and open it widely.
2. Use blunt dissection to clean the **sciatic nerve** and follow it inferiorly. The sciatic nerve passes deep to the long head of the biceps femoris muscle (Fig. 6.16).
3. Identify the **long head of the biceps femoris muscle**. The proximal attachment of the long head of the biceps femoris muscle is the ischial tuberosity and its distal attachment is the head of the fibula.
4. Retract the long head of the biceps femoris muscle laterally to observe the **short head of the biceps femoris muscle** (Fig. 6.16). The proximal attachment of the short head of the biceps femoris muscle is the lateral lip of the linea aspera of the femur. The tendon of the short head of the biceps femoris muscle joins the tendon of the long head. The biceps femoris muscle extends the thigh and flexes the leg.
5. On the medial side of the thigh, identify the **semitendinosus muscle** ("half tendon") (Fig. 6.16). The proximal attachment of the semitendinosus muscle is the ischial tuberosity and its distal attachment is the medial surface of the superior part of the tibia. The semitendinosus muscle extends the thigh and flexes the leg.
6. Use your fingers to separate the semitendinosus muscle from the **semimembranosus muscle** ("half membrane"). The proximal attachment of the semimembranosus muscle is the ischial tuberosity and its distal attachment is the posterior part of the medial condyle of the tibia. The semimembranosus muscle extends the thigh and flexes the leg.
7. Verify that the **hamstring part of the adductor magnus muscle** arises from the ischial tuberosity deep to the proximal attachment of the posterior thigh muscles. Confirm that the adductor magnus muscle forms the deep boundary of the posterior compartment of the thigh (Fig. 6.16). The hamstring part of the adductor magnus muscle is innervated by the sciatic nerve.
8. Follow the sciatic nerve through the posterior compartment of the thigh to the area behind the knee. The sciatic nerve gives off unnamed muscular branches to the posterior thigh muscles. The sciatic nerve typically divides at the level of the knee, but this division may occur more superiorly in the thigh, or in the gluteal region (Fig. 6.16).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Sciatic Nerve

The sciatic nerve and its branches innervate the posterior muscles of the thigh and the muscles of the leg (which act on the foot). The cutaneous branches of the sciatic nerve innervate a large area of the lower limb. Thus, when the sciatic nerve is injured, significant peripheral neurological deficits may occur: Paralysis of the flexors of the knee and all muscles below the knee, and widespread numbness of the skin of the posterior aspect of the lower limb.

POPLITEAL FOSSA [G 384-386; N 484; R 471, 472; C 338-340]

1. Define the **borders of the popliteal fossa**:
   - **Superolateral** – biceps femoris muscle
   - **Superomedial** – semitendinosus and semimembranosus muscles
   - **Inferolateral and inferomedial** – the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle
   - **Posterior** – skin and deep fascia
   - **Anterior** – popliteal surface of the femur and the popliteus muscle
2. At the superior border of the popliteal fossa, the sciatic nerve divides into the **tibial** and **common fibular (peroneal) nerves** (Fig. 6.16).
3. Use a probe to follow the **common fibular nerve** along the superolateral border of the popliteal fossa. Note that the common fibular nerve parallels the biceps femoris tendon and passes superficial to the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle.
4. Remove the remnants of the deep fascia (popliteal fascia) to expose the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius muscle. Use your fingers to follow the **tibial nerve** inferiorly. The tibial nerve bisects the popliteal fossa and passes deep to the gastrocnemius muscle at the inferior border of the popliteal fossa (Fig. 6.16).

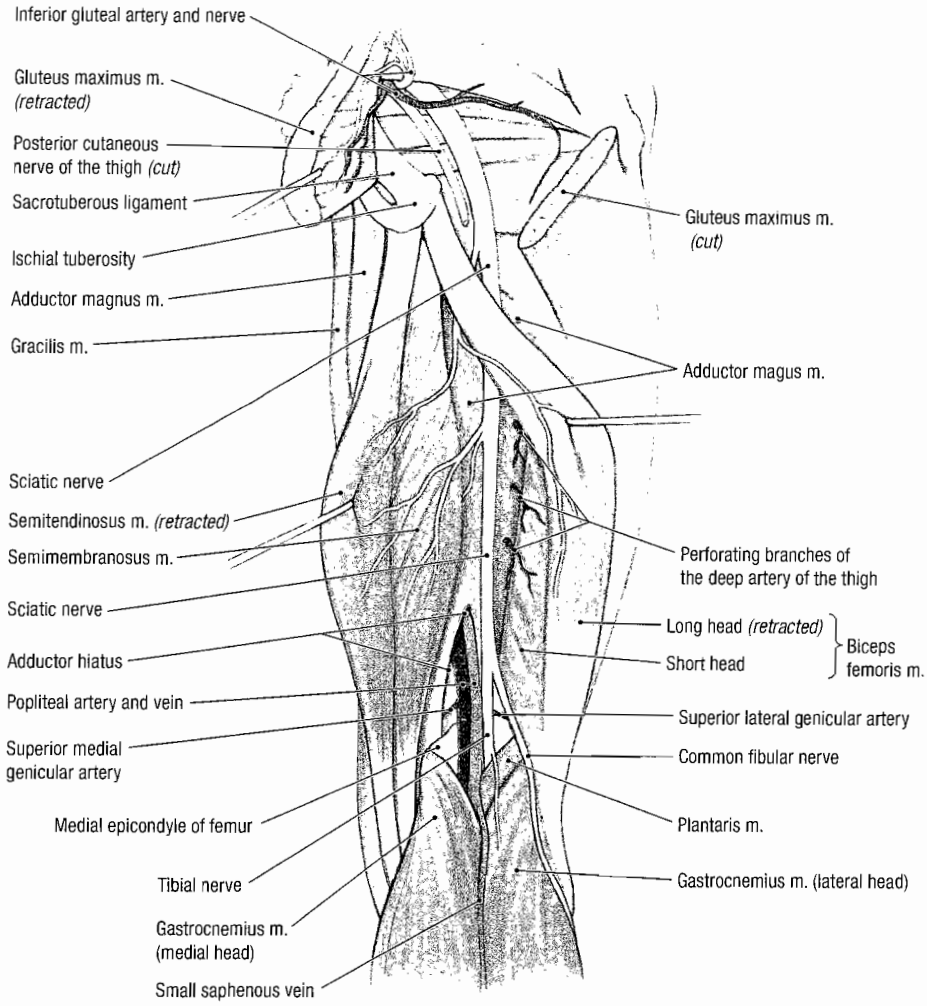


Figure 6.16. Contents of the posterior compartment of the thigh and popliteal fossa

5. At the inferior border of the popliteal fossa, insert your index fingers between the two bellies of the gastrocnemius muscle. Pull the muscle bellies apart for a distance of 5 to 10 cm. This will expose the structures that pass from the popliteal fossa into the leg.
6. The **popliteal artery** and **vein** are located deep to the tibial division of the sciatic nerve. Note that the popliteal artery and vein are enclosed by a common connective tissue sheath. Use scissors to open the sheath. Extend the incision superiorly and inferiorly.
7. Use a probe to separate the popliteal artery from the popliteal vein. Preserve the popliteal vein but remove its tributaries to clear the dissection field.
8. Use an illustration to study the arterial anastomoses around the knee joint (Fig. 6.17). Identify the **superior lateral genicular artery** and the **superior medial genicular artery**. These arteries are located deep in the popliteal fossa, proximal to the attachments of the gastrocnemius muscle. **[G 398; N 500; R 453; C 340]**
9. Distally, the popliteal artery passes deep to the gastrocnemius muscle (Fig. 6.16). Retract the popliteal artery posteriorly and identify the **inferior lateral genicular artery** and the **inferior medial genicular artery**. The inferior genicular arteries pass between the proximal attachments of the gastrocnemius muscle and the tibia.
10. Part of the floor of the popliteal fossa is formed by the **popliteus muscle** (Fig. 6.17). Retract the inferior end of the popliteal artery and vein and find the popliteus muscle. It will be seen better when the posterior muscles of the leg are dissected.
11. At the medial side of the knee, observe that the **sartorius**, **gracilis**, and **semitendinosus tendons** converge on the proximal end of the tibia in an arrangement that is named the **pes anserinus** (L., goose's foot).

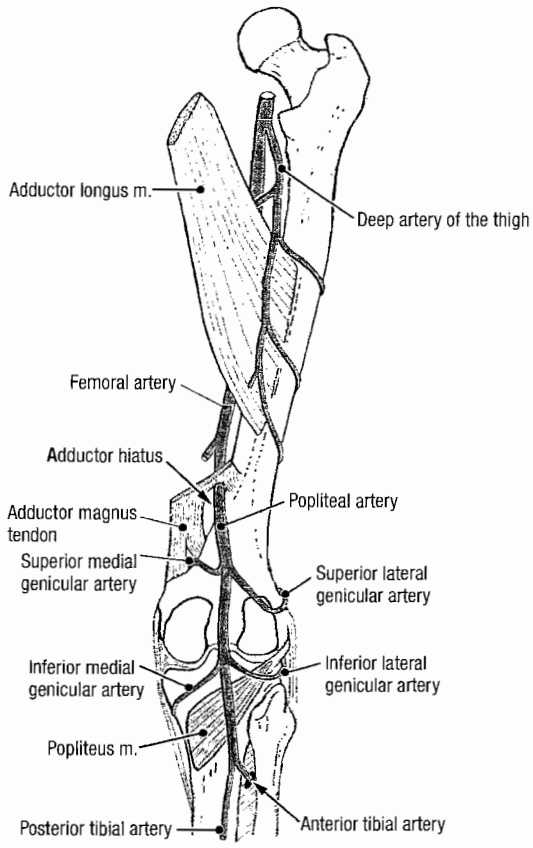


Figure 6.17. Popliteal artery and genicular arteries in the popliteal fossa.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh into their correct anatomical positions. Using the dissected specimen, review the attachments and actions of the posterior thigh muscles. Trace the course of the sciatic nerve from the pelvis to the knee. Review its terminal branches. Trace the femoral artery and vein from the level of the inguinal ligament to the popliteal fossa, naming its branches. Review the course of the deep artery of the thigh through the medial compartment of the thigh. Review the course of its perforating vessels through the adductor magnus muscle into the posterior compartment of the thigh. Review the anastomotic blood supply around the knee.

Review the principal muscle groups of the thigh and the innervation of each muscle group (Fig. 6.18). Recall the rules for innervation of the thigh muscles: **The anterior thigh muscles are innervated by the femoral nerve. The medial thigh muscles are innervated by the obturator nerve. The posterior thigh muscles are innervated by the sciatic nerve.**

LEG AND DORSUM OF THE FOOT

The two bones of the leg are unequal in size. The larger **tibia** is the weight-bearing bone of the leg. The **fibula** is surrounded by muscles except at its proximal and distal ends. The tibia and fibula are joined by an **interosseous membrane** (Fig. 6.19). The **deep fascia of the leg (crural fascia)** is attached to the fibula by two **intermuscular septa**: **anterior** and **posterior**. The tibia, fibula, interosseous membrane, and the intermuscular septa divide the leg into **three compartments: anterior, lateral (fibular)**, and **posterior** (Fig. 6.19). **[G 345; N 504; C 344]**

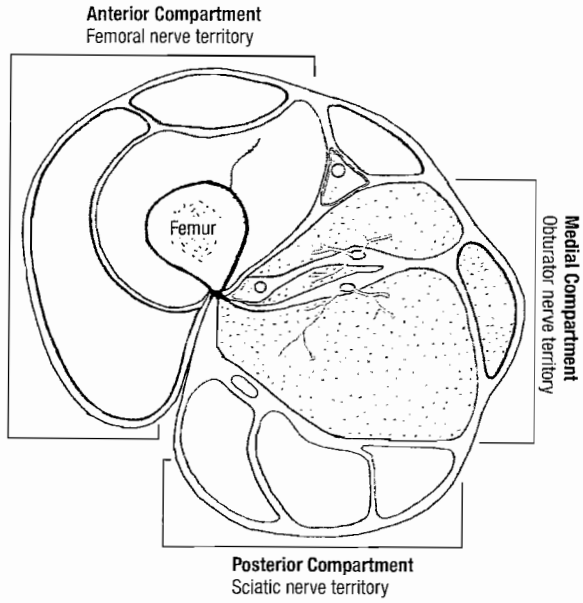


Figure 6.18. Motor nerve territories of the thigh.

Skeleton of the Leg

Refer to a skeleton. On the tibia, identify (Fig. 6.20): **[G 405; N 495; R 426; C 389]**

- **Medial condyle**
- **Lateral condyle**
- **Shaft (body)**
- **Anterior border**
- **Medial malleolus**
- **Soleal line**

On the fibula, identify (Fig. 6.20):

- **Head**
- **Neck**
- **Shaft (body)**
- **Lateral malleolus**

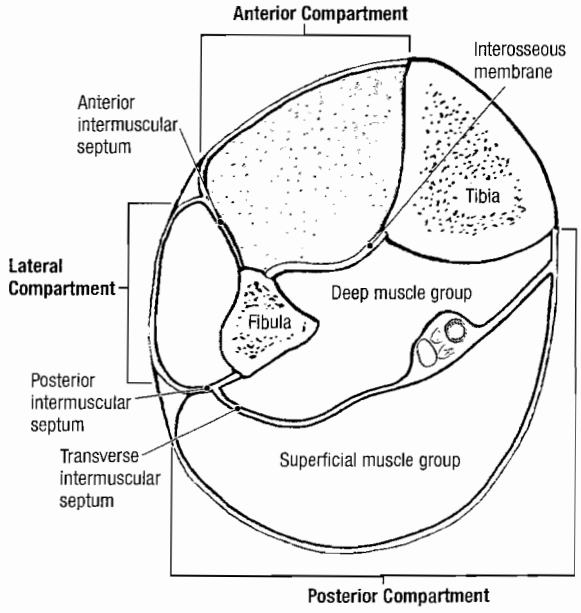


Figure 6.19. Compartments of the right leg, inferior view.

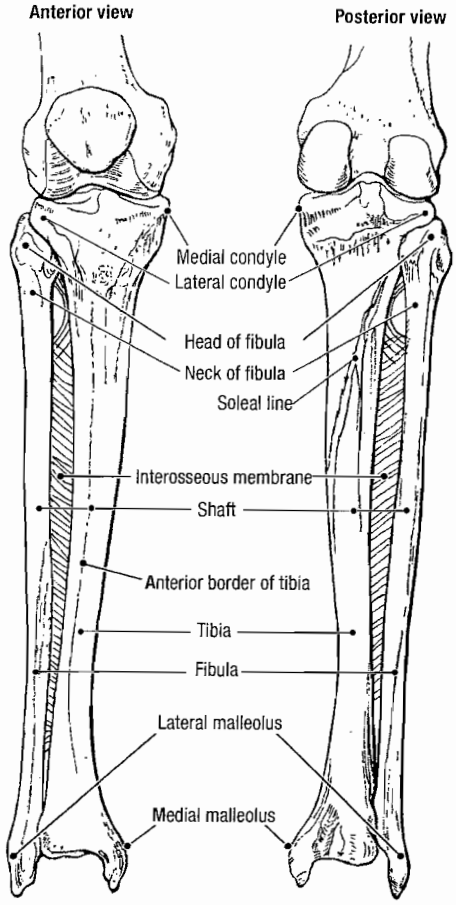


Figure 6.20. Skeleton of the leg.

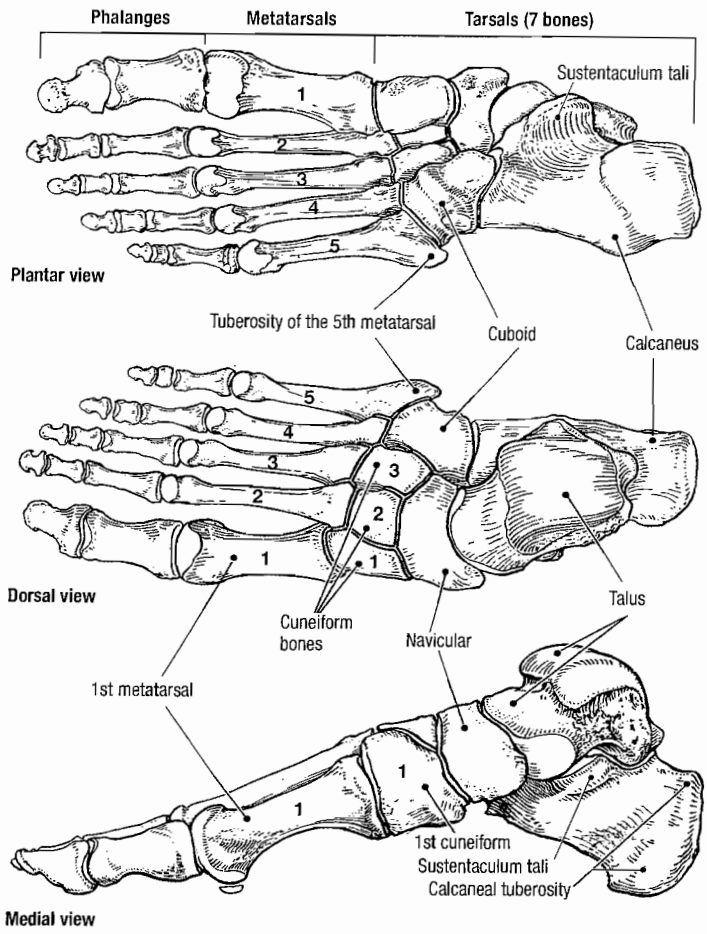


Figure 6.21. Skeleton of the foot.

In the articulated foot, identify the seven tarsal bones (Fig. 6.21): **[G 426; N 505; R 428; C 390, 391]**

- **Talus**
- **Calcaneus**
- **Navicular**
- **Cuboid**
- **Three cuneiform bones**—1st (medial), 2nd (intermediate, middle), and 3rd (lateral)

On the **calcaneus**, identify (Fig. 6.21):

- **Calcaneal tuberosity**
- **Sustentaculum tali**

Identify the **five metatarsal bones** and the **tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal bone**.

Identify **14 phalanges**. Note that the first toe has only two phalanges, whereas the other toes each have three phalanges.

ANTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF THE LEG AND DORSUM OF THE FOOT [G 404, 405; N 501, 502; R 448; C 343, 346]

Before you dissect . . .

The **anterior compartment** of the leg contains four muscles: tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, extensor digitorum longus, and fibularis (peroneus) tertius. The deep fibular (peroneal) nerve innervates the muscles of the anterior compartment. The group actions of the muscles in the anterior compartment are dorsiflexion of the foot, inversion of the foot, and extension of the toes.

Dissection Instructions

1. Place the cadaver in the supine position.
2. Observe that the deep fascia of the leg is firmly attached to the anterior border of the tibia.
3. Identify the **superior and inferior extensor retinacula** on the anterior surface of the ankle (Fig. 6.22). The retinacula are transverse thickenings of the deep fascia of the leg that hold tendons in place. The superior extensor retinaculum extends across the tendons superior to the ankle joint. The inferior extensor retinaculum is at the level of the ankle joint and it is Y-shaped. The stem of this Y is attached to the calcaneus.
4. Use a scalpel to make a vertical cut through the deep fascia of the leg just below the lateral condyle of the tibia. Use forceps to lift the edges of the deep fascia and observe that the muscles of the anterior compartment are attached to its deep surface. Open the deep fascia of the leg in the distal direction as far as the inferior extensor retinaculum.

5. The proximal attachments of the anterior muscles of the leg are on the proximal tibia, fibula, and interosseous membrane. Do not attempt to dissect the proximal attachments.
6. Observe that vessels, nerves, and the tendons of the anterior muscles of the leg cross the anterior surface of the ankle joint. From medial to lateral, identify (Fig. 6.22):
   - **Tibialis anterior tendon**
   - **Extensor hallucis longus tendon**
   - **Deep fibular (peroneal) nerve**
   - **Anterior tibial vessels**
   - **Extensor digitorum longus tendon**
   - **Fibularis tertius tendon**
7. Follow the tendon of the **tibialis anterior muscle** into the foot. Observe that the distal attachment of the tibialis anterior tendon is the first cuneiform bone and the base of the first metatarsal bone. The tibialis anterior muscle dorsiflexes and inverts the foot.
8. Follow the tendon of the **extensor hallucis longus muscle** into the foot. Observe that the distal attachment of the extensor hallucis longus tendon is the base of the distal phalanx of the great toe (L., *hallux*, great toe). The extensor hallucis longus muscle extends the great toe and dorsiflexes the foot.
9. Observe that the tendons of the **extensor digitorum longus muscle** attach to the middle and distal phalanges of the lateral four toes. The extensor digitorum longus muscle extends the toes and dorsiflexes the foot. Note that each of these tendons forms an **extensor expansion**.
10. Follow the tendon of the **fibularis tertius muscle** to its distal attachment on the tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal bone. The fibularis tertius muscle dorsiflexes the foot and assists in eversion of the foot. The fibularis tertius muscle may be absent.
11. At the level of the superior extensor retinaculum, identify the **anterior tibial artery** (Fig. 6.22). Trace the anterior tibial artery proximally. Use your fingers to forcibly separate the extensor digitorum longus muscle and the tibialis anterior muscle. Follow the anterior tibial artery between the two muscle bellies. **[G 406; N 501; R 448; C 343]**
12. Use a probe to clean the anterior tibial artery. Note that it passes over the superior border of the interosseous membrane (Fig. 6.22). Note that the anterior tibial artery lies directly on the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane and that it gives rise to unnamed muscular branches.
13. Observe that the deep fibular nerve joins the anterior tibial artery just below the knee (Fig. 6.22). The deep fibular nerve is the motor nerve of the anterior compartment of the leg and the dorsum of the foot. Trace the deep fibular nerve proximally and confirm that it is a branch of the **common fibular nerve**.
14. Return to the ankle region and trace the distal end of the anterior tibial artery deep to the inferior extensor retinaculum. As the anterior tibial artery crosses the ankle joint, its name changes to **dorsalis pedis artery** (L., *pes*, *pedis*, foot). **[G 408; N 502; R 481; C 346]**
15. Use scissors to cut the inferior extensor retinaculum over the extensor digitorum longus tendons. Retract the tendons of the extensor digitorum longus muscle in the lateral direction.
16. In the dorsum of the foot deep to the tendons of the extensor digitorum longus muscle, identify the **extensor digitorum brevis muscle** and the **extensor hallucis brevis muscle**. The extensor digitorum brevis and extensor hallucis brevis muscles share a common muscle belly that attaches to the calcaneus. Four tendons arise from this muscle belly and attach to the extensor expansions of toes 1-4. The portion of this muscle that attaches on the great toe is called the extensor hallucis brevis muscle. These muscles extend the toes and they are innervated by the deep fibular nerve.

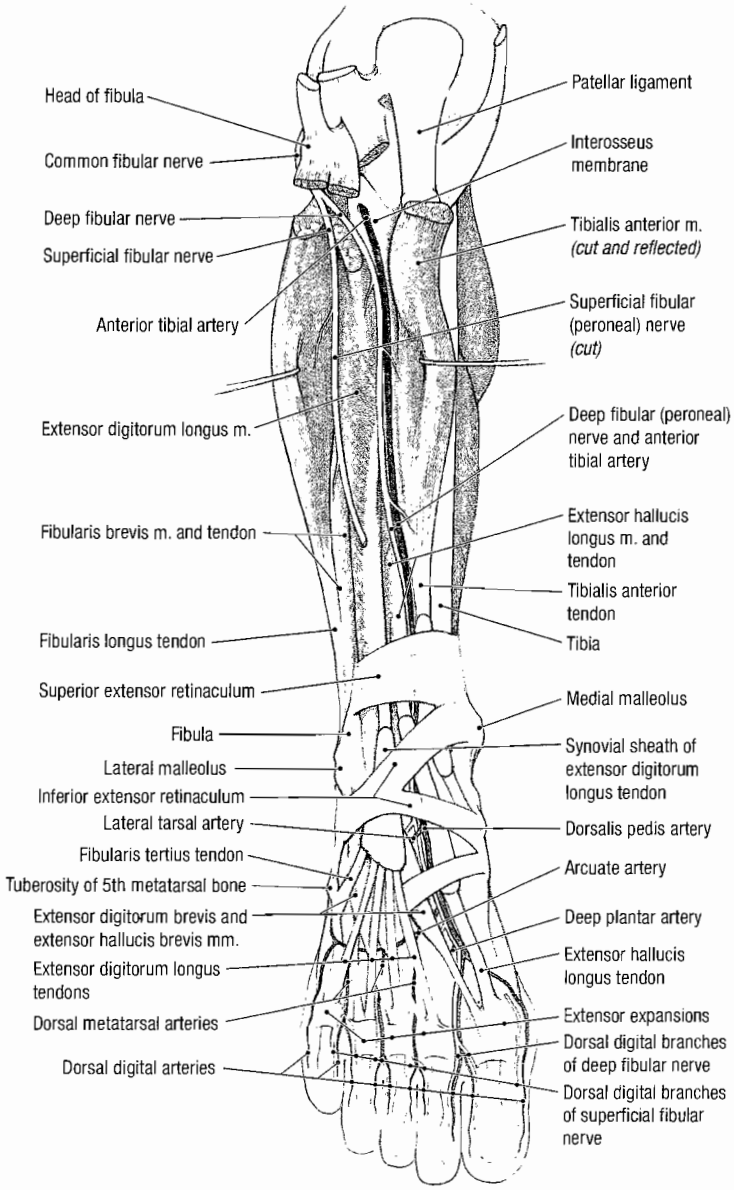


Figure 6.22. Contents of the anterior compartment of the leg.

17. Follow the dorsalis pedis artery onto the dorsum of the foot. It passes deep to the tendon of the extensor hallucis brevis muscle. In the living person, the pulse of the dorsalis pedis artery can be palpated between the tendons of the extensor hallucis longus muscle and the extensor digitorum longus muscle.
18. Identify the **arcuate artery**. The arcuate artery is a branch of the dorsalis pedis artery that crosses the proximal ends of the metatarsal bones. The **dorsal metatarsal arteries** originate from the arcuate artery. **[G 409; N 502; R 481; C 355]**
19. Identify the **lateral tarsal artery**. The lateral tarsal artery arises from the dorsalis pedis artery near the ankle joint and passes deep to the extensor digitorum brevis and extensor hallucis brevis muscles. The lateral tarsal artery joins the lateral end of the arcuate artery to complete an arterial arch.
20. Identify the **deep plantar artery**. The deep plantar artery arises from the dorsalis pedis artery near the origin of the arcuate artery. The deep plantar artery passes between the first and second metatarsal bones to enter the sole of the foot. In the sole of the foot, the deep plantar artery anastomoses with the deep plantar arch.
21. At the level of the ankle, identify the **deep fibular nerve** (Fig. 6.22). Use blunt dissection to follow the deep fibular nerve into the dorsum of the foot. Note that the deep fibular nerve innervates the extensor digitorum brevis muscle and the extensor hallucis brevis muscle. The deep fibular nerve then continues toward the great toe to give rise to two **dorsal digital branches of the deep fibular nerve**.
22. Use an illustration and your cadaver specimen to trace the cutaneous branch of the deep fibular nerve to the region of skin between the great toe and the second toe (Fig. 6.03). Understand that this is the only skin on the dorsum of the foot that is innervated by the deep fibular nerve. The **superficial fibular nerve** innervates all other skin on the dorsum of the foot.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the attachments and actions of the muscles in the anterior compartment of the leg. Trace the anterior tibial artery through the anterior compartment to the foot, where its name changes to dorsalis pedis artery. Name the branches of this arterial system. Recall the rule of innervation for the anterior compartment of the leg and the dorsum of the foot: **All muscles in the anterior compartment of the leg and the dorsum of the foot are innervated by the deep fibular nerve.**

LATERAL COMPARTMENT OF THE LEG **[G 410, 411; N 503; R 445; C 348]**

Before you dissect . . .

The lateral compartment of the leg contains two muscles: fibularis (peroneus) brevis and fibularis (peroneus) longus. The nerve of the lateral compartment is the superficial fibular (peroneal) nerve. The group action of the muscles in the lateral compartment of the leg is to evert and plantar flex the foot.

Dissection Instructions

1. Examine the **deep fascia** on the lateral side of the leg. Identify the **superior fibular (peroneal) retinaculum**. It is found on the lateral side of the ankle posterior to the lateral malleolus.
2. At the mid-level of the leg, identify the **superficial fibular (peroneal) nerve** where it penetrates the deep fascia (Fig. 6.03). Follow the superficial fibular nerve distally. It is the primary cutaneous nerve to the dorsum of the foot, and gives rise to several **dorsal digital branches** (Fig. 6.22). The superficial fibular nerve is a branch of the common fibular nerve.
3. Use scissors to incise the deep fascia overlying the lateral compartment of the leg. Carry the incision as far inferiorly as the superior fibular retinaculum. Open the deep fascia and observe that the fibularis longus muscle is attached to its inner surface.
4. Follow the tendons of the fibularis brevis and fibularis longus muscles distally and observe that their tendons pass deep to the superior and inferior fibular retinacula.
5. Follow the tendon of the fibularis brevis muscle to its distal attachment on the tuberosity of the 5th metatarsal bone.
6. Follow the tendon of the fibularis longus muscle and observe that it hooks around the cuboid bone and enters the sole of the foot. The tendon of the fibularis longus muscle attaches to the inferior surface of the first metatarsal bone and it will be dissected later.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Common Fibular Nerve

The common fibular nerve is the most frequently injured nerve in the body because of its superficial position and relationship to the head and neck of the fibula. When the common fibular nerve is injured, there is impairment of eversion, dorsiflexion of the foot, and extension of the toes. The result is a condition called "foot drop," resulting in steppage gait (the advancing foot hangs with the toes pointed toward the ground, the knee being lifted high so that the toes may clear the ground). There will also be sensory loss on the dorsum of the foot and toes.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to review the attachments and actions of the muscles in the lateral compartment of the leg. Understand that the fibular artery supplies the muscles of the lateral compartment of the leg by small branches that penetrate the posterior intermuscular septum. Recall the rule of innervation for the lateral compartment of the leg: **All of the muscles in the lateral compartment of the leg are innervated by the superficial fibular nerve.**

POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF THE LEG

Before you dissect . . .

The **posterior compartment of the leg** lies posterior to the interosseous membrane, tibia, and fibula (Fig. 6.19). A **transverse intermuscular septum** divides the muscles of the posterior compartment into superficial and deep groups. The superficial posterior group contains three muscles: gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris. The group action of the superficial posterior muscle group is plantar flexion of the foot. The deep posterior group contains four muscles: popliteus, tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus, and flexor hallucis longus. The shared actions of the deep posterior muscle group are inversion of the foot, plantar flexion of the foot, and flexion of the toes. The tibial nerve innervates both the superficial and deep posterior muscle groups.

Dissection Instructions

1. Turn the cadaver to the prone position.
2. Incise the deep fascia of the leg from the popliteal fossa to the calcaneus and open the posterior compartment.
3. Identify the **gastrocnemius muscle**. The gastrocnemius muscle is the most superficial muscle in the posterior compartment of the leg. The proximal attachments of the **two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle** are the femoral condyles. The distal attachment of the gastrocnemius muscle is on the calcaneal tuberosity by way of the **calcaneal tendon (tendo calcaneus, Achilles' tendon)**. The gastrocnemius muscle plantar flexes the foot. **[G 416; N 498; R 343; C 357]**
4. Use scissors to transect the two heads of the gastrocnemius muscle about half way between their proximal attachments and the point where they join. Reflect the proximal and distal portions of the muscle.
5. Identify the **soleus muscle**, which is located deep to the gastrocnemius muscle. The proximal attachments of the soleus muscle are the soleal line of the tibia and the head of the fibula. The distal attachment of the soleus muscle is the calcaneal tendon. The soleus muscle plantar flexes the foot. **[G 417; N 499; R 443; C 359]**
6. Identify the tendon of the **plantaris muscle**. The belly of the plantaris muscle lies in the popliteal fossa and its proximal attachment is the lateral supracondylar line of the femur. The popliteus tendon courses between the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles to its distal attachment on the calcaneal tendon. The plantaris muscle is a plantar flexor of the foot and a weak flexor of the knee. The plantaris muscle may be absent.
7. The **tibial nerve** and **posterior tibial vessels** exit the popliteal fossa by passing deep to the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle (Fig. 6.23). They course distally in the **transverse intermuscular septum** that separates the superficial posterior muscle group from the deep posterior muscle group (Fig. 6.19).
8. Use scissors to transect the calcaneal tendon about 5 cm superior to the tuberosity of the calcaneus. Use your fingers to separate the calcaneal tendon from the muscles that lie deep to it.
9. Use scissors to detach the soleus muscle from its tibial attachment but leave it attached to the fibula. Retract the soleus muscle and the gastrocnemius muscle laterally to expose the transverse intermuscular septum.
10. Identify the **posterior tibial vessels** and the **tibial nerve** in the transverse intermuscular septum (Fig. 6.23). The posterior tibial artery is usually accompanied by two veins. Remove the veins to clear the dissection field. **[G 418; N 500; R 474; C 361]**
11. Use a probe to follow the posterior tibial artery and the tibial nerve proximally. Observe that the popliteal artery bifurcates at the inferior border of the popliteus muscle to form the **posterior tibial artery** and the **anterior tibial artery**.
12. Retract the contents of the popliteal fossa laterally and identify the **popliteus muscle** (Fig. 6.23). The proximal attachment of the popliteus muscle is the lateral condyle of the femur and its distal attachment is the posterior surface of the proximal tibia. The popliteus muscle unlocks the knee and is a weak flexor of the leg. **[G 419; N 500; R 446; C 362]**
13. Identify the **tibialis posterior muscle**. The proximal attachments of the tibialis posterior muscle are the tibia, fibula, and the interosseous membrane. The distal attachments of the tibialis posterior muscle are the inferior surfaces of several tarsal bones. The tibialis posterior muscle is an inverter and plantar flexor of the foot.
14. The proximal attachment of the **flexor digitorum longus muscle** is the tibia. Distally, its tendons attach to the bases of the distal phalanges of the lateral four toes. The flexor digitorum longus muscle flexes toes 2-5 and plantar flexes the foot.
15. The proximal attachment of the **flexor hallucis longus muscle** is the inferior two-thirds of the fibula and interosseous membrane, and its distal attachment is the base of the distal phalanx of the great toe. The flexor hallucis longus muscle flexes the great toe and plantar flexes the foot.
16. Posterior to the medial malleolus, observe that the **posterior tibial artery** and the **tibial nerve** lie between the tendons of the flexor digitorum longus and flexor hallucis longus muscles, deep to the flexor retinaculum. Posterior to the medial malleolus the following mnemonic device may be used to identify the tendons and vessels: **T**om, **D**ick **AN**d **H**arry (**T**ibialis posterior, flexor **D**igitorum longus, posterior tibial **A**rtery, tibial **N**erve, flexor **H**allucis longus). **[G 420; N 498; C 360]**
17. Once again, observe the vascular distribution in the posterior compartment of the leg (Fig. 6.23). Identify the **fibular (peroneal) artery**. The fibular artery arises from the posterior tibial artery about 2 or 3 centimeters distal to the inferior border of the popliteus muscle. The fibular artery courses between the tibialis posterior muscle and the flexor hallucis longus muscle.

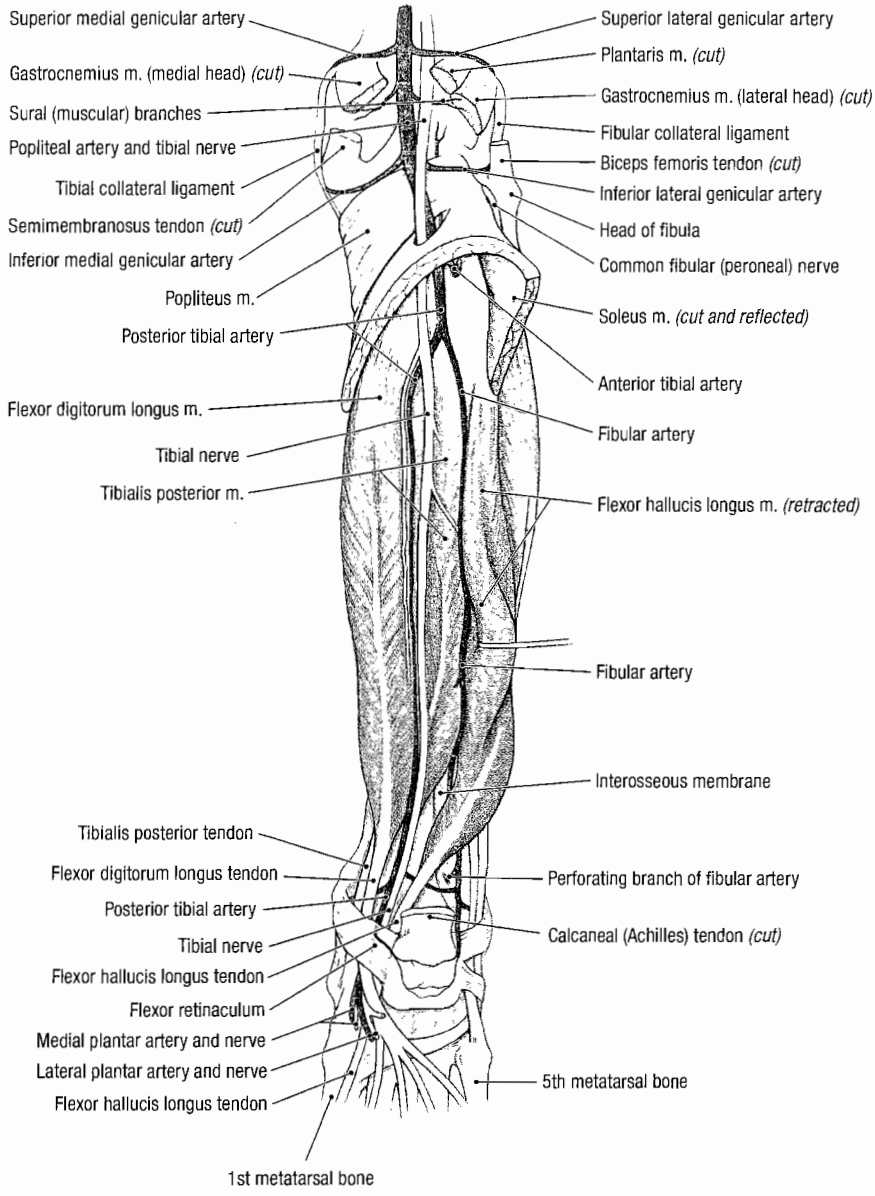


Figure 6.23. Contents of the deep posterior compartment of the leg.

It supplies blood to the muscles of the lateral compartment of the leg and lateral side of the posterior compartment of the leg.

18. The **perforating branch of the fibular artery** usually arises just above the ankle joint (Fig. 6.23). It perforates the interosseous membrane and anastomoses with a branch of the anterior tibial artery. Occasionally, the perforating branch of the fibular artery will give rise to the dorsalis pedis artery.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the muscles of the posterior compartment of the leg into their correct anatomical positions. Using the dissected specimen, review the attachments and action of each muscle dissected. Follow the popliteal artery into the posterior compartment of the leg and identify its branches. Follow the posterior tibial artery distally and identify the origin of the fibular artery. Review the distribution of the arteries of the posterior compartment of the leg. Follow the tibial nerve through the popliteal fossa and posterior compartment of the leg, observing that it gives off numerous muscular branches. Review the relationships of the nerve, tendons, and vessels posterior to the medial malleolus and use this pattern to organize the contents of the deep posterior compartment of the leg. Recall the rule of innervation of the posterior compartment of the leg: **All muscles in the posterior compartment of the leg are innervated by the tibial nerve.**

Review the muscles of all three compartments of the leg and the nerves that innervate the compartments (Fig. 6.24). The **muscles in the anterior compartment** (tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, extensor digitorum longus, and fibularis tertius) are innervated by the **deep fibular nerve**. The **muscles in the lateral compartment** (fibularis brevis and fibularis longus) are innervated by the **superficial fibular nerve**. The **muscles in the posterior compartment** (superficial—gastrocnemius, soleus, plantaris; deep—popliteus, tibialis posterior, flexor digi-

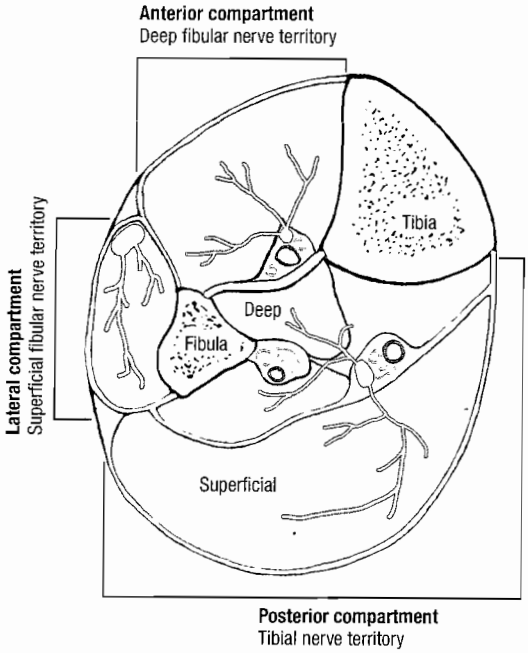


Figure 6.24. Motor nerve territories of the leg.

torum longus, flexor hallucis longus) are innervated by the **tibial nerve.**

SOLE OF THE FOOT

Before you dissect . . .

The **foot is arched longitudinally** (Fig. 6.21). The **weight bearing points** of the foot are the calcaneus posteriorly and the heads of the five metatarsal bones anteriorly. The **plantar aponeurosis** supports the longitudinal arch. Deep to the plantar aponeurosis are four layers of intrinsic foot muscles.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The plantar aponeurosis will be cleaned of superficial fascia and studied. It will then be reflected to expose the first layer of muscles. The dissection will proceed from superficial (inferior) to deep (superior) and each of the four layers of muscles will be dissected. Note that abduction and adduction movements of the toes are described around an axis of reference that passes through the second digit (second toe). This convention differs from the hand, in which the axis of reference passes through the third digit.

Dissection Instructions

PLANTAR APONEUROSIS AND CUTANEOUS NERVES [G 424; N 514; R 449; C 366]

1. If the skin has not been removed from the sole of the foot, refer to Figure 6.02C and complete the skin removal.
2. Use a dull scalpel blade to scrape the superficial fascia off the plantar aponeurosis. Note that the plantar aponeurosis is attached to the calcaneus posteriorly and that it divides distally into five bands, one to each toe.
3. Use a scalpel to cut the plantar aponeurosis longitudinally (Fig. 6.25A). The plantar aponeurosis is approximately 4 mm thick. Do not cut too deeply.
4. Make two transverse cuts through the plantar aponeurosis; one cut close to the calcaneus and one in the anterior one-third of the foot (Fig. 6.25A). Tough bands of connective tissue attach the plantar aponeurosis to the metatarsal bones. Use a scalpel to cut these bands and release the plantar aponeurosis from the underlying structures. Reflect the flaps medially and laterally (Fig. 6.25B).

FIRST LAYER OF PLANTAR MUSCLES [G 428; N 515; R 449; C 367]

1. Identify the **flexor digitorum brevis muscle** (Fig. 6.25B). The proximal attachments of the flexor digitorum brevis muscle are the calcaneal tuberosity and the plantar aponeurosis. The distal attachments of the

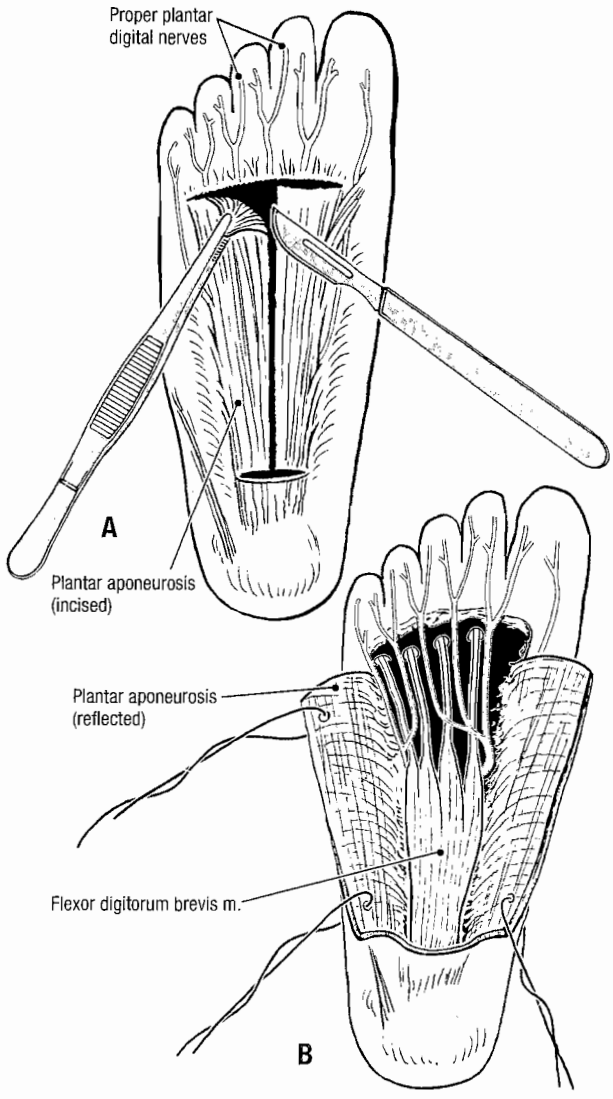


Figure 6.25. How to open the plantar aponeurosis.

flexor digitorum brevis muscle are the middle phalanges of the lateral four toes. The flexor digitorum brevis muscle flexes the lateral four toes. Trace the flexor digitorum brevis tendons to their distal attachments. Remove the plantar aponeurosis piece by piece as necessary.

2. Identify the **abductor hallucis muscle** (Fig. 6.26). The abductor hallucis muscle is located on the medial side of the flexor digitorum brevis muscle. The proximal attachments of the abductor hallucis muscle are the medial side of the calcaneal tuberosity and the plantar aponeurosis. The distal attachment of the abductor hallucis muscle is the medial side of the base of the proximal phalanx of the great toe and it abducts the great toe. Use blunt dissection to follow the tendon to its distal attachment.
3. Identify the **abductor digiti minimi muscle** (Fig. 6.26). The proximal attachments of the abductor digiti minimi muscle are the lateral side of the calcaneal tuberosity and the plantar aponeurosis and its distal attachment is the lateral side of the base of the proximal phalanx of the 5th (small) toe. The abductor digiti minimi muscle abducts the 5th toe. Follow the tendon to its distal attachment.
4. In the distal one-third of the sole of the foot look for **common** and **proper plantar digital nerves**, which are branches of the **medial** and **lateral plantar nerves** (Fig. 6.26). The common and proper digital nerves lie between the tendons just identified.

SECOND LAYER OF PLANTAR MUSCLES [G 429; N 516; R 450; C 368]

1. Use scissors to transect the flexor digitorum brevis muscle close to the calcaneus (Fig. 6.26). Reflect the muscle distally. To make reflection easier, cut the common plantar digital nerves and vessels.
2. Identify the **quadratus plantae (flexor accessorius) muscle**, which is deep to the flexor digitorum brevis muscle (Fig. 6.27). The proximal attachment of the quadratus plantae muscle is the calcaneus and its distal attachment is the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus muscle. The quadratus plantae muscle assists the flexor digitorum longus muscle in flexing the lateral four toes.
3. Use a probe to dissect the **flexor digitorum longus tendons** in the sole of the foot. Observe that its four tendons pass through the tendons of the flexor digitorum brevis muscle (Fig. 6.27).
4. Observe that four **lumbrical muscles** arise from the tendons of the flexor digitorum longus muscle. The distal attachments of the lumbrical muscles are the extensor expansions of the lateral four toes.

THIRD LAYER OF PLANTAR MUSCLES [G 430; N 517; R 451; C 371]

1. Use scissors to transect the flexor digitorum longus tendon where it is joined by the quadratus plantae muscle (Fig. 6.27). Reflect the tendons distally, along with the lumbrical muscles.
2. Identify the **flexor hallucis brevis muscle** (Fig. 6.28). The proximal attachments of the flexor hallucis brevis muscle are the first metatarsal bone, the cuboid bone,

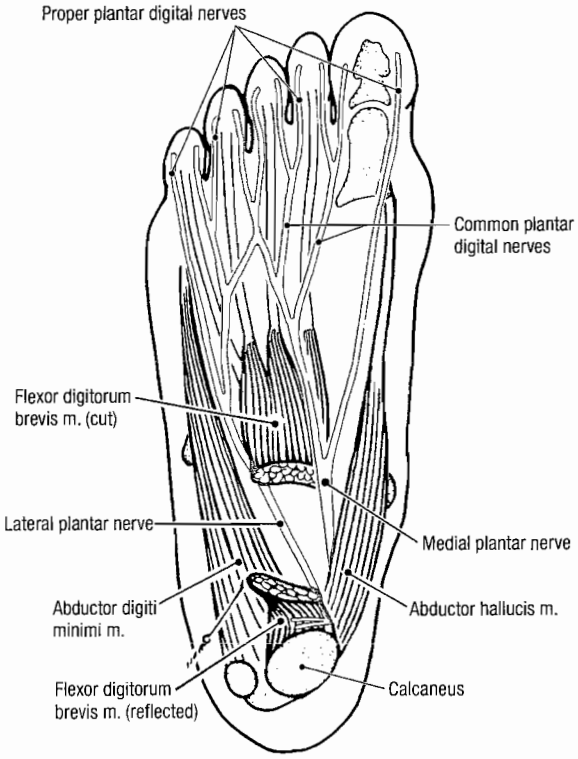


Figure 6.26. Sole of the foot. First layer of muscles and the plantar nerves.

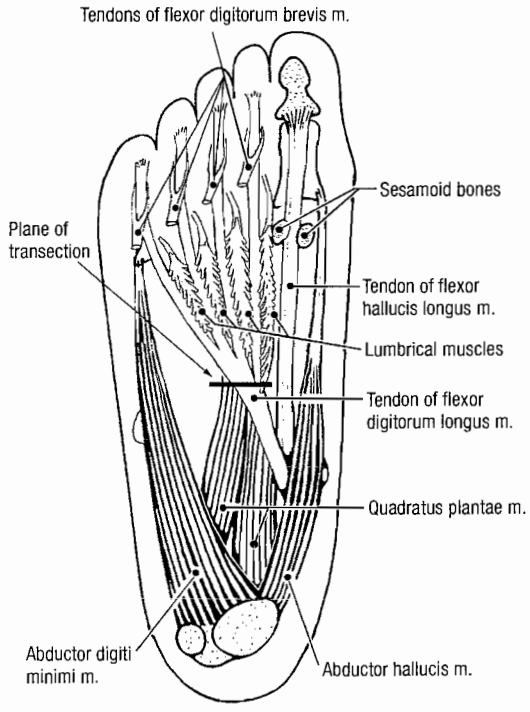


Figure 6.27. Sole of the foot. Second layer of muscles.

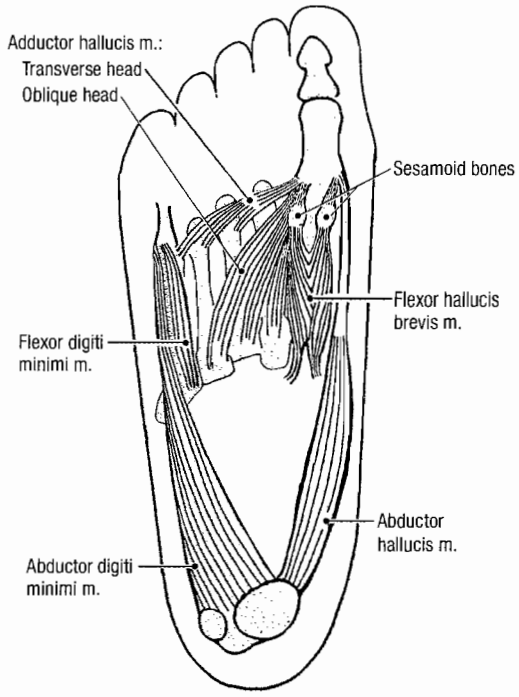


Figure 6.28. Sole of the foot. Third layer of muscles.

and the 3rd cuneiform bone. The flexor hallucis brevis muscle has two heads (medial and lateral) and two tendons. A **sesamoid bone** is found in each of the tendons. The distal attachment of the flexor hallucis brevis muscle is the base of the proximal phalanx of the great toe and it flexes the great toe.

3. Observe that the **tendon of the flexor hallucis longus muscle** runs between the two sesamoid bones of the flexor hallucis brevis muscle. Verify that the tendon of the flexor hallucis longus is attached to the base of the distal phalanx of the great toe (Fig. 6.27).
4. Identify the **adductor hallucis muscle**. The adductor hallucis muscle has a transverse head and an oblique head (Fig. 6.28). Both heads attach to the lateral side of the base of the proximal phalanx of the great toe. The adductor hallucis muscle adducts the great toe (i.e., moves it toward the second toe).
5. Identify the **flexor digiti minimi muscle**. The proximal attachment of the flexor digiti minimi muscle is the base of the 5th metatarsal bone and its distal attachment is the base of the proximal phalanx of the 5th toe. The flexor digiti minimi muscle flexes the 5th toe.
6. Push a probe deep to the abductor hallucis muscle along the course of the posterior tibial artery. Cut the muscle overlying the probe and use blunt dissection to follow the posterior tibial artery and tibial nerve into the sole. Identify the **medial** and **lateral plantar nerves** and **arteries**.

FOURTH LAYER OF PLANTAR MUSCLES [G 431; N 518; R 451; C 372]

1. Use an illustration to study the **interosseous muscles**. The four **D**orsal interosseous muscles are **AB**ductors (**DAB**) and the three **P**lantar interosseous muscles are **AD**ductors (**PAD**) of the toes. Recall that the reference axis for abduction and adduction passes through the 2nd toe.
2. Trace the **fibularis longus tendon** from the level of the lateral malleolus to its distal attachment on the base of the 1st metatarsal bone and the 1st cuneiform bone. Note that the fibularis longus tendon occupies the deepest plane of the sole of the foot.
3. Follow the **tibialis posterior tendon** distally and verify that it has a broad distal attachment on the navicular bone, all three cuneiform bones, and the bases of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th metatarsal bones.
4. Use blunt dissection to trace the lateral plantar artery to the deep **plantar arch**. Follow the deep plantar arch medially and demonstrate its connection to the **deep plantar branch of the dorsalis pedis artery**. The deep plantar branch of the dorsalis pedis artery passes between the first and second metatarsal bones.
5. Once again, identify the **flexor hallucis longus muscle** in the posterior compartment of the leg. Follow its tendon distally until it disappears into an osseofibrous tunnel at the medial side of the ankle. Push a probe into the tunnel, then open it with a scalpel. Lift the tendon of the flexor hallucis longus muscle with a probe and verify that it crosses the inferior surface of the **sustentaculum tali**. The sustentaculum tali acts as a pulley to change the direction of force of the flexor hallucis longus muscle.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the structures of the four layers of the sole of the foot into their correct anatomical positions. Using the dissected specimen, review the attachments and action of each muscle. Organize the muscles from superficial (inferior) to deep (superior). Follow the posterior tibial artery from its origin in the leg to its bifurcation in the sole of the foot. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the distribution of the medial and lateral plantar arteries. Review the connection between the deep plantar arch and the deep plantar branch of the dorsalis pedis artery. Retrace the course of the tibial nerve from the popliteal fossa to the medial side of the ankle. Follow its two branches (medial and lateral plantar nerves) in the sole of the foot. Use a textbook description to help you relate the motor and sensory function of the lateral and medial plantar nerves to your dissected specimen. Typically, the medial plantar nerve innervates the abductor hallucis muscle, flexor digitorum brevis muscle, flexor hallucis brevis muscle, and the medial lumbrical muscle. The medial plantar nerve will provide cutaneous innervation to the plantar surfaces of the medial 3 1/2 toes. The motor and cutaneous distribution of the medial plantar nerve is similar to the distribution of the median nerve in the hand. The lateral plantar nerve innervates all other muscles in the sole of the foot and provides cutaneous innervation to the plantar surfaces of the lateral 1 1/2 toes. The distribution of the lateral plantar nerve compares favorably to the distribution of the ulnar nerve in the hand.

JOINTS OF THE LOWER LIMB

Before you dissect . . .

Dissect the joints of one lower limb. Keep the soft tissue structures of the other limb intact for review purposes. If the pelvis and perineum have been dissected previously, the right side of the pelvis and the right lower limb have been separated from the trunk. If that is the case, perform joint dissections on the right lower limb.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The hip will be dissected, then the knee joint. The ankle joint will be dissected. The intermetatarsal joints, which are responsible for inversion and eversion, will be studied. During this dissection, the muscles of one limb will be removed. Take advantage of this opportunity to review the attachments, innervation, and action of each muscle as it is removed.

Dissection Instructions

HIP JOINT

1. Review the bony features of the hip joint. Three bones form the acetabulum: **ilium**, **ischium**, and **pubis**. Review the proximal end of the femur and identify the following: **head**, **fovea for the ligament of the head**, **neck**, and **intertrochanteric line**.
2. Remove the sartorius muscle, rectus femoris muscle, and pectineus muscle.
3. Identify the **iliopsoas muscle**. Trace its tendon to the lesser trochanter. Sever the tendon of the iliopsoas muscle close to the lesser trochanter and reflect the muscle superiorly.
4. Use an illustration to identify the ligaments that contribute to the formation of the **fibrous joint capsule**: **iliofemoral ligament**, **ischiofemoral ligament**, and **pubofemoral ligament** (Figs. 6.29, 6.30). **[G 376, 377; N 469; R 430, 431; C 376]**
5. Examine the **iliofemoral ligament**. Verify that the distal end of the iliofemoral ligament is attached to the intertrochanteric line of the femur. The proximal end is attached to the anterior inferior iliac spine and the margin of the acetabulum.
6. Flex and extend the femur. Observe that the iliofemoral ligament becomes lax in flexion and taut in extension. The iliofemoral ligament prevents overextension of the hip joint.
7. Use a scalpel to open the anterior aspect of the **joint capsule** as illustrated in Figure 6.29.
8. Inside the joint capsule, observe the **cartilage on the articular surface of the head of the femur**. Rotate the femur laterally and note that you can see more of the articular surface of the head. Rotate the femur medially and observe that the articular surface disappears into the acetabulum. **[G 376; N 469; R 431; C 377]**
9. Abduct and laterally rotate the femur. Identify the **ligament of the head of the femur** (Fig. 6.29).
10. Identify the **obturator externus muscle**. Note that the obturator externus muscle passes inferior to the neck of the femur.

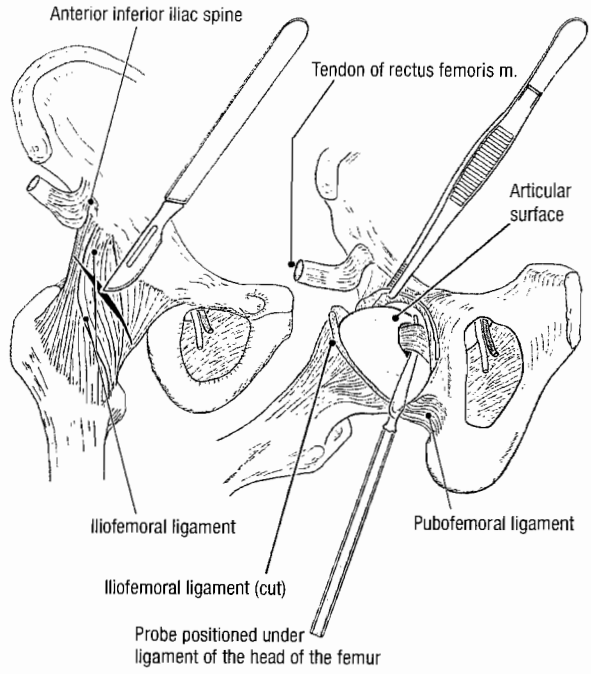


Figure 6.29. How to open the anterior aspect of the hip joint capsule.

11. Remove the obturator externus muscle to expose the **pubofemoral ligament**.
12. Turn the specimen to the prone position.
13. Remove the piriformis, superior gemellus, obturator internus, inferior gemellus, quadratus femoris, gluteus medius, and gluteus minimus muscles.
14. Use a scalpel and scraping motions to clean the posterior surface of the **joint capsule** (Fig. 6.30).
15. Identify the **ischiofemoral ligament**, which runs from the acetabular margin to the neck of the femur. Note that the ischiofemoral ligament does not attach to the intertrochanteric crest but leaves an area where the synovial membrane of the hip joint is exposed.

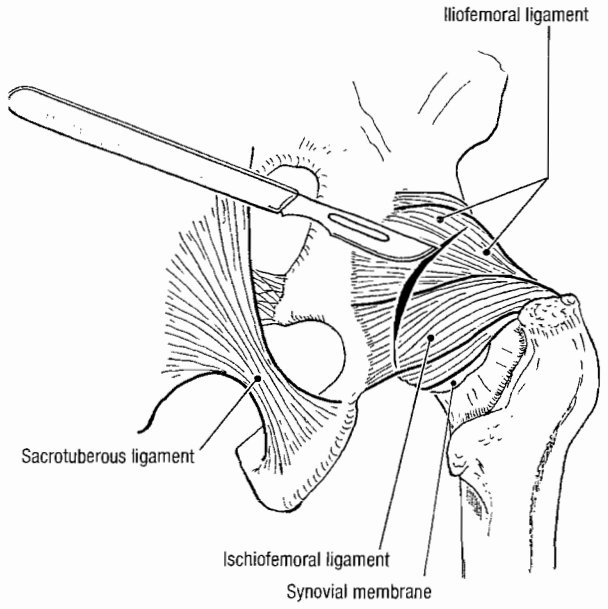


Figure 6.30. How to open the posterior aspect of the hip joint capsule.

16. Extend the femur. Observe that the ischiofemoral ligament becomes taut and limits extension of the hip joint.
17. Open the posterior wall of the joint cavity by incising the capsule as shown in Figure 6.30. Observe the thickness of the joint capsule.
18. The next objective is to disarticulate the hip joint. Return the specimen to the supine position. Insert a probe under the ligament of the head of the femur (Fig. 6.29) and cut it with a scalpel. Rotate the femur laterally and the head of the femur will come out of the acetabulum.
19. Examine the head and neck of the femur (Fig. 6.31). Identify the **articular surface** of the head of the femur. Observe the cut end of the **ligament of the head of the femur** and identify the **artery of the ligament of the head of the femur** in its center. Use an illustration to review the blood supply to the head and neck of the femur.
20. Identify the **lunate surface** in the acetabulum (Fig. 6.31). Note that the **ligament of the head of the femur** lies in the **acetabular notch**. **[G 378; N 469; R 431; C 377]**
21. Identify the **transverse acetabular ligament** that bridges the acetabular notch and the **acetabular labrum** that surrounds the rim of the acetabulum.

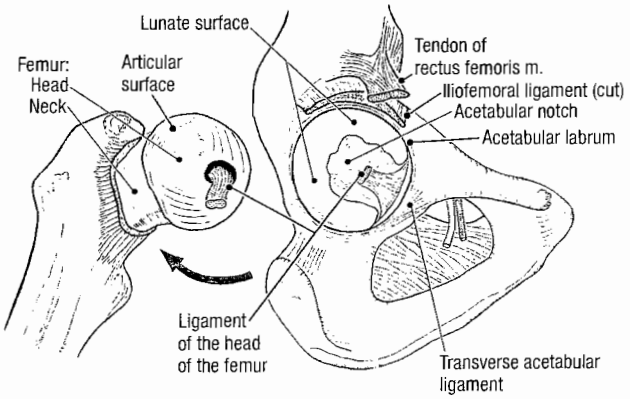
CLINICAL CORRELATION

Neck of the Femur

A fracture of the neck of the femur disrupts the blood supply to the head of the femur. If the blood supply (via the artery of the ligament of the head) is insufficient, the head will become necrotic. Necrosis of the femoral head is a common complication in femoral neck fractures of the elderly.

KNEE JOINT

1. Review the skeleton of the knee. On the distal end of the femur identify: **medial condyle, lateral condyle,** and **intercondylar fossa**. On the proximal end of the tibia identify: **superior articular surface, medial condyle, lateral condyle,** and **intercondylar eminence**. On the patella identify: **articular surface** and **anterior surface**.
2. On the medial side of the knee, use a scalpel to detach the tendons of the sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus muscles from their distal attachments (pes anserinus). **[G 390; N 488; R 432; C 381]**
3. Reflect the muscles and identify the **tibial collateral ligament** of the knee (Fig. 6.32B). Note that the tibial collateral ligament is attached to the medial meniscus through the joint capsule.
4. On the lateral side of the knee, cut the tendon of the biceps femoris muscle close to its distal attachment on the head of the fibula.
5. Reflect the biceps femoris muscle and identify the **fibular collateral ligament** of the knee. Note that the fibular collateral ligament is not attached to the external surface of the joint capsule (Fig. 6.32B). Observe that the popliteus tendon passes between the fibular collateral ligament and the joint capsule. **[G 391; N 488; R 432; C 381]**
6. On the posterior surface of the knee, remove the popliteal vessels, the tibial nerve, and the common fibular nerve.
7. Detach the semimembranosus and semitendinosus tendons and reflect the muscles. Free the plantaris muscle and both heads of the gastrocnemius muscle from the joint capsule. Detach the proximal attachments of these muscles close to the bone.
8. Remove the popliteus muscle. During this procedure, the posterior wall of the joint capsule will be opened. Clear away the remnants of the posterior wall of the joint capsule.
9. From the posterior view, identify the **posterior cruciate ligament** (Fig. 6.32A). Verify that the cruciate ligaments are located *outside* of the synovial cavity but are *inside* the joint capsule. **[G 394; N 491; R 432; C 383]**
10. On the anterior surface of the knee, identify the tendon of the quadriceps femoris muscle. Observe that the tendon has **patellar retinacula** that help to keep the patella centered. Inferior to the patella, identify the **patellar ligament**.
11. Make a transverse incision superior to the patella through the quadriceps femoris tendon. Carry the incision around the sides of the knee stopping short of the collateral ligaments.
12. Reflect the patella and patellar ligament inferiorly (Fig. 6.32B). Confirm that the femur and the tibia remain attached to each other by **two collateral ligaments** and **two cruciate ligaments**. **[G 393; N 489; R 433; C 381]**
13. Verify that the cruciate ligaments cross each other (Fig. 6.32C). The **anterior cruciate ligament** attaches to the tibia anteriorly. The **posterior cruciate ligament** attaches to the tibia posteriorly.
14. Extend the leg. With the leg in this position, observe:
    - The articular surfaces of the femur and tibia are in maximum contact.
    - The joint is "locked" in its most stable position.
    - The anterior cruciate ligament is taut and prohibits further extension.



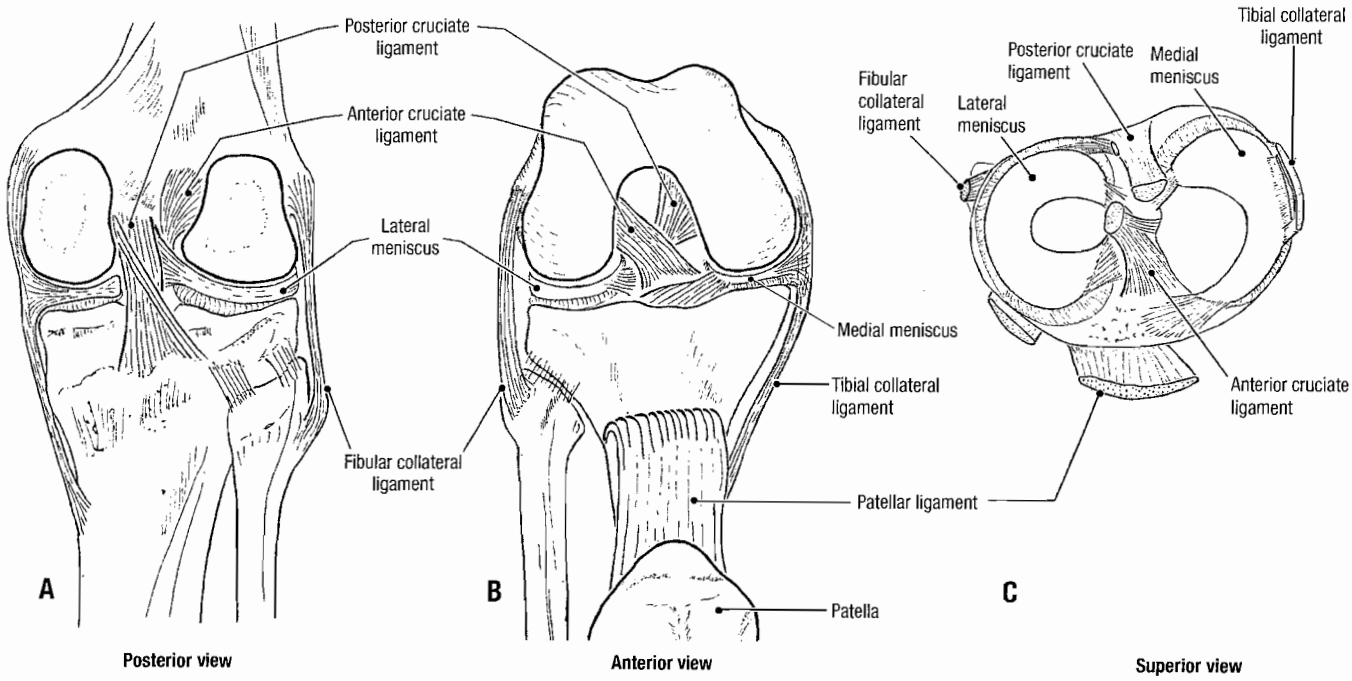


Figure 6.32. Right knee joint.

15. Flex the leg. With the leg in this position, observe:
    - There is less contact between the articular surfaces of the femur and tibia.
    - Some rotation occurs in the knee joint.
    - The posterior cruciate ligament prevents the tibia from being pushed posteriorly.
    - The anterior cruciate ligament prevents the tibia from being pulled anteriorly.
16. Flex the leg and pull the tibia anteriorly. Note the tightness of the joint. Cut the anterior cruciate ligament. Now flex the leg and pull the tibia anteriorly. Feel the forward movement of the tibia. This forward movement indicates a ruptured anterior cruciate ligament and is an important clinical sign (anterior drawer sign).
17. Observe the **menisci** (Fig. 6.32C). Note that the **medial meniscus** is firmly attached to the tibial collateral ligament. In contrast, the **lateral meniscus** is not attached to the fibular collateral ligament.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Knee Injuries

The medial meniscus is injured 6 to 7 times more often than the lateral meniscus because the medial meniscus is firmly attached to the tibial collateral ligament.

Forced abduction and lateral rotation of the leg may result in the simultaneous injury of three structures: tibial collateral ligament, medial meniscus, and anterior cruciate ligament. The injury has been named the "unhappy triad." This injury is caused by a blow to the lateral side of the knee and is a common injury in contact sports.

ANKLE JOINT [G 435; N 509; R 436; C 394, 395]

1. Review the bony landmarks related to the ankle joint. On the distal end of the fibula identify the **lateral malleolus**. On the distal end of the tibia, identify the **medial malleolus**. On the talus, identify the **trochlea**. Review the tarsal bones.
2. Cut and reflect the tendons, vessels, and nerves that cross the anterior aspect of the ankle joint. Leave a long portion of the tibialis anterior tendon attached to the tarsal bones.
3. On the medial aspect of the ankle joint, cut and reflect the flexor digitorum longus muscle. Retract the tendon of the tibialis posterior muscle anteriorly. Do not cut it.
4. Clean and define the **medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle** (Fig. 6.33A). It has four parts: **posterior tibiotalar ligament**, **tibiocalcaneal ligament**, **tibionavicular ligament**, and **anterior tibiotalar ligament**.
5. On the lateral side of the ankle, identify the tendons of the fibularis longus and fibularis brevis muscles. Open the superior and inferior fibular retinacula. Retract the tendons of the fibularis longus and fibularis brevis muscles anteriorly.
6. Clean and define the **lateral ligament of the ankle** (Fig. 6.33B). It has three parts: **posterior talofibular ligament**, **calcaneofibular ligament**, and **anterior talofibular ligament**.
7. Dorsiflex and plantar flex the ankle joint. Observe that these are the only actions of the ankle joint.

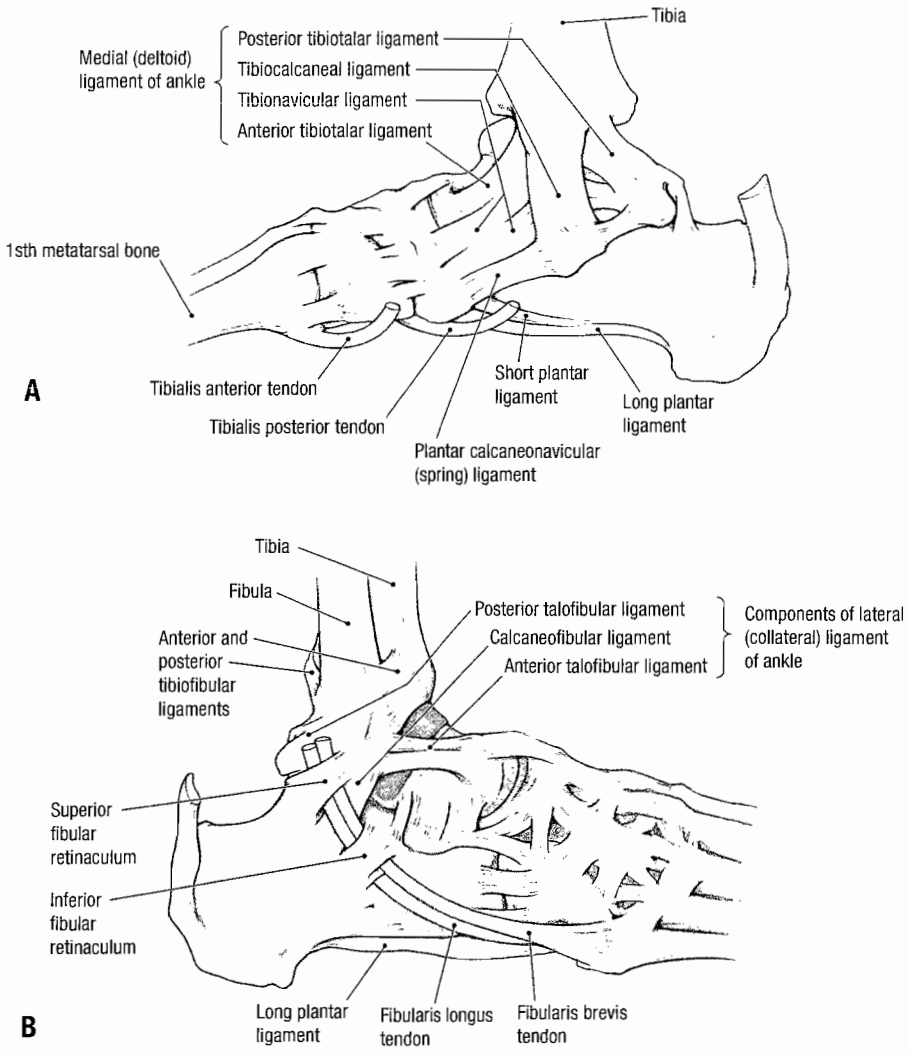


Figure 6.33. Right ankle joint. **A.** Medial view. **B.** Lateral view.

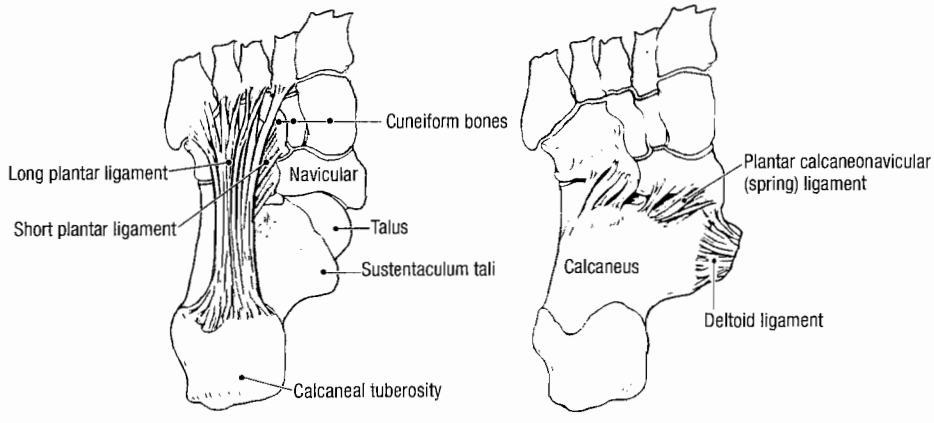


Figure 6.34. Plantar ligaments.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Ankle Injuries

Ankle injuries are very common. Frequently, the lateral ligament of the ankle is injured when the foot is forcefully inverted. The result is an ankle sprain with swelling around the lateral malleolus. In severe cases, the calcaneofibular and talofibular ligaments are torn, and the inferior tip of the lateral malleolus may be avulsed (pulled off).

JOINTS OF INVERSION AND EVERSION

1. Study the movements of inversion and eversion of the foot in a suitable skeletal specimen (caution—wired laboratory skeletons can be damaged). With one hand, immobilize the ankle joint by holding the talus stationary between the tibia and fibula. With the other hand, invert and evert the foot. Observe:
   - The talus remains fixed in the ankle joint.
   - The entire foot rotates about the inferior and anterior surfaces of the talus (subtalar joint).
2. In the cadaver specimen, produce **eversion** by pulling on the tendons of the fibularis longus and fibularis brevis muscles. Produce **inversion** by pulling on the tendons of the tibialis anterior and tibialis posterior muscles simultaneously.
3. Observe that these movements occur in the **transverse tarsal joint** (calcaneocuboid and talonavicular joints) and the **subtalar joint**.
4. The longitudinal arch of the foot is supported by ligaments that span the tarsal bones. In the sole of the foot, remove the flexor digitorum brevis and quadratus plantae muscles. Observe the **long plantar ligament** and the **short plantar ligament** (Fig. 6.34). **[G 446; N 510; R 435; C 398]**
5. Remove the tendon of the tibialis posterior muscle where it crosses inferior to the talus. Identify the **plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament** (Fig. 6.34). This ligament and the tibialis posterior tendon support the head of the talus and the longitudinal arch.

CHAPTER 7

THE HEAD AND NECK

The study of head and neck anatomy provides a considerable intellectual challenge because the region is packed with small, important structures. These structures are associated with the proximal ends of the respiratory and gastrointestinal systems, the cranial nerves, and the organs of special sense, all of which are found within the region. Dissection of the head and neck provides a special problem in that peripheral structures must be dissected long before their parent structure can be identified. A complete understanding of the region cannot be gained until the final dissection is completed.

SURFACE ANATOMY

Palpate the following structures on the cadaver (Fig. 7.01):

- **Vertex**
- **Supraorbital margin**
- **Nasal bones**
- **Alveolar process of the maxilla**
- **Mental protuberance of the mandible**
- **Zygomatic arch**
- **Zygomatic bone**
- **Angle of the mandible**

SKULL

All of the cranial nerves and many blood vessels pass through openings in the skull. Therefore, the skull is an important tool with which to organize the study of the soft tissues of the head and neck. Parts of the skull will be studied as needed and details will be added as the dissection proceeds.

All parts of the skull are fragile, but the bones of the orbit are exceptionally delicate. The medial wall of the orbit is very easily broken. Never hold a skull by placing your fingers into the orbits.

Anterior View of the Skull [G 588; N 2; R 26; C 480]

Examine the skull from an anterior view and identify (Fig. 7.02):

- **Frontal bone**
  - **Glabella**
  - **Superciliary arch**
  - **Supraorbital notch (foramen)**
- **Nasal bone**
- **Zygomatic bone**
- **Maxilla**
  - **Frontal process**
    - **Infraorbital foramen**
    - **Anterior nasal spine**
    - **Alveolar process**
- **Nasal septum**
- **Mandible**
  - **Alveolar process**
  - **Mental foramen**
  - **Mental protuberance**

Parts of several bones combine to form the following (Fig. 7.02):

- **Nasion** – the junction between the frontal and nasal bones
- **Orbital margin** – formed by three bones (frontal, maxillary, and zygomatic)
- **Anterior nasal aperture** – bounded by the nasal bones and maxillae

Lateral View of the Skull [G 591; N 4; R 25; C 481]

Examine the skull from a lateral view and identify (Fig. 7.03):

- **Parietal bone**
  - **Superior temporal line**
  - **Inferior temporal line**

KEY TO REFERENCES
G = Grant's Atlas, 11th ed., page number
N = Netter's Atlas, 3rd ed., plate number
R = Rohen's Color Atlas of Anatomy, 5th ed., page number
C = Clemente's Atlas, 4th ed., page number

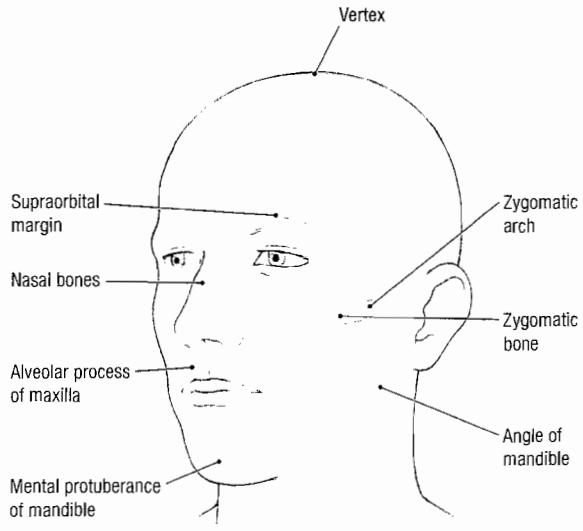


Figure 7.01. Surface anatomy of the face.

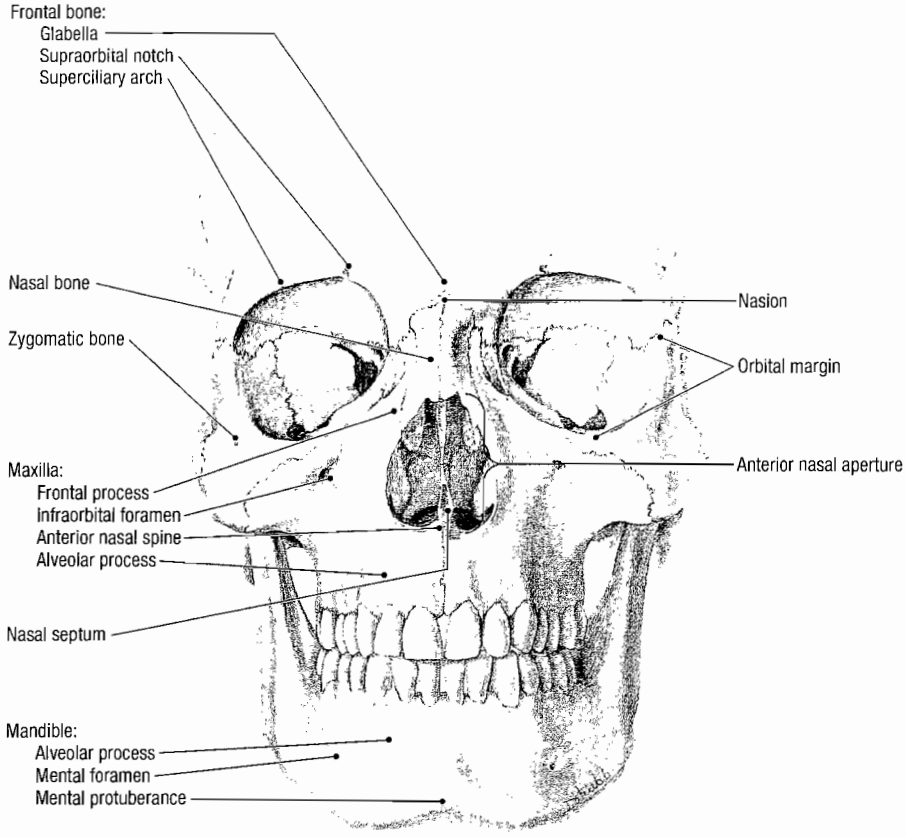


Figure 7.02. The skull, anterior view.

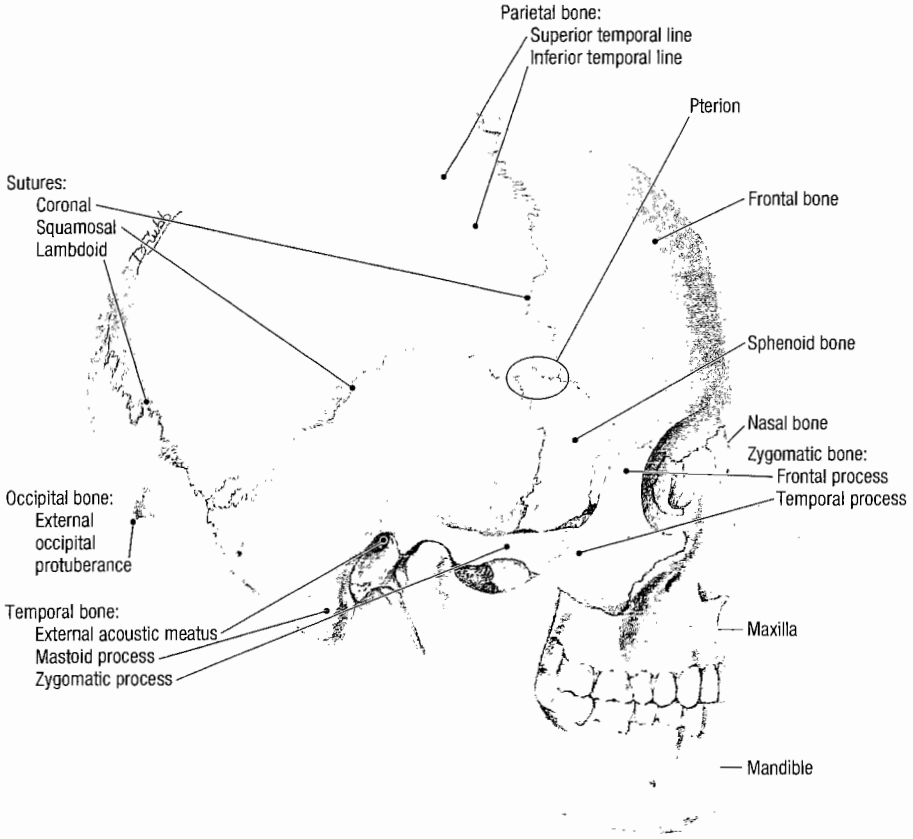


Figure 7.03. The skull, lateral view.

- **Frontal bone**
- **Sphenoid bone**
- **Zygomatic bone**
  - **Frontal process**
  - **Temporal process**
- **Temporal bone**
  - **External acoustic meatus**
  - **Mastoid process**
  - **Zygomatic process**
- **Occipital bone**
  - **External occipital protuberance**
- **Sutures**
  - **Lambdoid**
  - **Squamosal**
  - **Coronal**

In the temporal region, identify the **pterion**. The pterion is the junction of the frontal, parietal, sphenoid, and temporal bones.

- **Mandible** (Fig. 7.04) **[G 654; N 13; R 55; C 543]**
  - **Ramus**
    - **Coronoid process**
    - **Mandibular notch**
    - **Condylar process**
      - **Head (condyle)**
      - **Neck**
  - **Angle**
  - **Body**
    - **Mental foramen**
  - **Inferior border**

Superior View of the Skull [G 592; N 7; R 33; C 482]

The **calvaria** is the skull cap formed by parts of the frontal, parietal, and occipital bones. Examine the external surface of the calvaria and identify (Fig. 7.05):

- **Frontal (metopic) suture** – usually closed in the adult
- **Coronal suture** – separating the large unpaired frontal bone from the two parietal bones
- **Sagittal suture** – separating the two parietal bones
- **Bregma** – the point where sagittal and coronal sutures meet
- **Lambdoid suture** – separating the unpaired occipital bone from the two parietal bones
- **Lambda** – the point where sagittal and lambdoid sutures meet

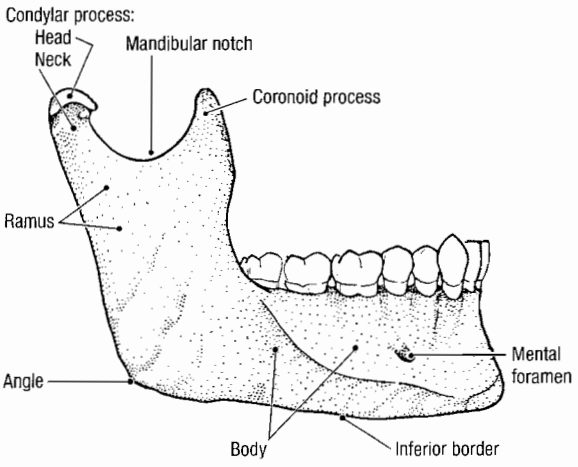


Figure 7.04. The external surface of the mandible.

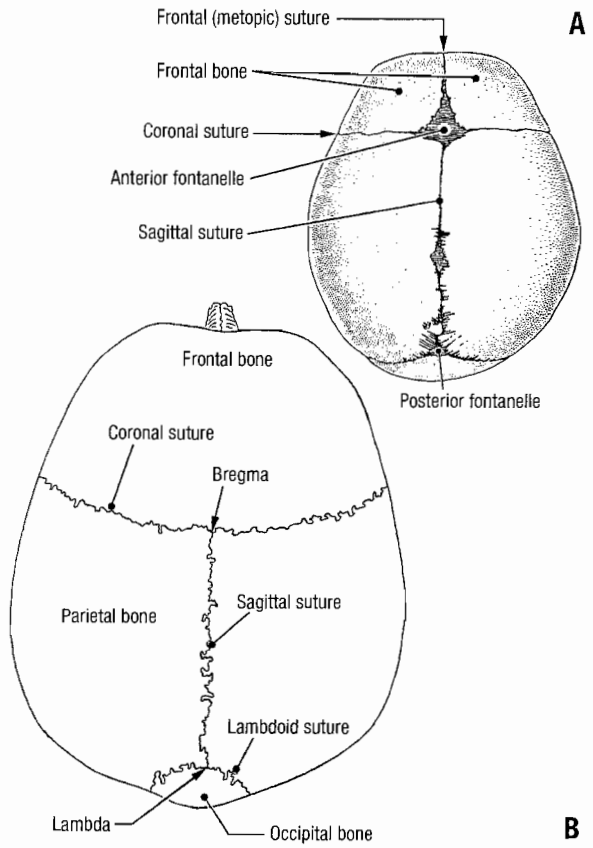


Figure 7.05. Superior view of the calvaria of the skull. **A.** Infant skull. **B.** Adult

FACE

Before you dissect . . .

The skin of the face receives sensory innervation from the trigeminal nerve (V). Three branches (divisions) of the trigeminal nerve share this innervation (Fig. 7.06). The forehead, upper eyelids, and nose are innervated by the **ophthalmic nerve (V_1)**. The lower eyelid, cheek, and upper lip are innervated by the **maxillary nerve (V_2)**. The lower face and part of the side of the head are innervated by the **mandibular nerve (V_3)**. The back of the head and the area around the ear receive sensory innervation from **cervical spinal nerves 2 and 3**. All of the muscles of

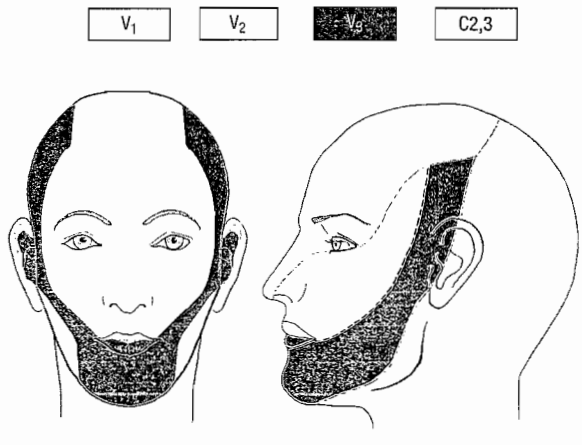


Figure 7.06. Cutaneous nerve distribution of the head and neck.

facial expression receive motor innervation from the **facial nerve (VII)**. [G 605; N 20; C 467]

The order of dissection will be as follows: The skin of the face will be reflected to expose the muscles of facial expression. The parotid duct and gland will be identified. Branches of the facial nerve will be identified as they emerge from the anterior border of the parotid gland. Several facial muscles will be dissected. Two important sphincter muscles will receive particular attention: the orbicularis oris (mouth), and the orbicularis oculi (eye). The terminal branches of the trigeminal nerve will be exposed where they emerge from openings in the skull.

Dissection Instructions

SKIN INCISIONS

The skin of the face is very thin and is firmly attached to the nose and ears but is mobile over other parts of the face. The muscles of facial expression are attached to the skin and act as sphincters and dilators for the openings of the eyes, mouth, and nostrils.

1. Place the cadaver in the supine position and refer to Figure 7.07.
2. In the midline, make a cut from the vertex (A) to the mental protuberance (B). Encircle the mouth at the margin of the lips.
3. On the lateral surface of the head, make a cut from the vertex (A) to the angle of the mandible (D), passing just anterior to the ear.
4. Starting at the nasion (C), make a cut that encircles the orbital margin. Extend the incision from the lateral angle of the eye to the ear.
5. Make a cut from the mental protuberance (B) along the inferior border of the mandible. Stop at the angle of the mandible (D).
6. Remove the skin from the forehead and anterior half of the scalp. Note that the skin adheres to tough subcutaneous connective tissue. Leave this connective tissue intact and do not remove the frontalis muscle. If the skin is raised without difficulty, the plane of separation is deep to the frontalis muscle and its aponeurosis.
7. Remove the skin of the lower face, beginning at the midline and proceeding laterally. The superficial fascia of the face is thick and contains the muscles of facial expression.

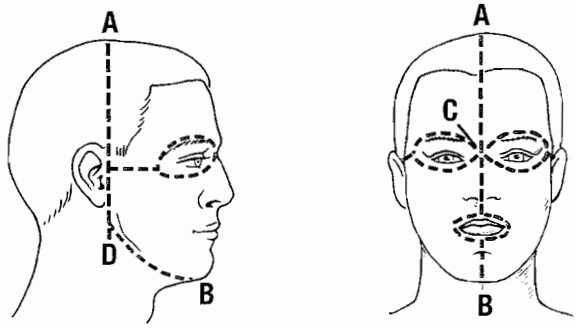


Figure 7.07. Skin incisions.

8. Detach the skin along the line from the vertex to the angle of the mandible (A to D) and place it in the tissue container.

SUPERFICIAL FASCIA OF THE FACE [G 600; N 19; R 76; C 462]

The superficial fascia of the face contains the parotid gland, part of the submandibular gland, muscles of facial expression, branches of the facial nerve, branches of the trigeminal nerve, and the facial artery and vein. The muscles of facial expression are attached to the skin, and these attachments have been severed during skin removal. The goal of this stage of the dissection is to identify a subgroup of the muscles of facial expression and follow branches of the facial nerve posteriorly into the parotid gland.

1. A small part of the **platysma muscle** extends into the face along the inferior border of the mandible (Fig. 7.08). The inferior attachment of the platysma muscle is the superficial fascia of the upper pectoral region and it forms a sheet of muscle that covers the anterior neck. Use blunt dissection to define the superior attachment of the muscle on the inferior border of the mandible, skin of the cheek, and angle of the mouth.
2. Identify the **masseter muscle**. It is a muscle of mastication, which will be dissected later.
3. Identify the **parotid duct** (Fig. 7.08). The parotid duct is approximately the diameter of a probe handle and it crosses the lateral surface of the masseter muscle about 2 cm inferior to the zygomatic arch. Use blunt dissection to follow the parotid duct anteriorly as far as the anterior border of the masseter muscle where the duct turns medially, pierces the buccinator muscle of the cheek, and drains into the oral cavity.
4. Superior to the parotid duct, use blunt dissection to find the **transverse facial artery** (Fig. 7.08). The transverse facial artery is small and it may be difficult to identify.

FACIAL NERVE [G 601; N 21; R 76, 78; C 468]

1. Use a probe to follow the parotid duct posteriorly and identify the anterior margin of the **parotid gland**.
2. Study the branches of the facial nerve in an illustration (Fig. 7.08). Use a probe to dissect along the anterior margin of the parotid gland and find branches of the facial nerve. Move the probe parallel to the branches as you dissect through the superficial fascia. Identify the following:
   - **Temporal branch** – crosses the zygomatic arch
   - **Zygomatic branch** – crosses the zygomatic bone
   - **Buccal branches** – cross the superficial surface of the masseter muscle
   - **Mandibular branch** – parallels the inferior margin of the mandible
   - **Cervical branch** – crosses the angle of the mandible to enter the neck
3. The parotid gland has very tough connective tissue that will not yield to a probe. To follow the branches of the facial nerve into the parotid gland, use the point of a scalpel blade as a probe.

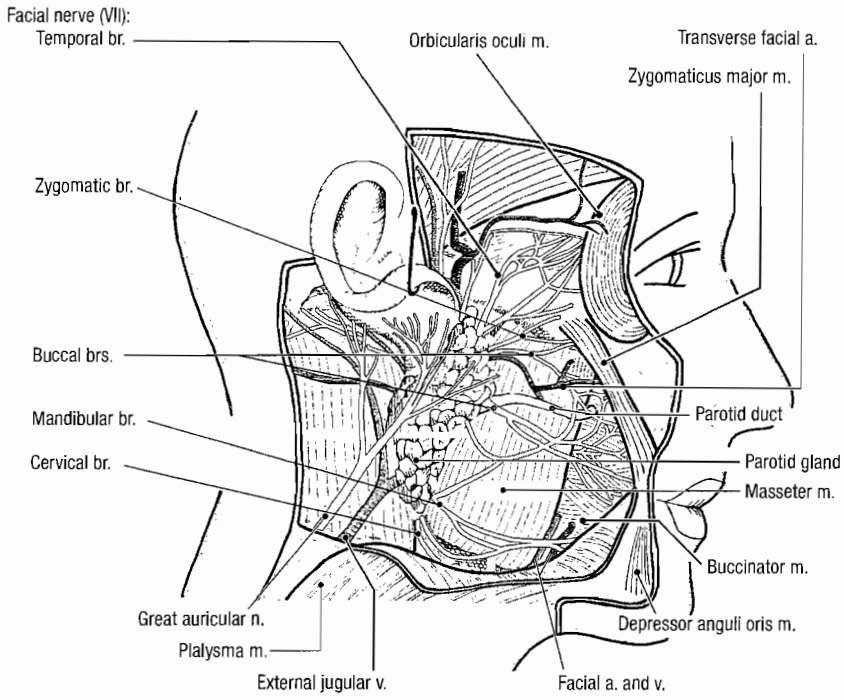


Figure 7.08. Dissection of the lateral aspect of the face.

4. Follow the branches of the facial nerve into the parotid gland. Superficial to the nerves, remove the parotid gland piece by piece. Within the parotid gland the nerve branches join to form the **parotid plexus**. Follow the nerve branches proximally until they combine into one or two nerves, just anterior to the ear lobe.
5. Use a probe to define the anterior border of the **masseter muscle**. Anterior to the masseter is the **buccal fatpad**. Use the probe to remove the buccal fat pad and expose the **buccinator muscle**. Verify that the **parotid duct** pierces the buccinator muscle.
6. Observe that two nerves enter the buccinator muscle:
   - **Buccal branch of the facial nerve** – crosses the superficial surface of the masseter muscle to provide motor innervation to the buccinator muscle.
   - **Buccal nerve**, a branch of the mandibular nerve (V_3) – emerges from deep to the masseter muscle. The buccal nerve does not supply motor innervation to the buccinator muscle. It pierces the buccinator muscle to provide sensory innervation to the mucosa of the cheek. The buccal nerve also innervates the skin of the cheek.

FACIAL ARTERY AND VEIN [G 600; N 19; R 79; C 469]

The facial artery and vein run a winding course across the face and they may pass either superficial or deep to the muscles of facial expression.

1. Starting at its posterior margin, use a probe to lift the platysma muscle. Cut the platysma muscle along the inferior border of the mandible and detach it from the angle of the mouth. Reflect the platysma muscle inferiorly to expose the entire length of the margin of the mandible (Fig. 7.08).
2. Find the **facial artery** where it crosses the mandible at the anterior border of the masseter muscle. At this location the facial artery is covered only by skin and the platysma muscle (Fig. 7.08). Note that the facial artery passes deep to the submandibular gland in the neck, then becomes superficial where it crosses the inferior border of the mandible.
3. Use a probe to trace the facial artery toward the angle of the mouth and observe that the facial artery has several loops or bends in this part of its course. Near the angle of the mouth, the facial artery gives off the **inferior labial** and **superior labial arteries**.
4. Continue to trace the facial artery as far as the lateral side of the nose, where its name changes to **angular artery**.
5. The **facial vein** crosses the mandible posterior to the facial artery and it receives tributaries that correspond to the branches of the facial artery.

MUSCLES AROUND THE ORBITAL OPENING [G 600; N 22; R 60; C 462]

1. At only 1-2 mm in thickness, the skin of the eyelids is the thinnest skin in the body. Carefully skin the upper and lower eyelids.
2. Identify the **orbicularis oculi muscle**, which encircles the **palpebral fissure** (opening of the eyelid) (Fig. 7.09). The orbicularis oculi muscle has three parts:
   - **Orbital part** – surrounds the orbital margin and is responsible for the tight closure of the eyelid.
   - **Palpebral part** – a thinner portion, which is contained in the eyelids and is involved in blinking of the eyelid.
   - **Lacrimal part** – lies deep to the palpebral part and will not be seen in dissection.

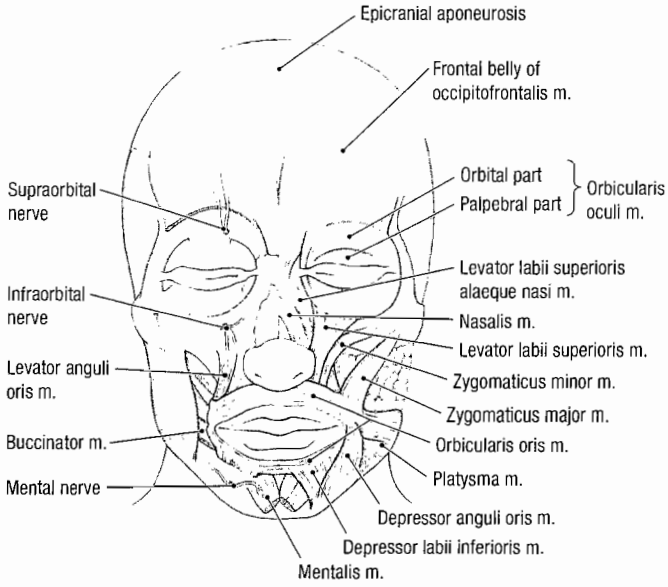


Figure 7.09. Muscles of the face.

3. Note that the medial attachment of the orbicularis oculi muscle is the medial orbital margin, the medial palpebral ligament, and the lacrimal bone. The lateral attachment of the orbicularis oculi muscle is the skin around the orbital margin.

MUSCLES AROUND THE ORAL OPENING [G 600, 604; N 22; R 60; C 463]

1. Several muscles alter the shape of the mouth and lips. Use a probe to define some of these muscles (Fig. 7.09):
   - **Levator labii superioris muscle** – has a superior attachment to the maxilla just below the orbital margin and an inferior attachment to the upper lip. It elevates the upper lip.
   - **Zygomaticus major muscle** – has a lateral attachment to the zygomatic bone and a medial attachment to the angle of the mouth. It draws the angle of the mouth superiorly and posteriorly.
   - **Orbicularis oris muscle** – has medial attachments to the maxilla, mandible, and skin in the median plane and a lateral attachment to the angle of the mouth. The orbicularis oris muscle is the sphincter of the mouth.
   - **Buccinator muscle** – has proximal attachments to the pterygomandibular raphe and the lateral surfaces of the alveolar processes of the maxilla and mandible. The distal attachment of the buccinator muscle is the angle of the mouth. It compresses the cheek against the molar teeth, keeping food on the occlusal surfaces during chewing.
   - **Depressor anguli oris muscle** – has an inferior attachment to the mandible and a superior attachment to the angle of the mouth. It depresses the corner of the mouth.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Facial Nerve

Bell's Palsy is a sudden loss of control of the muscles of facial expression on one side of the face. The patient presents with drooping of the mouth and inability to close the eyelid on the affected side.

2. On the right side, use blunt dissection to define the borders of the levator labii superioris muscle. Transect the muscle close to the infraorbital margin and reflect it inferiorly to expose the **infraorbital nerve (V_2)**. The infraorbital nerve supplies sensory innervation to the inferior eyelid, side of the nose, and upper lip.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Study the infraorbital foramen and infraorbital canal in the skull. For purposes of dental anesthesia, the infraorbital nerve may be infiltrated where it emerges from the infraorbital foramen.

LOWER LIP [G 604; C 469]

1. Make a midline incision through the entire thickness of the lower lip, extending as far inferiorly as the mental protuberance. On the right side, make a second incision parallel to the first. The second incision should begin at the angle of the mouth and end at the margin of the mandible. Reflect the flap of lip inferiorly.
2. Cut through the mucous membrane where it reflects from the lip to the gums. Use blunt dissection to peel the flap of lip from the bone and locate the **mental foramen** (L., *mentum*, chin). The mental foramen is located approximately 3 cm from the median plane.
3. Observe that the **mental nerve, artery, and vein** emerge from the mental foramen. The mental nerve supplies sensory innervation to the lower lip and chin.

SENSORY NERVES OF THE FACE [G 604; N 20; R 73; C 469]

1. Use an illustration to summarize the sensory nerves of the face (Fig. 7.10):
   - **Supraorbital nerve** – a branch of the ophthalmic nerve (V_1) that passes through the supraorbital notch (foramen). It will be dissected later.
   - **Infraorbital nerve** – a branch of the maxillary nerve (V_2) that passes through the infraorbital foramen.
   - **Mental nerve** – a branch of the mandibular nerve (V_3) that passes through the mental foramen.
2. There are several smaller branches of the trigeminal nerve that innervate the facial region (lacrimal, infratrochlear, zygomaticofacial, zygomaticotemporal, etc.). Do not dissect these branches. The auriculotemporal nerve (a branch of V_3) will be dissected later.

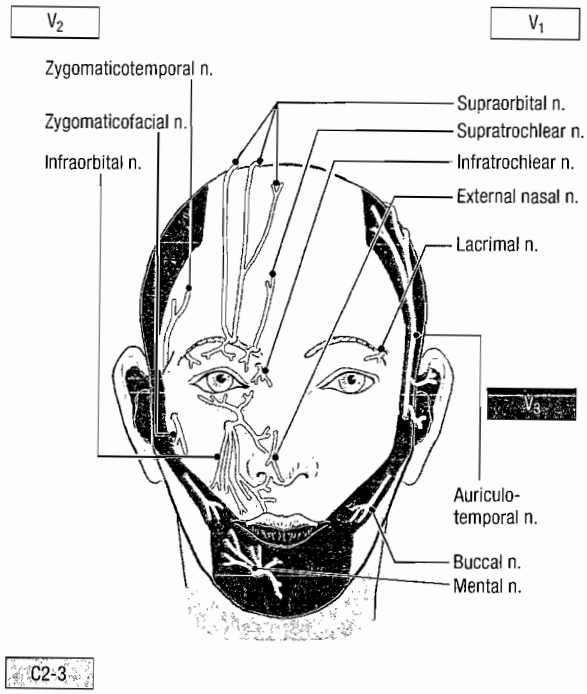


Figure 7.10. Sensory nerves of the face.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen to trace the branches of the facial nerve from the parotid plexus to the muscles of facial expression. Review the attachments, action, and innervation of each muscle that was identified in this dissection. Use a skull and the dissected specimen to review the branches of the trigeminal nerve that were dissected and the openings in the bones that they pass through. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the origin and course of the facial artery and vein.

SCALP [G 610; R 85; C 486]

Before you dissect . . .

The scalp consists of five layers that are firmly bound together (Fig. 7.11):

- **Skin**
- **Connective tissue** – dense subcutaneous tissue containing the vessels and nerves of the scalp
- **Aponeurosis** (epicranial aponeurosis) – connecting the frontalis muscle to the occipitalis muscle
- **Loose connective tissue** – permits the scalp to move over the calvaria
- **Pericranium** – the periosteum of the cranial bones

Note that the first letters of the names of the five layers spell the word "scalp."

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Scalp

The connective tissue layer of the scalp contains collagen fibers that attach to the external surface of the blood vessels. When a blood vessel of the scalp is cut, the connective tissue holds the lumen open, resulting in profuse bleeding.

If an infection occurs in the scalp, it can spread within the connective tissue layer. Therefore, this layer has been called the "dangerous area." From the "dangerous area," the infection may pass into the cranial cavity through emissary veins.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The five layers of the scalp will be reflected as one. The muscles of the scalp will be examined on the cut surface of the scalp. Nerves and vessels that supply the scalp will be dissected in other regions, but they will not be dissected in the scalp.

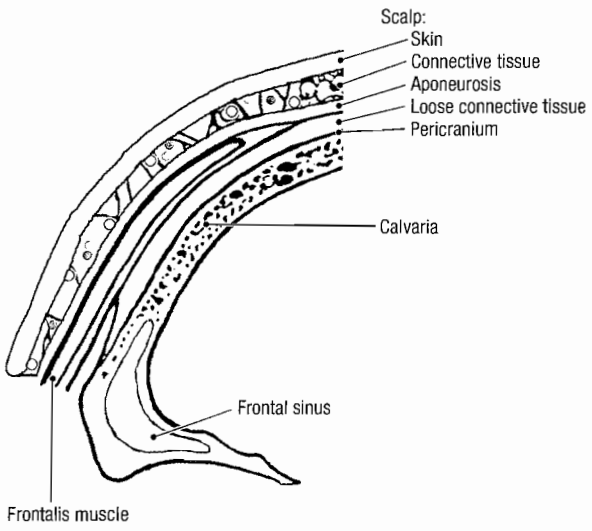


Figure 7.11. Layers of the scalp.

Dissection Instructions

1. The cuts should be made through the entire scalp and the scalpel should contact the bones of the calvaria.
2. Refer to Figure 7.12 and make a midline cut from the nasion (C) to the vertex (A). Extend this cut to the external occipital protuberance (G).
3. Make a cut in the coronal plane from the vertex (A) to the ear (D). Duplicate this cut on the opposite side of the head.
4. Beginning at the vertex, use forceps to grasp one corner of the cut scalp and insert a chisel between the scalp and the calvaria. Use the chisel to loosen the scalp from the calvaria.
5. Once the flap of scalp is raised, grasp the flap with both hands and pull it inferiorly. Do not detach the flaps.
6. Reflect all four flaps of scalp down to the level that a hatband would occupy (Fig. 7.13).

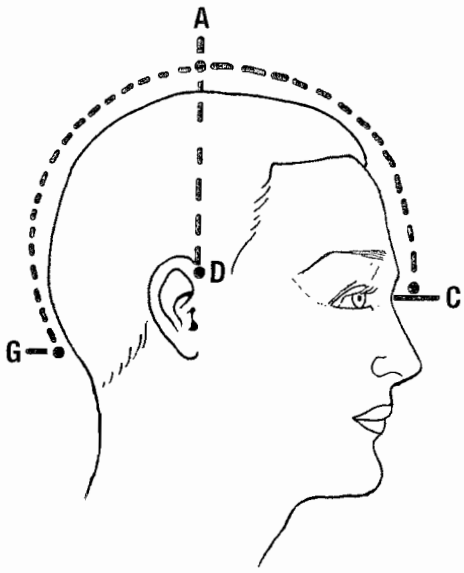


Figure 7.12. Scalp incisions.

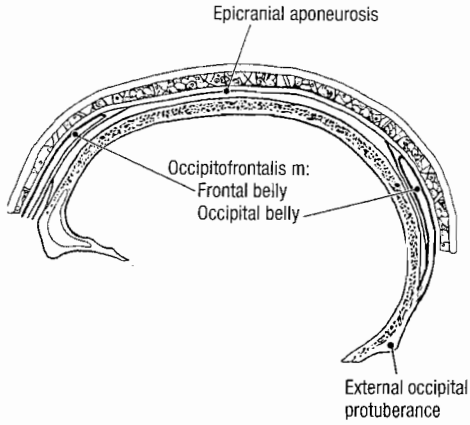


Figure 7.14. The occipitofrontalis muscle in sagittal section.

7. Examine the cut edge of the scalp and identify the **occipitofrontalis muscle** (Fig. 7.14). The inferior attachment of the occipital belly is the occipital bone and its superior attachment is the epicranial aponeurosis. The superior attachment of the frontal belly is the epicranial aponeurosis and its inferior attachment is the skin of the forehead and eyebrows. Both muscles are innervated by the facial nerve (VII). **[G 603, 608; N 19, 22; R 61, 65; C 466, 468]**
8. Pull the anterior scalp flap inferiorly to expose the supraorbital margin. Identify the **supraorbital nerve and vessels** where they exit the supraorbital notch and enter the deep surface of the scalp.
9. Use an illustration to observe that nerves and vessels are contained within the flaps of the scalp (Fig. 7.15). Note that the nerves and vessels enter the scalp from more inferior regions.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the flaps of scalp in their correct anatomical positions. Use an illustration to review the course of nerves and vessels that supply the scalp. Use a skull and the dissected specimen to review the course of the supraorbital nerve through the supraorbital notch. Use an illustration to study the course of the greater occipital nerve from the cervical region to the posterior surface of the head. The auriculotemporal nerve and lesser occipital nerves will be dissected later. Recall the attachments of the occipitofrontalis muscle and review its two bellies in the sagittal scalp cut.

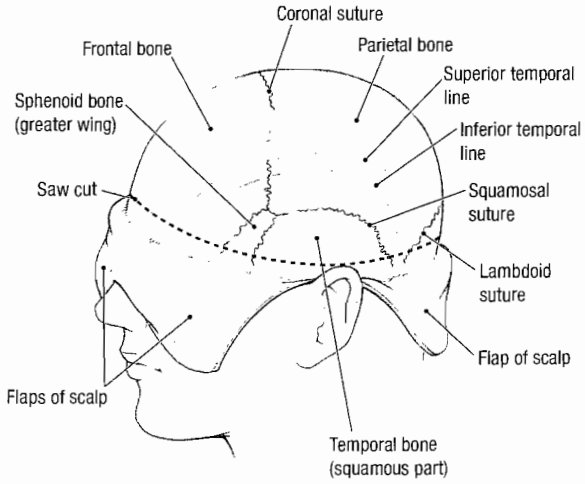


Figure 7.13. How to reflect the scalp and mark the calvaria for sawing.

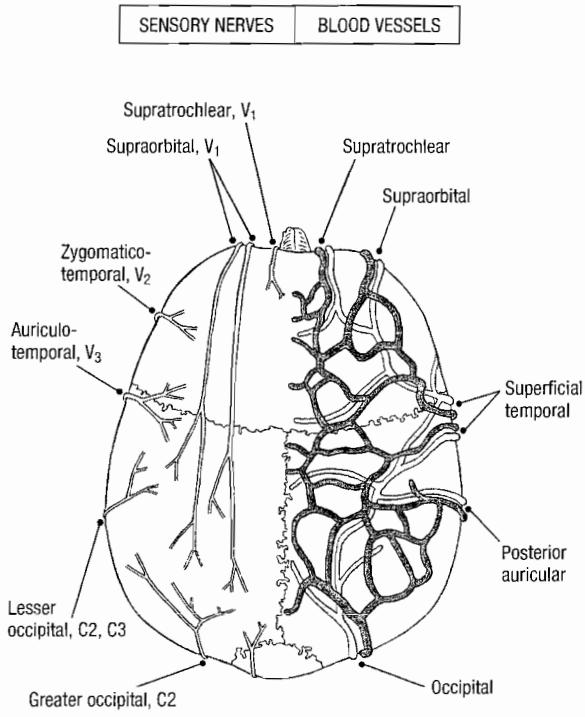


Figure 7.15. Sensory nerves and blood vessels of the scalp.

INTERIOR OF THE SKULL

Before you dissect . . .

The bones of the calvaria provide a protective covering for the cerebral hemispheres. To view the internal features of the cranial cavity, the calvaria must be removed. In addition, a wedge of occipital bone will be removed to open the dissection field and make removal of the brain easier.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The scalp and temporalis muscle will be reflected inferiorly. The calvaria will be cut with a saw and removed. A wedge of occipital bone will be removed. The dura mater will be examined and then opened to reveal the arachnoid mater and pia mater.

Dissection Instructions

REMOVAL OF THE CALVARIA

1. The cadaver should be in the supine position. Fold the flaps of the scalp inferiorly as shown in Figure 7.13.
2. On the lateral surface of the calvaria, note that the scalp has been separated from the fascia that covers the **temporalis muscle (temporal muscle)**. Beginning at the superior temporal line, use a scalpel to detach the temporalis muscle from the calvaria. Reflect the temporalis muscle inferiorly over the reflected scalp but do not transect it. The temporalis muscle will be studied later.
3. Observe the **pericranium** that covers the calvaria. Note that the sutures of the skull are clearly visible. Identify the sagittal, coronal, squamosal, and lambdoid sutures (Fig. 7.13).
4. Use a scalpel or chisel to scrape the bones of the calvaria clean of periosteum and muscle fibers.
5. Place a rubber band around the circumference of the skull (dashed line, Fig. 7.13). Anteriorly, the rubber band should be about 2 cm superior to the supraorbital margin. Posteriorly, the rubber band should be about 2 cm superior to the external occipital protuberance. Use the rubber band as a guide to mark the circumference of the calvaria with a pencil line.
6. Refer to a skull. Remove the calvaria and note that the bones of the calvaria have three layers:
   - **Outer lamina** – compact bone
   - **Diploe** – spongy bone between the outer and inner laminae
   - **Inner lamina** – compact bone
7. Use a saw to cut along the pencil line. The saw cut should pass through the outer lamina of the calvaria but not completely through the bone. Moist red bone indicates that the saw is within the diploe. Be particularly careful when cutting the squamous part of the temporal bone, which is very thin. If you saw through the inner lamina, you may damage the underlying dura mater or the brain.
8. While sawing, turn the body alternately from supine to prone and back to supine as you work your way around the skull. After making a complete circumferential cut, break the inner lamina of the calvaria by repeatedly inserting a chisel into the saw cut and striking the chisel gently with a mallet. Continue with this procedure until the calvaria can be pried loose.
9. Remove the calvaria by detaching it from the dura mater with your fingers or the handle of a forceps. Work from anterior to posterior and do not use more force than is necessary. Violent pulling may result in tearing of the dura and damage to the brain.

REMOVAL OF A WEDGE OF OCCIPITAL BONE

1. Place the cadaver in the prone position and refer to Figure 7.16.
2. Use a scalpel to detach the semispinalis capitis muscle, splenius capitis muscle, obliquus capitis superior muscle, and the rectus capitis posterior major and minor muscles from the occipital bone.
3. Identify the **posterior atlanto-occipital membrane**, which spans the interval between the **atlas** (C1) and the **occipital bone**. Use scissors to incise the posterior atlanto-occipital membrane transversely from the left vertebral artery to the right vertebral artery. Preserve the **vertebral arteries**.
4. Use a scalpel or chisel to scrape the occipital bone clean of remaining muscle fibers and pericranium.
5. Review the following landmarks on a skull (Fig. 7.16): **[G 592; N 4; R 25; C 481]**
   - **Mastoid process**
   - **External occipital protuberance**
   - **Lambdoid suture**
6. On the skull, note the point where the lambdoid suture meets the saw cut where the calvaria was removed. Transfer this point to the cadaver specimen and mark the location with a pencil (Point A, Fig. 7.17).
7. On the skull, examine the internal surface of the **occipital bone** and identify (Fig. 7.18): **[G 615; N 9; R 34; C 497]**
   - **Foramen magnum**
   - **Groove for the superior sagittal sinus**
   - **Grooves for the transverse sinuses**
   - **Fossae for the cerebellum (2)** – inferior to the grooves for the transverse sinuses
   - **Fossae for the occipital poles of the cerebral hemispheres (2)** – superior to the grooves for the transverse sinuses
8. On the external surface of the skull, identify the lateral margin of the foramen magnum and transfer this point to the cadaver specimen (Point B, Fig. 7.17). On the right and left sides of the cadaver, connect points A and B with a pencil line to define the wedge of occipital bone that will be removed in the cadaver.
9. Use a saw to cut along the pencil lines. As in the removal of the calvaria, do not cut through the inner lamina of compact bone. Extend the saw cut into the foramen magnum but preserve the vertebral arteries. Loosen the wedge of bone with chisel and mallet and remove it, leaving the dura mater intact (Fig. 7.19).

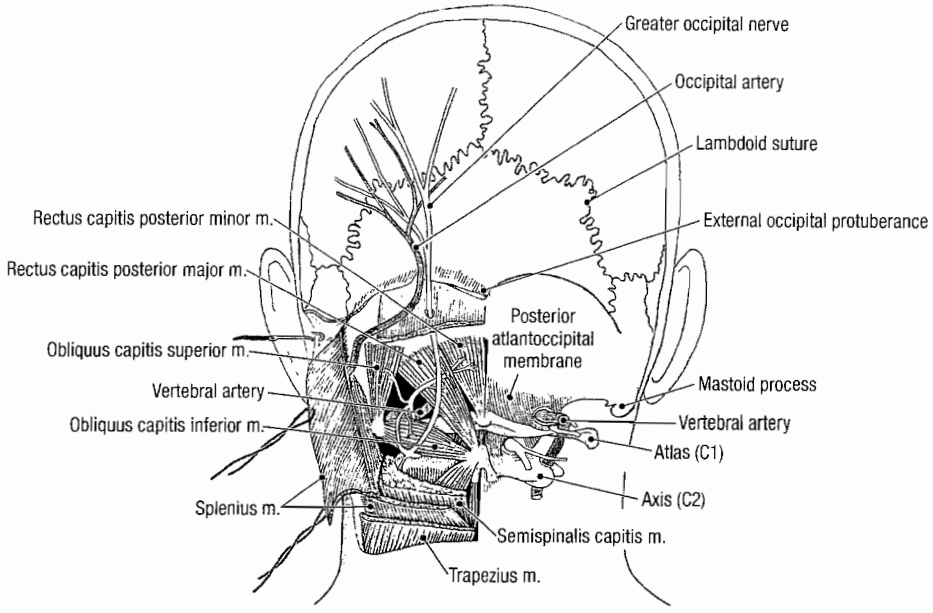


Figure 7.16. Muscles that must be removed to cut an occipital wedge.

CRANIAL MENINGES [G 610; N 96; R 85; C 486]

1. The brain is covered with three membranes called meninges (Gr., *meninx*, membrane). From outside to inside they are (Fig. 7.20):
   - **Dura mater** – the outer tough membrane
   - **Arachnoid mater** – the intermediate membrane
   - **Pia mater** – a delicate membrane that is closely applied to the surface of the brain
2. The **dura mater** (L., *dura mater*, hard mother) consists of two layers, an external **periosteal layer** and an internal **meningeal layer** (Fig. 7.20). The two dural layers are indistinguishable except where they separate to enclose the dural venous sinuses.
3. Identify the **superior sagittal sinus** and the right and left **transverse sinuses** (Fig. 7.19). **[G 611; N 95; C 487]**
4. Use scissors to make a longitudinal incision in the superior sagittal sinus (Fig. 7.21) and verify that:
   - Its inner surface is smooth because it is lined by endothelium.
   - Its caliber increases from anterior to posterior (direction of venous blood flow).
   - It has lateral expansions called **lateral venous lacunae.**
   - **Arachnoid granulations** may be seen in the lateral venous lacunae (Fig. 7.20). The arachnoid granulations return cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) to the venous system.

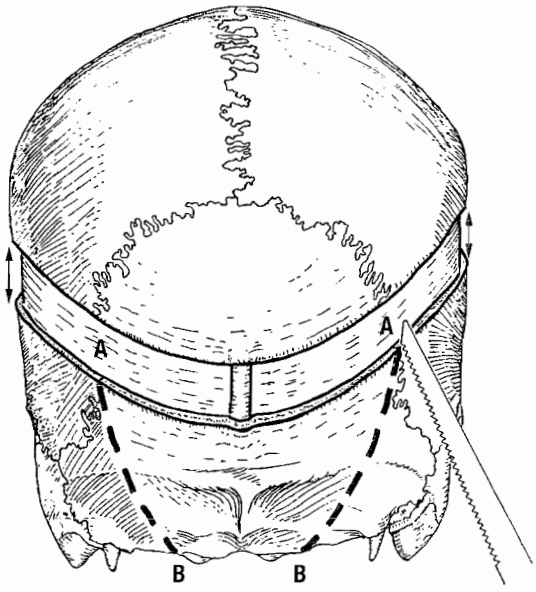


Figure 7.17. How to remove the wedge of occipital bone. Make one saw cut on each side from **A** to **B**.

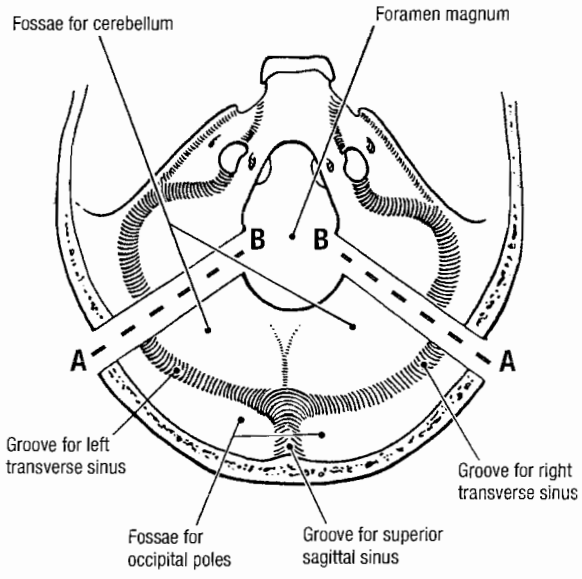


Figure 7.18. Internal surface of the occipital bone. Demarcation of the wedge-shaped area that is to be removed from the occipital bone.

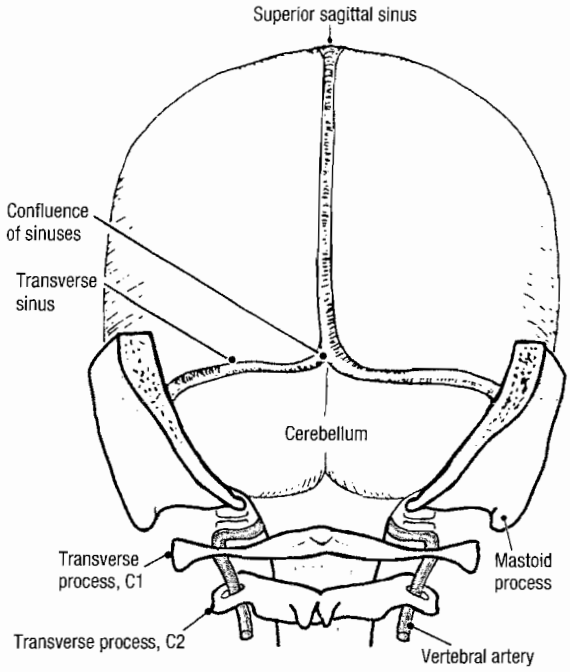


Figure 7.19. Posterior aspect of the dura mater.

5. Examine the dura mater that covers the cerebral hemispheres and observe the branches of the **middle meningeal artery**. The middle meningeal artery supplies the dura mater and adjacent calvaria. Note that the **anterior branch** of the middle meningeal artery crosses the inner surface of the **pterion**, where it may tunnel through the bone. Fractures through this area of the skull may result in tearing of the middle meningeal artery.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Middle Meningeal Artery

When the middle meningeal artery is torn in a head injury, blood accumulates between the skull and the dura mater (epidural hematoma).

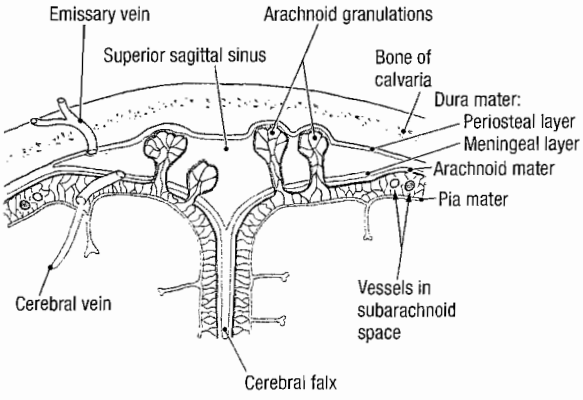


Figure 7.20. Coronal section through the superior sagittal sinus.

6. Examine the inner surface of the removed calvaria. Identify the following features: **[N 7; C 483]**
   - **Groove for the superior sagittal sinus**
   - **Granular foveolae** – shallow depressions caused by the arachnoid granulations
   - **Grooves for the branches of the middle meningeal artery**
7. Use scissors to make a parasagittal cut through the dura mater about 2 cm lateral to the midline (Fig. 7.21). Cut only the dura mater, not the arachnoid mater. This cut should be lateral and parallel to the lateral edge of the superior sagittal sinus. Extend the cut to the frontal bone anteriorly and to the transverse sinus posteriorly. Duplicate the parasagittal cut on the opposite side of the cadaver.
8. Make a coronal cut through the dura mater from the midpoint of the parasagittal cut (near the vertex) to just above the ear (Fig. 7.21). Repeat on the opposite side of the cadaver.
9. The result is a median strip of dura mater containing the superior sagittal sinus and four flaps of dura mater that are similar to the scalp flaps (Fig. 7.21). Fold the dural flaps inferiorly over the cut edge of the skull. Use scissors to detach any small adhesions or blood vessels that constrain the flaps.
10. Observe the **arachnoid mater** (Gr., *arachnoeides*, like a cobweb—in reference to the spider web-like connective tissue strands in the subarachnoid space). The arachnoid mater loosely covers the brain and spans across the fissures and sulci. In the living person, the arachnoid mater is closely applied to the internal meningeal layer of the dura mater with no space between (Fig. 7.20). **[G 611; N 96; R 85]**
11. Observe the **cerebral veins** that are visible through the arachnoid mater. The cerebral veins empty into the superior sagittal sinus. At the point where the cerebral veins enter the sinus they may be torn in cases of head trauma.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Subdural Hematoma

As a complication of head injury, cerebral veins may bleed into the potential space between the dura mater and the arachnoid mater. When this happens, the blood accumulates between the dura mater and arachnoid mater (a "subdural space" is created), and this condition is called a subdural hematoma.

12. Use scissors to make a small cut (2.5 cm) through the arachnoid mater over the lateral surface of the brain. Use a probe to elevate the arachnoid mater and observe the **subarachnoid space**. In the living, the subarachnoid space is a real space that contains cerebrospinal fluid.

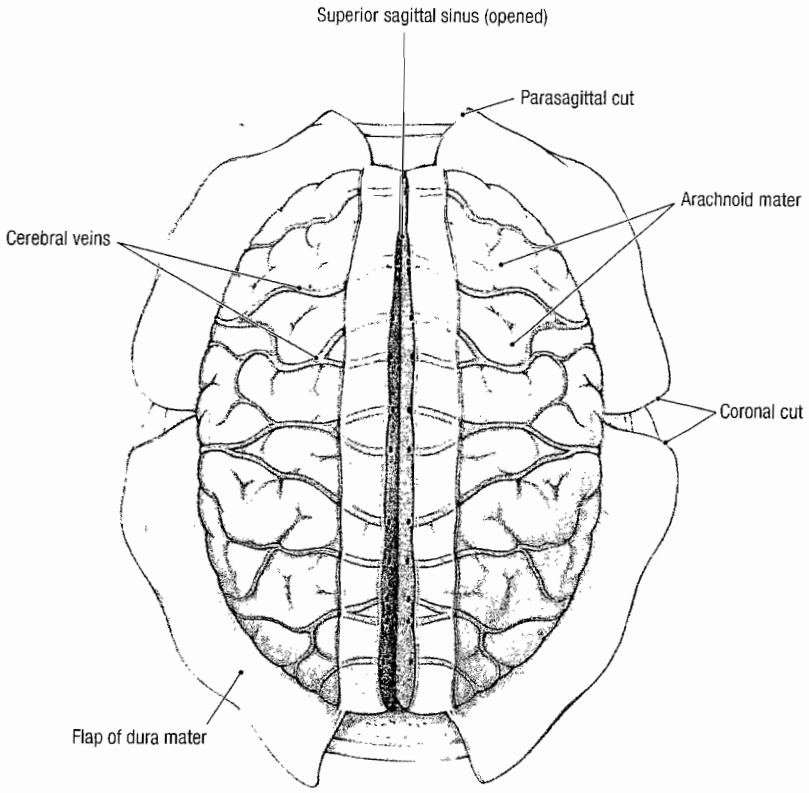


Figure 7.21. Dura mater reflected to show a superior view of the arachnoid mater.

13. Through the opening in the arachnoid mater, observe the **pia mater** (L., *pia mater*, tender mother) on the surface of the brain. The pia mater faithfully follows the contours of the brain, passing into all sulci and fissures. The pia mater cannot be removed from the surface of the brain.

After you dissect . . .

Review the bones that form the calvaria. Review the external features of the cranial dura mater and note that the external periosteal layer is attached to the skull. Review the features of the spinal dura mater and compare it to the cranial dura mater. Review the extradural (epidural) space in the vertebral canal and recall that it contains fat and the internal vertebral venous plexus. Under normal conditions there is no extradural space in the cranial cavity. Compare and contrast the features of an epidural hematoma and a subdural hematoma.

REMOVAL OF THE BRAIN

Before you dissect . . .

The internal meningeal layer of the dura mater forms inwardly projecting folds (dural infoldings) that serve as incomplete partitions of the cranial cavity. Three of these folds (cerebral falx, cerebellar tentorium, and cerebellar falx) extend inward between parts of the brain. These infoldings must be cut to remove the brain.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The brain will be removed intact, along with the arachnoid mater and pia mater. The dura mater will be left in the cranial cavity, where the dural infoldings will be studied.

Dissection Instructions

1. Use a skull to identify the following features (Fig. 7.22): **[G 615; N 9; R 34; C 497]**
   - **Crista galli**
   - **Cribriform plate**
   - **Anterior clinoid process**
   - **Posterior clinoid process**
   - **Superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone**
   - **Internal acoustic meatus**
   - **Jugular foramen**
   - **Hypoglossal canal**
   - **Foramen magnum**
   - **Groove for the sigmoid sinus**
   - **Groove for the transverse sinus**
2. In the midline, use your fingers to gently retract one cerebral hemisphere 1 or 2 cm laterally and observe the **cerebral falx** (L., *falx*, sickle) between the cerebral hemispheres (Fig. 7.23). The cerebral falx is attached to the **crista galli** at its anterior end and the **cerebellar tentorium** at its posterior end. **[G 612; N 97; R 87; C 489]**

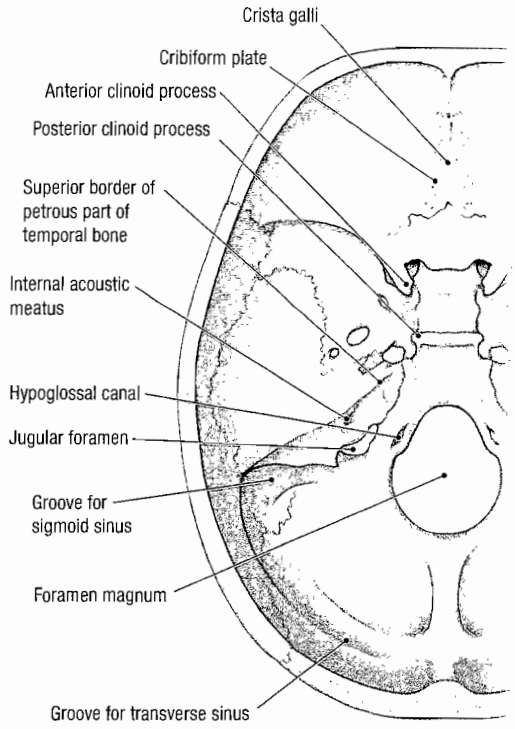


Figure 7.22. Floor of the cranial cavity from the superior view.

3. Use your hand to gently lift the frontal lobes (anterior part of the brain) and use scissors to cut the cerebral falx where it is attached to the crista galli. This cut should connect the anterior ends of the two parasagittal cuts illustrated in Figure 7.21.
4. Use scissors to cut the cerebral veins where they enter the superior sagittal sinus so that the veins will remain on the surface of the brain (Fig. 7.21). Grasp the cerebral falx near the crista galli and pull it superiorly and posteriorly from between the cerebral hemispheres. Posteriorly, the cerebral falx will remain attached to the cerebellar tentorium.
5. On the right side, gently lift the occipital lobe (posterior part of brain) and observe the **cerebellar tentorium**. Beginning anteriorly, use a scalpel to cut the cerebellar tentorium as close to bone as possible. Sever the cerebellar tentorium from the posterior clinoid process and then from the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone. The cut should continue to the posterolateral end of the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone, near the groove for the sigmoid sinus. Repeat the cut on the left side of the cadaver.
6. Pull the cerebral falx and cerebellar tentorium posteriorly from between the cerebral hemispheres and cerebellum. This procedure will tear the **great cerebral vein** (Fig. 7.24).
7. With the dural infoldings detached, the brain may be gently moved to expose the cranial nerves and vessels that are located on its inferior surface.
8. Use your fingers to gently elevate the frontal lobes. Use a probe to lift the olfactory bulb from the cribriform plate on each side of the crista galli.
9. Use a scalpel to cut the following structures bilaterally: optic nerve, internal carotid artery, and oculomotor nerve. Cut the stalk of the pituitary gland in the midline.
10. Raise the brain slightly higher and cut the following structures bilaterally: trochlear nerve, trigeminal nerve, and abducent nerve.
11. Elevate the cerebrum and brainstem still further and cut the following structures bilaterally: facial and vestibulocochlear nerves near the internal acoustic meatus; glossopharyngeal, vagus and accessory nerves near the jugular foramen; hypoglossal nerve near the hypoglossal canal.
12. Sever the two vertebral arteries where they enter the skull through the foramen magnum and use a scalpel to cut the cervical spinal cord as low in the foramen magnum (or cervical vertebral canal) as you can reach.

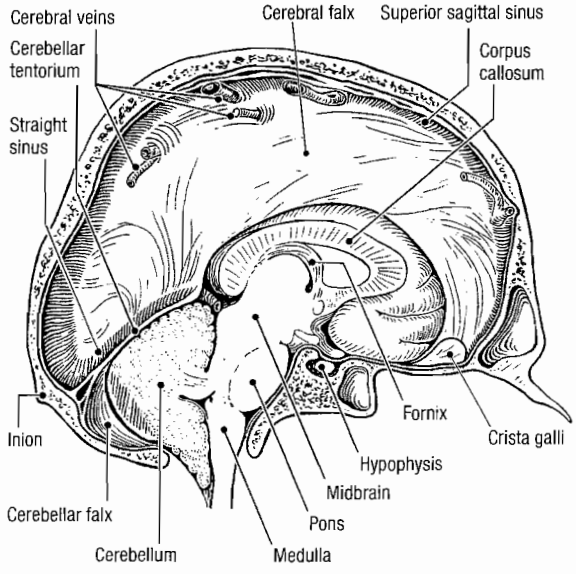


Figure 7.23. Infoldings of dura mater.

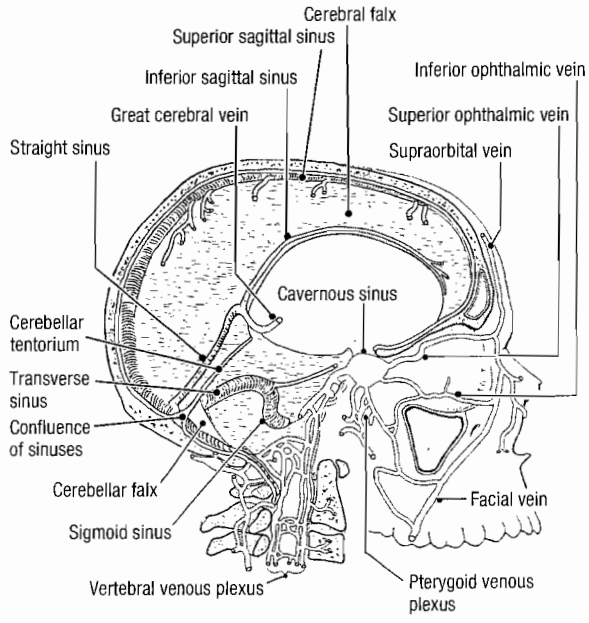


Figure 7.24. Dural venous sinuses.

13. Support the brain with the palm of one hand under the frontal lobes and your fingers extending down the ventral surface of the brainstem. Insert the tip of your middle finger into the cut that was made across the cervical spinal cord to support the brainstem and cerebellum. Roll the brain, brainstem, and cerebellum posteriorly and out of the cranial cavity in one piece.
14. The brain should be stored in a bath of preservative fluid.

DURAL INFOLDINGS AND DURAL VENOUS SINUSES

Before you dissect . . .

The two layers of the dura mater are separated in several locations to form dural venous sinuses. The dural venous sinuses collect venous drainage from the brain and conduct it out of the cranial cavity.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The dura mater will be repositioned to recreate its morphology during life. The infoldings of the dura mater and the associated dural venous sinuses will be identified.

Dissection Instructions

DURAL INFOLDINGS [G 612; N 97; R 87; C 489]

1. Return the dura mater to its correct anatomical position.
2. On the right side of the head, open the two flaps of dura mater and identify the **cerebral falx (falx cerebri)** (Fig. 7.24). In the living person, the cerebral falx lies between the cerebral hemispheres. The cerebral falx is attached to the crista galli, the calvaria on both sides of the groove for the superior sagittal sinus, and the cerebellar tentorium.
3. Identify the **cerebellar tentorium (tentorium cerebelli**; L., *tentorium*, tent) (Fig. 7.24). The cerebellar tentorium is attached to the clinoid processes of the sphenoid bone, the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and the occipital bone on both sides of the groove for the transverse sinus. The opening in the cerebellar tentorium is called the **tentorial notch (tentorial incisure)**, and the brainstem passes through it. In the living person, the cerebellar tentorium is between the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum.
4. Identify the **cerebellar falx (falx cerebelli)**, which is located inferior to the cerebellar tentorium in the midline (Fig. 7.24). Note that the cerebellar falx is attached to the inner surface of the occipital bone and that it is located between the cerebellar hemispheres.

DURAL VENOUS SINUSES [G 613; N 98; R 87; C 488]

1. Review the position of the **superior sagittal sinus** (Fig. 7.24). Note that the superior sagittal sinus begins near the crista galli and ends near the cerebellar tentorium by draining into the **confluence of sinuses**.
2. Identify the **inferior sagittal sinus**, which is in the inferior margin of the cerebral falx (Fig. 7.24). The inferior sagittal sinus begins anteriorly and ends near the cerebellar tentorium by draining into the straight sinus. Note that the inferior sagittal sinus is much smaller in diameter than the superior sagittal sinus.
3. The **straight sinus** is located in the line of junction of the cerebral falx and the cerebellar tentorium. At its anterior end, the straight sinus receives the inferior sagittal sinus and the **great cerebral vein**. The straight sinus drains into the confluence of sinuses.
4. Review the position of the **transverse sinuses** (right and left). Each transverse sinus carries venous blood from the confluence of sinuses to the sigmoid sinus. Use a scalpel to open the lumen of the transverse sinus.
5. Identify the **sigmoid sinus**. The sigmoid sinus begins at the lateral end of the transverse sinus and ends at the jugular foramen. Use a scalpel to open the lumen of the sigmoid sinus and trace it to the jugular foramen. The **internal jugular vein** is formed at the external surface of the jugular foramen.
6. Observe the floor of the cranial cavity. Note that the dura mater covers all of the bones and provides openings through which the cranial nerves pass. There are small dural venous sinuses located between the layers of the dura mater in the floor of the cranial cavity. Use an atlas illustration to study the following dural venous sinuses: **[G 613; N 98; R 87; C 494]**
   - **Sphenoparietal sinus**
   - **Cavernous sinus**
   - **Superior petrosal sinus**
   - **Inferior petrosal sinus**
   - **Basilar plexus**

After you dissect . . .

Review the infoldings of the dura mater and obtain a three-dimensional understanding of their arrangements. Trace the route of a drop of blood from a cerebral vein to the internal jugular vein, naming all venous structures encountered along the way. Trace the route of a drop of blood from the sphenoparietal sinus to the sigmoid sinus. Trace the route of a drop of blood from the great cerebral vein to the internal jugular vein.

GROSS ANATOMY OF THE BRAIN

Before you dissect . . .

The study of brain anatomy is highly specialized and is usually reserved for a neuroscience course. The description that is provided here is intended to relate the major features of the external surface of the brain to the parts of the skull that will be studied in subsequent dissections. An additional goal of this study is to establish a mental picture of the continuity of the arteries and nerves of the brain with those same structures that are left behind in the cranial fossae after brain removal.

Dissection Instructions

1. Examine the **lateral surface of the brain** and identify (Fig. 7.25): [G 626; N 99; R 92]
   - **Frontal lobe**
   - **Central sulcus**
   - **Parietal lobe**
   - **Occipital lobe**
   - **Lateral sulcus**
   - **Temporal lobe**
2. Identify the **cerebellum** and the **brainstem**.
3. Refer to a skull and identify the **three cranial fossae: anterior, middle**, and **posterior** (Fig. 7.25). Use the cadaver specimen and the brain to verify the following: [N 9; C 496]
   - The **frontal lobe** is located in the **anterior cranial fossa**.
   - The **temporal lobe** is located in the **middle cranial fossa**.
   - The **cerebellum** is located in the **posterior cranial fossa**.
   - The **occipital lobe** is located superior to the cerebellar tentorium.
   - The **brainstem** becomes continuous with the cervical spinal cord at the **foramen magnum**.
4. Examine the inferior surface of the brain and note that it is covered by arachnoid mater. Use a probe to peel back the arachnoid mater and expose the arteries. Observe the arteries and note the following (Fig. 7.26): [G 622; N 132; R 93; C 493]
   - Two vertebral arteries and two internal carotid arteries supply the brain.

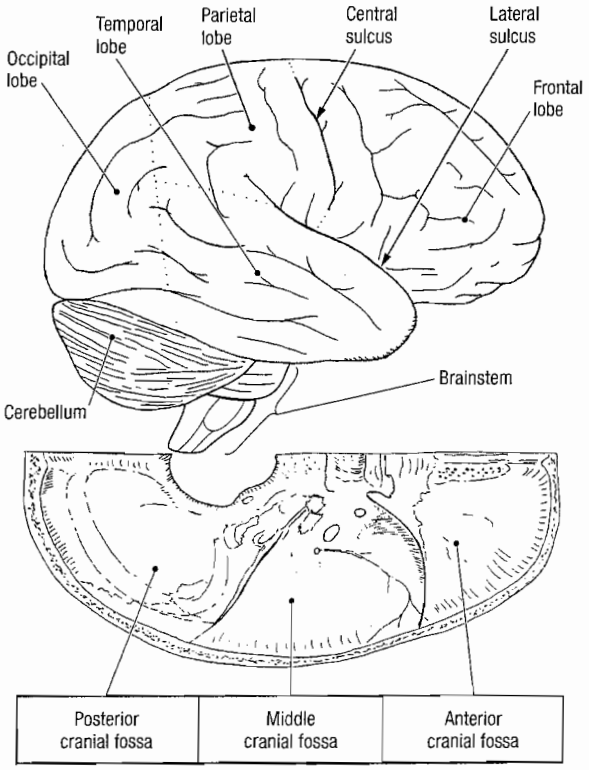


Figure 7.25. The brain and its relationship to the three cranial fossae.

   - Each **vertebral artery** gives rise to one **posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA)**.
   - The two vertebral arteries combine to form the **basilar artery.**
   - The **basilar artery** gives off the **anterior inferior cerebellar artery**, the **superior cerebellar artery**, and several **pontine branches**.
   - The basilar artery terminates by branching into two **posterior cerebral arteries**.
   - Each posterior cerebral artery gives off a **posterior communicating artery** that anastomoses with the **internal carotid artery**.
   - After giving off the **ophthalmic artery**, each internal carotid artery terminates by dividing into a **middle cerebral artery** and an **anterior cerebral artery**.
   - The anterior cerebral arteries are joined across the midline by the **anterior communicating artery**.
   - The **cerebral arterial circle** is formed by the posterior cerebral, posterior communicating, internal carotid, anterior cerebral, and anterior communicating arteries.
5. On the inferior surface of the brain, identify the **12 cranial nerves** by name and by number (Fig. 7.26).
   - **Olfactory bulb and tract (I)**
   - **Optic (II)**
   - **Oculomotor (III)**
   - **Trochlear (IV)**
   - **Trigeminal (V)**
   - **Abducent (VI)**
   - **Facial (VII)**
   - **Vestibulocochlear (VIII)**
   - **Glossopharyngeal (IX)**
   - **Vagus (X)**
   - **Accessory (XI)**
   - **Hypoglossal (XII)**

After you dissect . . .

Review the parts of the brain and the cranial fossae in which they are found. Review the infoldings of the dura mater and their relationship to the cerebral hemispheres and cerebellum.

CRANIAL FOSSAE

Before you dissect . . .

The order of dissection will be as follows: The bones of the floor of the cranial cavity will be studied and the boundaries of the cranial fossae will be identified. The vessels and the nerves of each cranial fossa will be studied. Because the floor of the cranial cavity is covered by dura mater, the dissection is much easier if a skull is held beside the cadaver specimen during dissection to permit direct observation of the foramina.

SKELETON OF THE CRANIAL BASE

Use a skull to identify (Fig. 7.27): [G 614, 615; N 9; R 34; C 497]

- **Ethmoid bone**
  - **Crista galli**
  - **Cribriform plate**

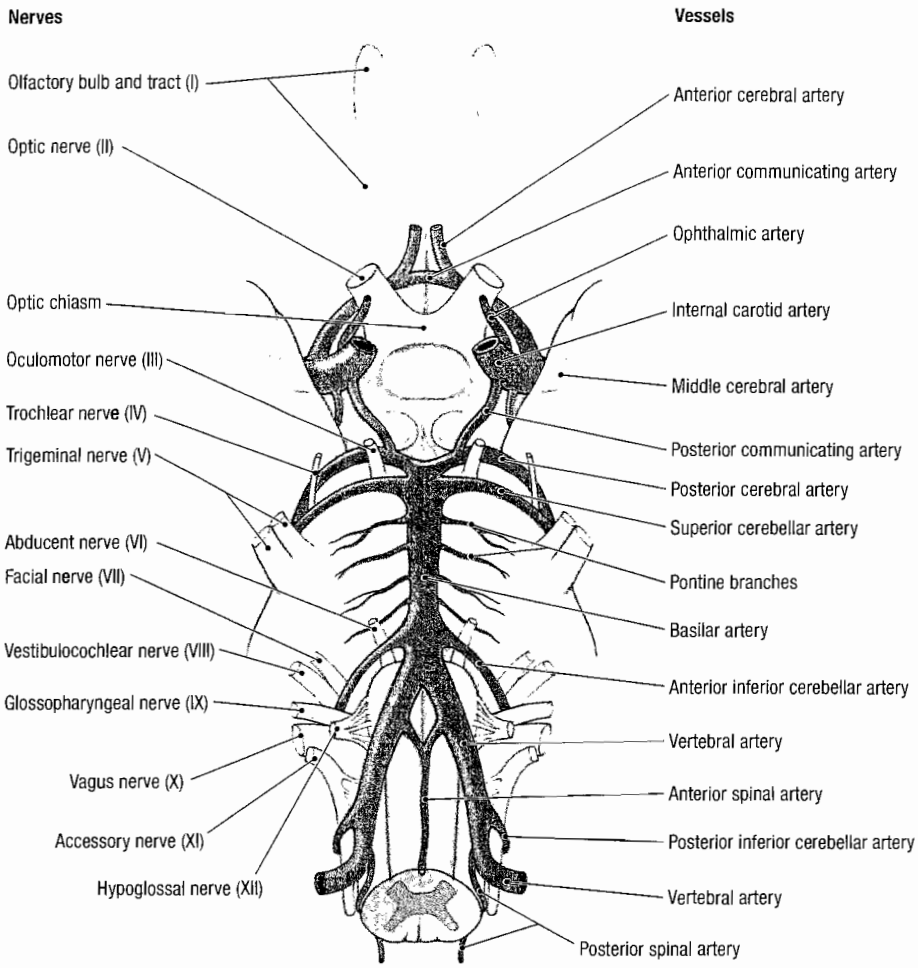
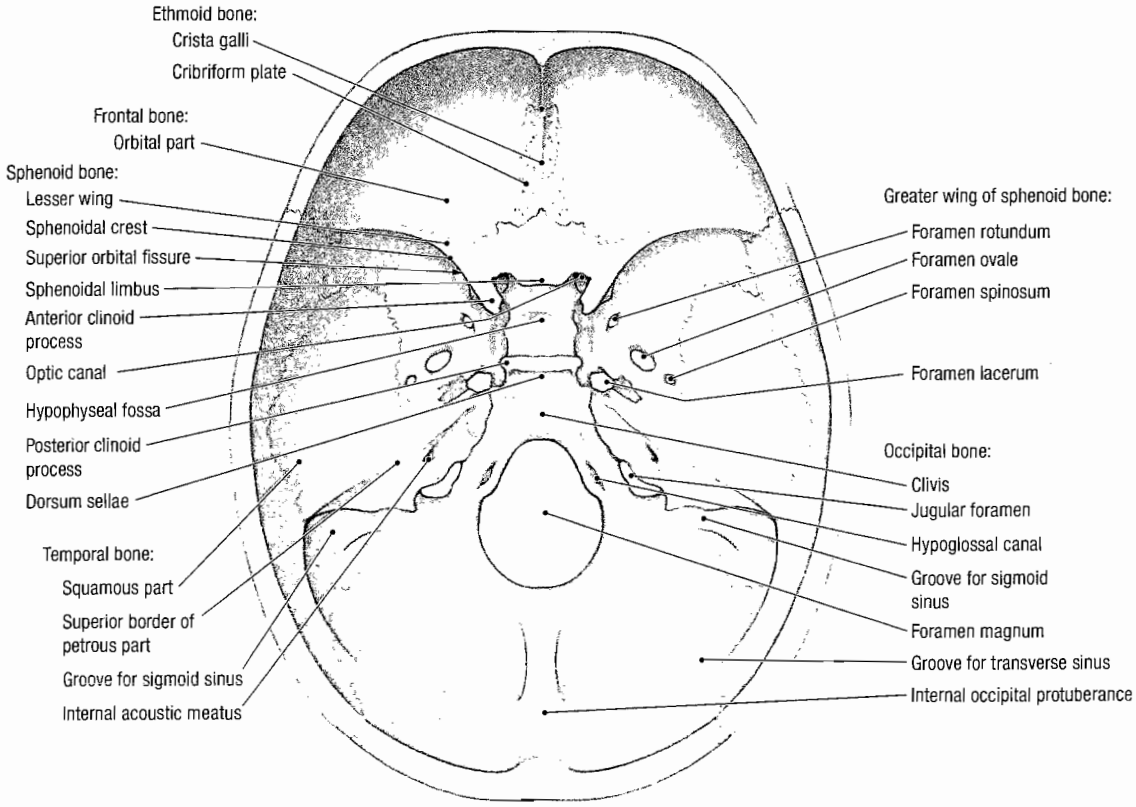


Figure 7.26. Blood vessels and cranial nerves at the base of the brain.



- Frontal bone
  - Orbital part
- Sphenoid bone
  - Lesser wing
  - Sphenoidal crest
  - Superior orbital fissure
  - Anterior clinoid process
  - Sphenoidal limbus
  - Optic canal
  - Hypophyseal fossa
  - Posterior clinoid process
  - Greater wing
    - Foramen rotundum
    - Foramen ovale
    - Foramen spinosum
- Temporal bone
  - Squamous part
  - Petrous part
    - Superior border (petrous ridge)
  - Groove for the sigmoid sinus
  - Internal acoustic meatus
- Occipital bone
  - Clivus
  - Jugular foramen
  - Hypoglossal canal
  - Groove for the sigmoid sinus
  - Foramen magnum
  - Groove for the transverse sinus
  - Internal occipital protuberance

Identify the **foramen lacerum,** which is formed by portions of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone and the temporal bone.

The **anterior cranial fossa** is separated from the **middle cranial fossa** by the right and left sphenoidal crests and the sphenoidal limbus. The middle cranial fossa is separated from the **posterior cranial fossa** by the superior border of the petrous part of the right and left temporal bones and the dorsum sellae. The cerebellar tentorium is attached to the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone and it forms the roof of the posterior cranial fossa.

Dissection Instructions

ANTERIOR CRANIAL FOSSA [G 616; N 98; R 66; C 494]

1. On the right side of the cadaver only, use a probe to loosen the dura mater along the cut edge of the frontal bone. Grasp the dura mater with your fingers and pull it posteriorly as far as the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. The dura mater will strip from the bone more easily if it is moistened. Use scissors to detach the dura mater along the sphenoidal crest and along the midline and place it in the tissue container.
2. Note that the sphenoparietal venous sinus is located along the sphenoidal crest and that its lumen may now be visible where you detached the dura mater.
3. Identify the three bones that participate in the formation of the **anterior cranial fossa**: sphenoid bone, ethmoid bone, and orbital part of the frontal bone (Fig. 7.27). Note that the orbital part forms the roof of the orbit.
4. Before the brain was removed, the cerebral falx was attached to the crista galli and the frontal lobe of the brain rested on the orbital part of the frontal bone. The olfactory bulb rested on the cribriform plate and the fibers of the **olfactory nerve** (I) passed through the openings of the cribriform plate to enter the nasal cavity (Fig. 7.28).

MIDDLE CRANIAL FOSSA [G 616, 620; N 98; R 71; C 494]

1. Recall that the **middle cranial fossa** contains the temporal lobe of the brain.
2. Observe the dura mater that covers the floor of the middle cranial fossa. The dura mater hides all of the openings in the skull and the nerves and vessels that pass through them (Fig. 7.28).
3. Identify the **middle meningeal artery** that can be seen through the dura mater (Fig. 7.28). It appears as a dark line extending laterally from the deepest point of the middle cranial fossa. The middle meningeal artery enters the middle cranial fossa by passing through the **foramen spinosum**.
4. Grasp the dura mater along the sphenoidal crest and peel it posteriorly as far as the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone. Note that the middle meningeal artery adheres to the external surface of the dura mater. Use a probe to tease the proximal part of middle meningeal artery away from the dura mater and leave it in the skull.
5. Use scissors to detach the dura mater along the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone and place it in the tissue container. Do not cut the cranial nerves that cross the anterior end of the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone (oculomotor, trigeminal, trochlear and abducent). Note that the lumen of the **superior petrosal sinus** can be seen along the line of the cut (Fig. 7.28).
6. Observe that the floor of the middle cranial fossa is formed by two bones: sphenoid and temporal (Fig. 7.27).
7. Identify the **optic nerve (II)** (Fig. 7.28). The optic nerve passes through the **optic canal** to enter the orbit. The optic nerve is surrounded by a sleeve of dura mater as it exits the middle cranial fossa.
8. Use a probe to identify the **superior orbital fissure** that is located inferior to the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone (Fig. 7.27). Three cranial nerves and part of a fourth exit the middle cranial fossa by passing through the superior orbital fissure:
   - **Oculomotor nerve (III)** – passes over the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone and passes anteriorly within the wall of the cavernous sinus.
   - **Trochlear nerve (IV)** – courses anteriorly within the wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor nerve (Fig. 7.28). The trochlear nerve is a very small nerve that enters the dura mater at the anterior end of the tentorial notch. It may have been cut during brain removal but should be intact further anteriorly.
   - **Ophthalmic nerve (V_1)** – arises from the trigemi-

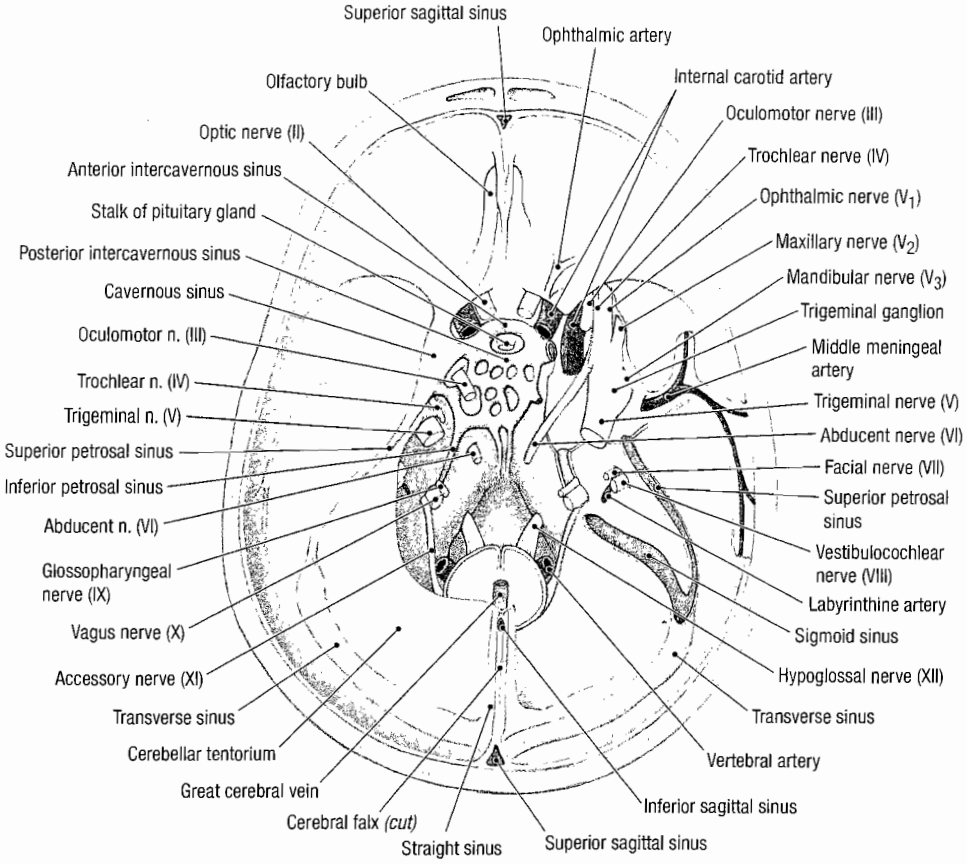


Figure 7.28. Nerves and vessels in the cranial fossae.

nal ganglion and passes anteriorly within the wall of the cavernous sinus inferior to the trochlear nerve (Fig. 7.28).

- **Abducent nerve (VI)** – enters the dura mater over the body of the occipital bone (Fig. 7.28). The abducent nerve passes anteriorly within the cavernous sinus. It is medial to (deep to) the other nerves listed above, and lateral to the internal carotid artery.

9. Use a probe to clean the nerves that pass through the superior orbital fissure. Note that three of these nerves are located within the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus (III, IV, V_1) and one is within the cavernous sinus (VI) (Fig. 7.29).
10. Identify the **trigeminal nerve (V)** (Fig. 7.28). It is the largest cranial nerve and is easily found where it crosses the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone.
11. Follow the trigeminal nerve anteriorly to the **trigeminal ganglion**. Use a probe to define the three nerves (divisions) that arise from the anterior border of the trigeminal ganglion [ophthalmic (V_1), mandibular (V_2), and maxillary (V_3)]. Note that these three nerves are named according to their region of distribution and are numbered from superior to inferior as they arise from the trigeminal ganglion.
12. Identify the **maxillary nerve (V_2)** and follow it anteriorly to the **foramen rotundum**, where it exits the middle cranial fossa (Fig. 7.28). The maxillary nerve courses within the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus just inferior to the ophthalmic nerve (V_1) (Fig. 7.29).

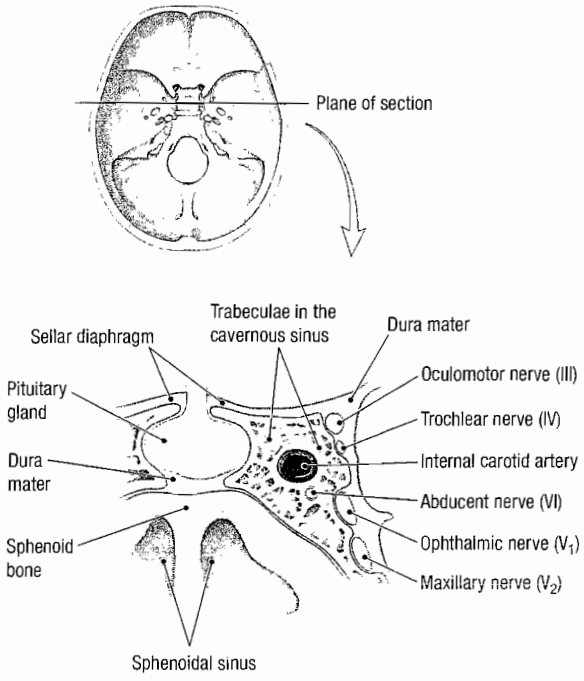


Figure 7.29. Coronal section through the cavernous sinus.

13. Identify the **mandibular nerve (V_3)** and follow it inferiorly to the **foramen ovale**, where it exits the middle cranial fossa (Fig. 7.28).
14. Return to the area of the cavernous sinus and use a probe to retract the cranial nerves. Identify **the internal carotid artery** (Fig. 7.28). The internal carotid artery enters the cranial cavity by passing through the **carotid canal**. It makes an S-shaped bend in the cavernous sinus and emerges near the optic nerve. Cranial nerves III, IV, V_1, V_2, and VI cross the lateral side of the internal carotid artery. Among this group of nerves the abducent nerve (VI) is most closely related to the internal carotid artery (Fig. 7.29).
15. Identify the region of the **hypophyseal fossa**. The hypophyseal fossa is covered by the **sellar diaphragm (diaphragma sellae)** which is a dural infolding (Fig. 7.29). The stalk of the pituitary gland passes through an opening in the sellar diaphragm. The pituitary gland is still contained within the hypophyseal fossa.
16. Anterior and posterior to the stalk of the pituitary gland are two small dural venous sinuses called the **anterior and posterior intercavernous sinuses** (Fig. 7.28). The intercavernous sinuses connect the right and left cavernous sinuses across the midline. Do not attempt to dissect the intercavernous sinuses.
17. Use an atlas illustration to identify all of the veins and venous sinuses that drain into or out of the cavernous sinus. **[G 613; N 98; R 87; C 494]**

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Cavernous Sinus

In fractures of the base of the skull, the internal carotid artery may rupture within the cavernous sinus. The release of arterial blood into the cavernous sinus creates an abnormal reflux of blood from the cavernous sinus into the ophthalmic veins. As a result, the eye is protruded, engorged, and is pulsating in synchrony with the radial pulse (pulsating exophthalmos).

POSTERIOR CRANIAL FOSSA [G 616, 618; N 98; R 69; C 494]

1. Recall that the posterior cranial fossa contains the cerebellum and the brainstem. At the foramen magnum, the brainstem becomes continuous with the cervical spinal cord. The features of the posterior cranial fossa will be studied with the dura mater intact.
2. Identify the **facial nerve (VII)** and the **vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)** where they enter the internal acoustic meatus (Fig. 7.28). Do not follow them into the bone at this time.
3. The jugular foramen is inferior to the internal acoustic meatus (Fig. 7.27). Identify the rootlets of the **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)**, the **vagus nerve (X)**, and the **accessory nerve (XI)** where they enter the jugular foramen. During dissection it is not possible to tell where one nerve ends and the next begins, but the **cervical root of the accessory nerve** can be positively identified because it enters the posterior cranial fossa through the foramen magnum and crosses the inner surface of the occipital bone (Fig. 7.28).
4. Identify the **hypoglossal nerve (XII)** where it enters the **hypoglossal canal** (Fig. 7.28).
5. Review the course of the transverse sinus and sigmoid sinus. Observe that the sigmoid sinus ends at the jugular foramen posterior to the exit point of cranial nerves IX, X, and XI.
6. On the left (undissected) side of the cranial cavity, identify the cranial nerves in order from anterior to posterior (Fig. 7.28).

After you dissect . . .

Review the bones that form the floor of the cranial cavity. Read an account of the dural venous sinuses and review them in the cadaver. Summarize the cranial nerves, review the course of each cranial nerve and name the opening through with each passes to exit the cranial cavity. In the skull, review the openings (foramina and fissures) through which the cranial nerves pass. If the brain is still available, hold it beside the cranial cavity so that you can see its ventral surface, and review the cranial nerves and severed vessels on both specimens.

ORBIT

Before you dissect . . .

The orbit contains the eyeball and extraocular muscles. The eyeball is about 2.5 cm in diameter and occupies the anterior half of the orbit. The posterior half of the orbit contains fat, extraocular muscles, branches of cranial nerves, and blood vessels. Vessels and nerves pass through the orbit to reach the scalp and face.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The bones of the orbit will be studied. On the right side only, the floor of the anterior cranial fossa will be removed and the right orbit will be dissected from a superior approach. Cranial nerves III, IV, V_1, and VI will be followed through the superior orbital fissure into the orbit and the extraocular muscles will be identified. The left orbit will be dissected from an anterior approach. On the left side only, the features of the eyelid will be studied and then the eyeball will be removed. The attachments of the extraocular muscles will be studied.

SKELETON OF THE ORBIT

The bones of the orbit form a four-sided pyramid. The base of the pyramid is the orbital margin and the apex of the pyramid is the optic canal. Viewed from above, the medial walls of the two orbits are parallel to each other and about 2.5 cm apart. The lateral walls of the two orbits form a right angle to each other.

Refer to a skull and identify the bones that participate in the formation of the walls of the orbit (Fig. 7.30): **[G 640; N 2; R 46; C 502]**

- **Frontal bone**
  - **Supraorbital notch**
  - **Orbital surface**
  - **Lacrimal fossa**

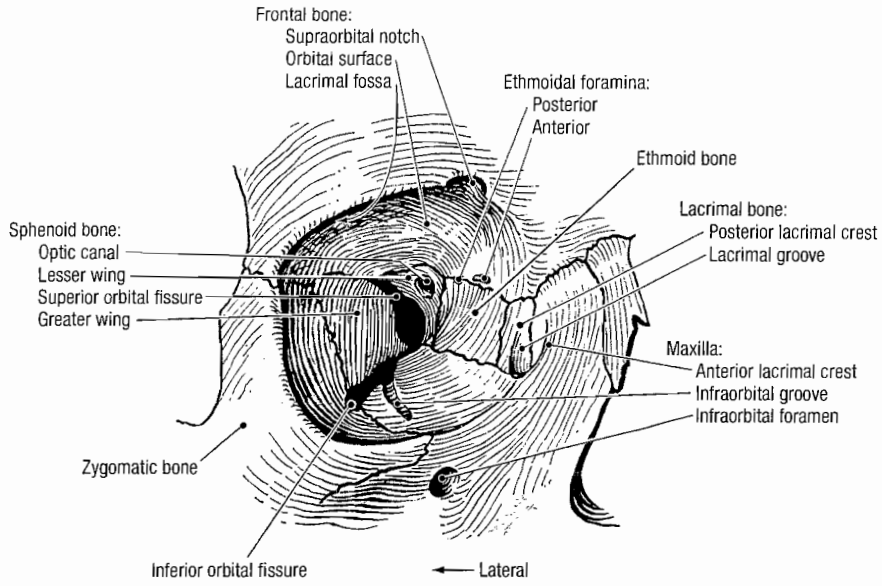


Figure 7.30. Walls of the orbit.

- **Ethmoid bone**
- **Lacrimal bone**
  - **Posterior lacrimal crest**
  - **Lacrimal groove**
- **Maxilla**
  - **Anterior lacrimal crest**
  - **Infraorbital groove**
  - **Infraorbital foramen**
- **Zygomatic bone**
- **Sphenoid bone**
  - **Optic canal**
  - **Lesser wing**
  - **Superior orbital fissure**
  - **Greater wing**

In the suture between the ethmoid and frontal bones, identify the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal foramina**.

Identify the **inferior orbital fissure**, which is a gap between the maxilla and the greater wing of the sphenoid bone. Note that the lateral wall of the orbit is stout and strong but the part of the ethmoid bone that forms the medial wall is paper-thin and for this reason it is called the **lamina papyracea**. Examine the topographic relations of the orbit and understand the following (Fig. 7.31):

- **Roof of the orbit** – is related to the anterior cranial fossa.
- **Floor of the orbit** – is related to the maxillary sinus.
- **Medial wall of the orbit** – is related to the ethmoidal cells.

The bones of the orbit are lined with periosteum called **periorbita**. At the optic canal and the superior orbital fissure, the periorbita is continuous with the dura mater of the middle cranial fossa.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF THE EYEBALL, EYELIDS, AND LACRIMAL APPARATUS

Use a mirror or your lab partner to inspect the living eye. Identify: **[G 640, 641; N 77; C 500]**

- **Eyelashes (cilia)**
- **Palpebral fissure (rima)** – the opening between the eyelids
- **Medial and lateral palpebral commissures** – where the upper and lower eyelids join
- **Medial and lateral angles (canthi)** – the medial and lateral corners of the eye
- **Sclera** – the whitish posterior 5/6 of the exterior coat of the eyeball
- **Cornea** – the transparent anterior 1/6 of the exterior coat of the eyeball
- **Iris** – the colored diaphragm seen through the cornea
- **Pupil** – the aperture in the center of the iris

In the medial angle of the eye, observe:

- **Lacrimal caruncle** – a pink fleshy bump
- **Lacrimal lake** – the area surrounding the lacrimal caruncle

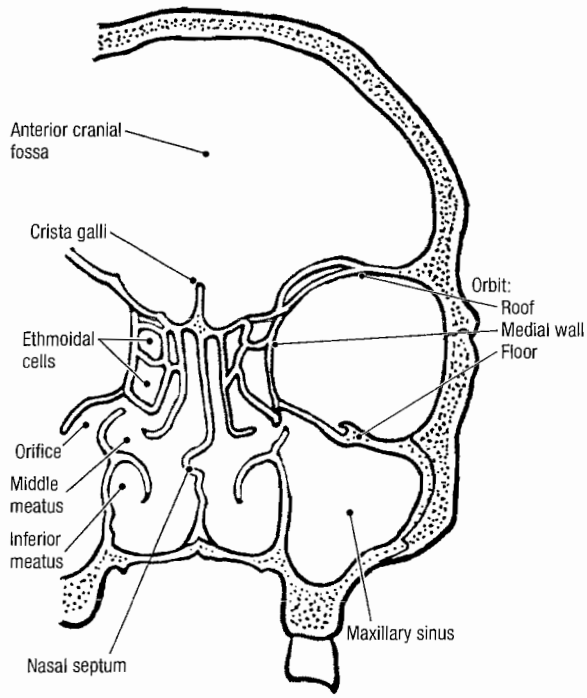


Figure 7.31. Coronal section of the skull to show the relationships of the orbit.

- **Lacrimal papilla** – a small bump on the medial end of each eyelid
- **Lacrimal puncta** – a small opening at the apex of each lacrimal papilla

Evert the lower lid slightly and observe:

- **Margin of the eyelid** – flat and thick
- **Eyelashes (cilia)** – arranged in two or three irregular rows

Use an illustration to study the following features and relate them to the living eye: **[G 645; N 77; R 130; C 509]**

- **Bulbar conjunctiva** – the membrane that lines the surface of the eyeball
- **Palpebral conjunctiva** – the membrane that lines the inner surface of the eyelid
- **Superior and inferior conjunctival fornices** – (L., *fornix*, arch) the regions where the bulbar conjunctiva becomes continuous with the palpebral conjunctiva
- **Conjunctival sac** – the potential space between the bulbar conjunctiva and the palpebral conjunctiva

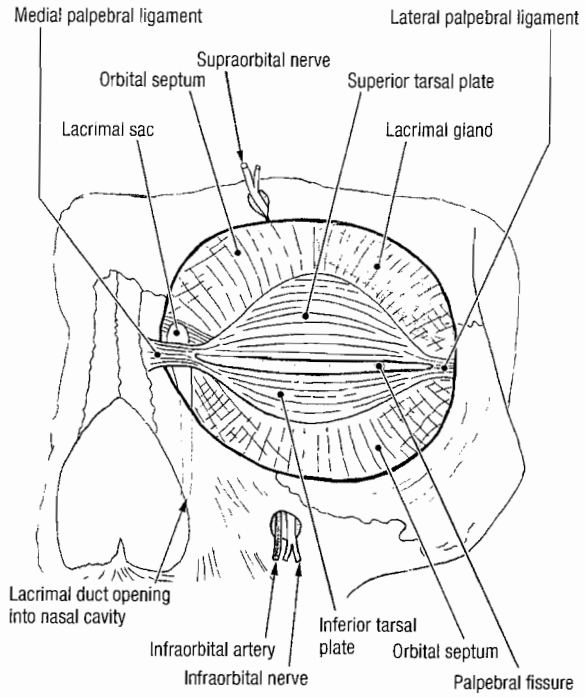


Figure 7.32. Orbital septum and tarsal plates.

Dissection Instructions

EYELID AND LACRIMAL APPARATUS [G 641, 645; N 77, 78; R 140; C 506, 507]

1. Dissect the eyelid and lacrimal gland only in the left eye.
2. Review the attachments of the **orbicularis oculi muscle**. Use a probe to raise the lateral part of the **orbital portion of the orbicularis oculi muscle** and reflect the muscle medially.
3. Raise the thin **palpebral portion of the orbicularis oculi muscle** off the underlying **tarsal plate** and reflect the muscle medially.
4. The **orbital septum** is a sheet of connective tissue that is attached to the periosteum at the margin of the orbit and to the tarsal plates (Figs. 7.32, 7.33). The orbital septum separates the superficial fascia of the face from the contents of the orbit.
5. Identify the **tarsal plates**, which give shape to the eyelids (Fig. 7.32). **Tarsal glands** are embedded in the posterior surface of each tarsal plate. Tarsal glands drain by small orifices that are located posterior to the eyelashes. Tarsal glands secrete an oily substance onto the margin of the eyelid that prevents the overflow of lacrimal fluid (tears).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Tarsal Glands

If the duct of a tarsal gland becomes obstructed, a chalazion (cyst) will develop. A chalazion will be located between the tarsal plate and the conjunctiva. In contrast, a hordeolum (stye) is the inflammation of a sebaceous gland associated with the follicle of an eyelash.

6. The **lacrimal gland** occupies the lacrimal fossa in the frontal bone (Fig. 7.32). To find the lacrimal gland, use a scalpel to cut through the orbital septum adjacent to the orbital margin in the superolateral quadrant of the left orbit. Pass a probe through the incision and free the lacrimal gland from the lacrimal fossa. Note that the lacrimal gland drains into the superior conjunctival fornix by 6 to 10 ducts (Fig. 7.34).
7. Use a skull to identify the **lacrimal groove** at the medial side of the orbital margin. Observe that the **anterior lacrimal crest** of the maxilla forms the anterior border of the lacrimal groove. The **medial palpebral ligament** is attached to the anterior lacrimal crest and

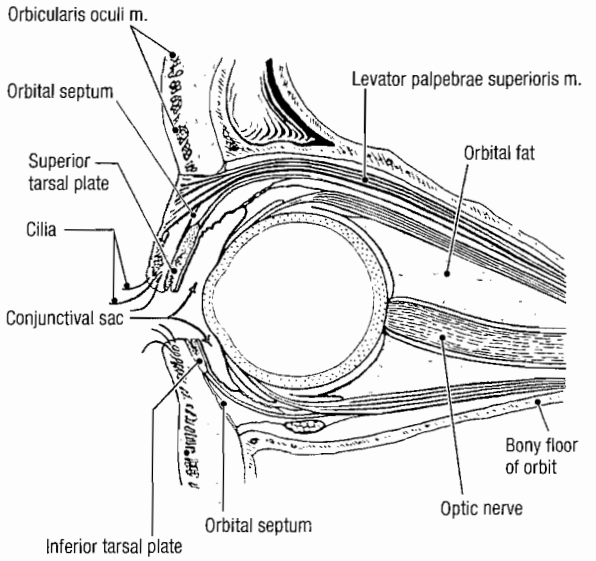


Figure 7.33. Parasagittal section through the orbit.

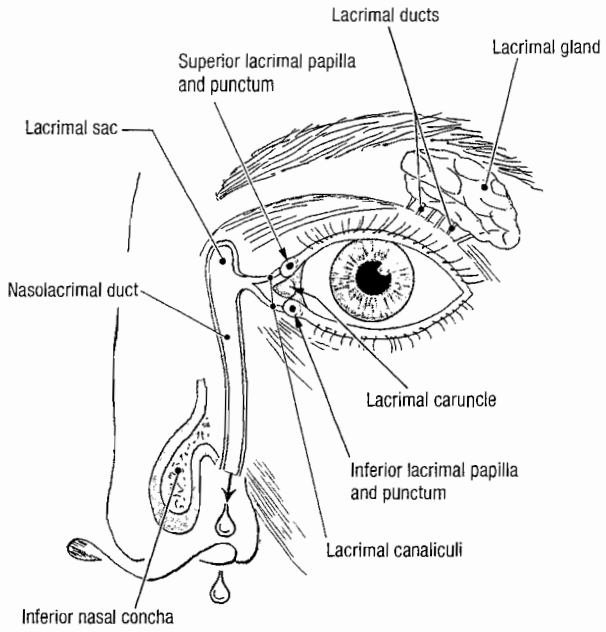


Figure 7.34. Parts of the lacrimal apparatus.

the **lacrimal sac** lies posterior to the medial palpebral ligament (Fig. 7.32).

8. Two **lacrimal canaliculi** drain lacrimal fluid from the medial angle of the eye into the lacrimal sac. The **nasolacrimal duct** extends inferiorly from the nasolacrimal sac and enters the inferior meatus of the nasal cavity (Fig. 7.34).
9. Lacrimal fluid flows from the lacrimal gland across the eyeball to the medial angle of the eye. During crying, excessive lacrimal fluid cannot be emptied through the lacrimal canaliculi and tears overflow the lower eyelids. Increased drainage of tears into the nasal cavity results in sniffling, which is characteristic of crying.

RIGHT ORBIT FROM THE SUPERIOR APPROACH [G 642; N 82; R 138; C 510]

1. Dissect only the right orbit from the superior approach. *Wear eye protection for all steps that require the use of bone cutters.*
2. In the floor of the anterior cranial fossa, use the handle of a chisel to tap the orbital part of the frontal bone until it cracks. Use bone cutters to pick out the bone fragments and enlarge the opening in the **roof of the orbit**. Remove the roof of the orbit as far anteriorly as the superior orbital margin.
3. The frontal bone contains the **frontal sinus** that may extend into the roof of the orbit. Medially, the **ethmoidal cells** may extend into the roof of the orbit. If either situation occurs in your cadaver you must remove the mucous membrane that lines the sinus and remove a second layer of thin bone to open the orbit.
4. Identify the membrane just inferior to the roof of the orbit. This is the **periorbita**, which lines the bones of the orbit.
5. Push a probe posteriorly between the roof of the orbit and the periorbita. The probe should pass inferior to the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone, through the superior orbital fissure, and into the middle cranial fossa. Use the probe to break the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone.
6. Use bone cutters to remove the fragments of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. Chip away the roof of the optic canal and remove the anterior clinoid process (Fig. 7.35).
7. Examine the periorbita and note that the frontal nerve may be visible through it. Use scissors to incise the periorbita from the apex of the orbit to the midpoint of the superior orbital margin. Use forceps to lift the periorbita off deeper structures and make a transverse incision through the periorbita, close to the superior orbital margin. Use a probe to tease open the flaps of periorbita and remove them.
8. The use of a fine probe and fine forceps is recommended from this point onward in the dissection.
9. Three nerves enter the apex of the orbit by passing superior to the extraocular muscles:
   - **Frontal nerve** (a branch of V_1) – courses from the apex of the orbit toward the superior orbital margin (Fig. 7.35). Trace the frontal nerve anteriorly and observe that it divides into the **supratrochlear nerve** and the **supraorbital nerve**.
   - **Lacrimal nerve** (a branch of V_1) – passes through the superior orbital fissure lateral to the frontal nerve and courses along the lateral wall of the orbit. The lacrimal nerve is much smaller than the frontal nerve.
   - **Trochlear nerve** – passes through the superior orbital fissure medial to the frontal nerve (Fig. 7.35). Follow the trochlear nerve to the superior border of the **superior oblique muscle**, which it innervates.

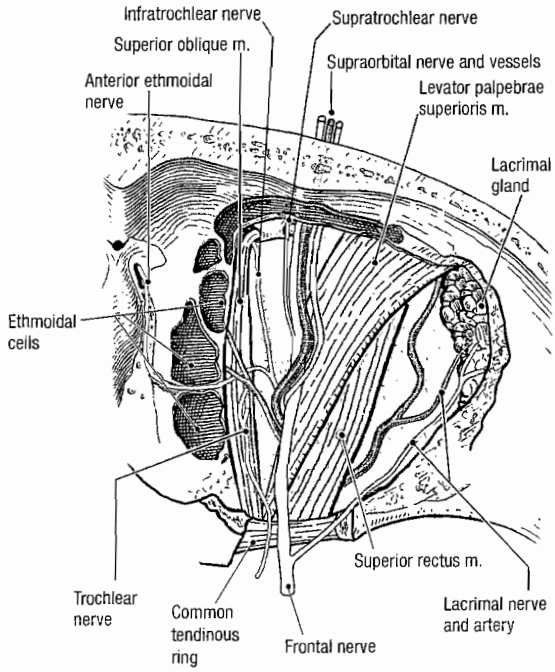


Figure 7.35. Right orbit in superior view.

10. While preserving the nerves, use forceps to pick out lobules of fat and expose the superior surface of the **levator palpebrae superioris muscle** (Figs. 7.33, 7.35). The levator palpebrae superioris muscle attaches to the upper eyelid, which it elevates.
11. Transect the levator palpebrae superioris muscle as far anteriorly as possible and reflect it posteriorly.
12. Identify the **superior rectus muscle** that lies immediately inferior to the levator palpebrae superioris muscle (Figs. 7.33, 7.35). Clean the superior rectus muscle and observe that it is attached to the eyeball by a thin, broad tendon.
13. Transect the superior rectus muscle close to the eyeball and reflect it posteriorly (Fig. 7.36). Note that a branch of the superior division of the **oculomotor nerve (III)** reaches the inferior surface of the superior rectus muscle. A second branch of the superior division passes around the medial side of the superior rectus muscle to innervate the levator palpebrae superioris muscle. **[G 642; N 82; R 139; C 512]**
14. On the medial side of the orbit, identify the **superior oblique muscle** and trace it anteriorly (Fig. 7.36). Observe that the tendon of the superior oblique muscle passes through the trochlea (L., *trochlea*, pulley), bends at an acute angle, and attaches to the posterolateral portion of the eyeball.
15. On the lateral side of the orbit, identify the **lateral rectus muscle** (Fig. 7.36). The lateral rectus muscle arises by two heads from the **common tendinous ring**. The common tendinous ring surrounds the optic canal and part of the superior orbital fissure, and is the proximal attachment of the four rectus muscles. The optic nerve (II), nasociliary nerve, oculomotor nerve (III), abducent nerve (IV), and ophthalmic vein pass through the common tendinous ring.
16. Use scissors to cut the common tendinous ring between the attachments of the superior rectus and lateral rectus muscles. All structures passing through the common tendinous ring are now exposed.
17. Identify the **abducent nerve (VI)**. The abducent nerve passes between the two heads of the lateral rectus muscle, turns laterally, and enters the medial surface of the lateral rectus muscle. Find the abducent nerve on the medial surface of the lateral rectus muscle near the apex of the orbit (Fig. 7.36).
18. Identify the **nasociliary nerve**, which is a branch of V_1 (Fig. 7.36). Trace the nasociliary nerve through the orbit and note that it is much smaller than the frontal nerve. The nasociliary nerve crosses superior to the optic nerve and gives off several **long ciliary nerves** to the posterior part of the eyeball.
19. Follow the nasociliary nerve toward the medial wall of the orbit. Use forceps to pick out the fat that fills the intervals between muscles, nerves, and vessels.
20. Identify the **anterior ethmoidal nerve**, which is a small branch of the nasociliary nerve that passes through the anterior ethmoidal foramen. The anterior ethmoidal nerve enters the cranial cavity, runs lateral to the cribriform plate, and passes through the ethmoid bone to reach the nasal cavity. The anterior ethmoidal nerve supplies part of the mucous membrane in the nasal cavity. Its terminal branch is the **external nasal nerve** that innervates the skin at the tip of the nose.
21. In the middle cranial fossa, identify the **oculomotor nerve** within the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. Follow the oculomotor nerve to the superior orbital fissure where it branches into two divisions:
    - **Superior division** – innervates the levator palpebrae superioris and the superior rectus muscles
    - **Inferior division** – innervates the medial rectus, inferior rectus, and inferior oblique muscles
22. The **ciliary ganglion** is a parasympathetic ganglion located between the optic nerve and the lateral rectus muscle. It is approximately 2 mm in diameter and is located about 1 cm anterior to the apex of the orbit (Fig. 7.36). Note that short ciliary nerves connect the ciliary ganglion to the posterior surface of the eyeball. Study the autonomic function of the ciliary ganglion.
23. Use an atlas illustration to study the course of the **superior ophthalmic vein** in the orbit. At the medial angle of the eye, the superior ophthalmic vein anastomoses with the angular vein, which is a tributary of the facial vein. **[G 646; N 81; C 475]**

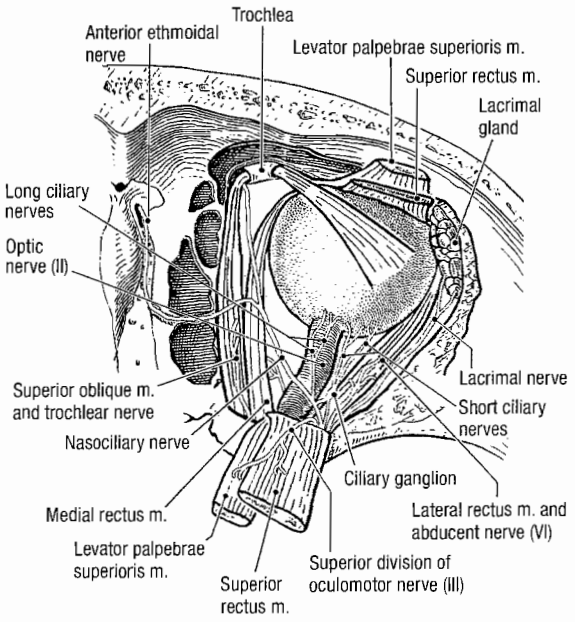


Figure 7.36. Deeper dissection of right orbit in superior view.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Ophthalmic Veins

Anastomoses between the angular vein and the superior and inferior ophthalmic veins are of clinical importance. Infections of the nasal cavity, upper lip, cheeks, and forehead may spread through the facial and angular veins into the ophthalmic veins and then into the cavernous sinus. Thrombosis of the cavernous sinus may result, leading to involvement of the abducent nerve and dysfunction of the lateral rectus muscle.

24. Identify the **optic nerve (II)** (Fig. 7.36). The optic "nerve" is actually a brain tract and it is surrounded by the three meningeal layers: dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater.
25. Identify the **ophthalmic artery** where it branches from the internal carotid artery (Fig. 7.37). In its course through the orbit, note that the ophthalmic artery courses superior to the optic nerve and reaches the medial wall of the orbit. Use a probe to gently tease out the posterior ciliary arteries that supply the eyeball.
26. The **medial rectus**, **inferior rectus** and **inferior oblique muscles** are not easily seen from the superior approach. They will be identified from the anterior approach.

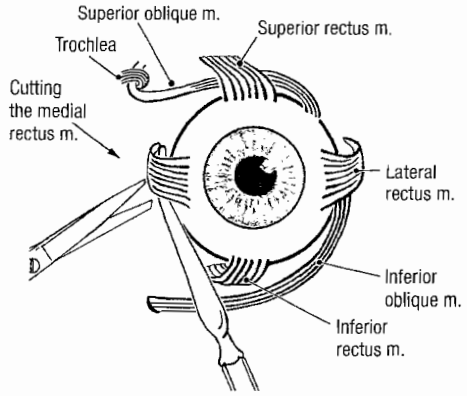


Figure 7.38. How to transect the muscles of the left eye.

LEFT ORBIT FROM THE ANTERIOR APPROACH [G 641; N 79; R 133; C 514]

1. Use a probe to explore the **conjunctival sac.** Verify that the conjunctiva is loosely attached to the sclera.
2. To facilitate the dissection, remove both eyelids and the orbital septum. Examine the orbit from the anterior view and note:
   - The **lacrimal gland** is located superolaterally
   - The **trochlea** is located superomedially
   - The attachment of the **inferior oblique muscle** is located inferomedially
3. Review the attachments of the extraocular muscles on the eyeball. The four rectus muscles attach to the sclera near the cornea (Fig. 7.38). The two oblique muscles attach to the sclera on the posterior half of the eyeball.
4. Use a probe to pick up the tendon of each rectus muscle and transect it with scissors (Fig. 7.38).
5. Adduct the eyeball (turn it medially) and pull it anteriorly. Insert scissors into the orbit on the lateral side of the eyeball and cut the optic nerve.
6. Pull the eyeball further anteriorly and transect the superior and inferior oblique tendons near the surface of the eyeball and remove the eyeball.
7. Study the orbit (Fig. 7.39). Use forceps to pick out lobules of fat from the posterior portion of the orbit. Find the nerve to the inferior oblique muscle and follow it posteriorly to the **inferior division of the oculomotor nerve (III). [G 646; N 79; R 134; C 517]**
8. Trace the four rectus muscles to their attachments on the **common tendinous ring.**
9. Identify the structures that pass through the common tendinous ring: **optic nerve (II) and central artery of the retina, superior and inferior divisions of the oculomotor nerve (III), abducent nerve (VI)**, and the **nasociliary nerve** (Fig. 7.39).
10. Examine the cut surface of the optic nerve and try to identify the central artery of the retina, which may be seen as a dark spot on the cut surface.
11. In most cases, the eyeball that is removed from the cadaver is poorly preserved. However, if the eyeball is in dissectible condition, use a new scalpel blade to cut it in half in the coronal plane. Remove the vitreous body.

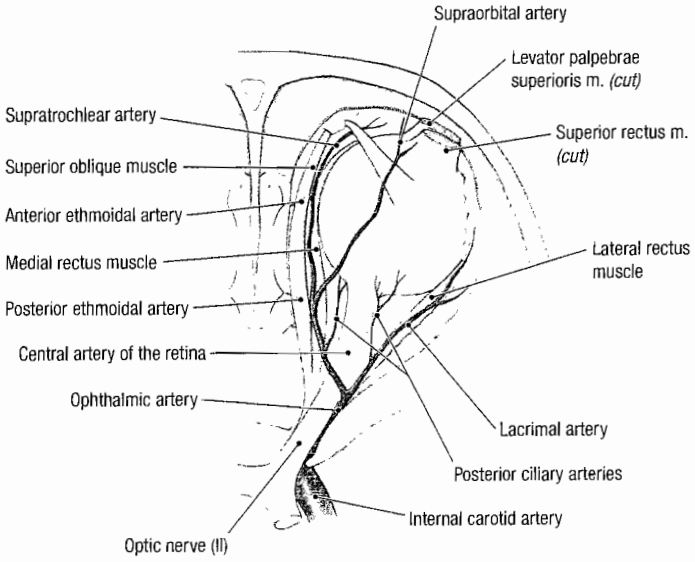


Figure 7.37. Branches of the ophthalmic artery in the right orbit.

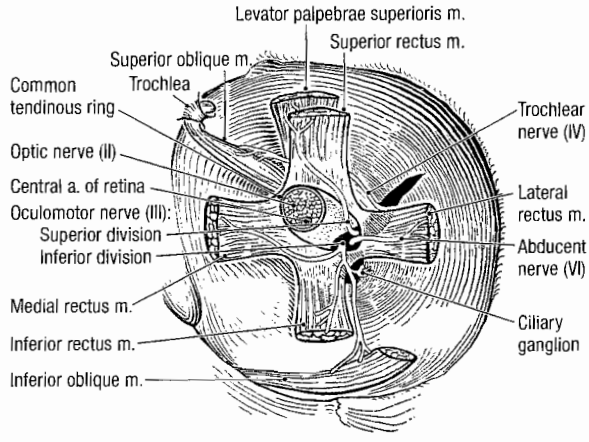


Figure 7.39. The left orbit in anterior view. The common tendinous ring and its relationship to the four rectus muscles and cranial nerves II, III, IV, and VI.

12. Note the following features of the eyeball: **[G 650; N 83; R 131; C 519]**
    - **Fibrous (outer) layer** – sclera (posterior 5/6) and cornea (anterior 1/6)
    - **Vascular (middle) layer** – choroid, ciliary body and iris
    - **Inner layer** – retina, partially detached in the cadaver
    - **Macula** – only seen in well preserved specimens
    - **Optic disc** – where the optic nerve and retinal vessels enter or leave
    - **Lens** – may be replaced by a prosthetic implant

After you dissect . . .

Use a skull to review the bones that form the margin of the orbit, the walls of the orbit and the openings at the apex of the orbit. Examine the middle cranial fossa and review the optic canal and superior orbital fissure. Use the dissected specimen to review the nerves that pass through the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus and superior orbital fissure to reach the apex of the orbit. Review the orbital course and function of each of these cranial nerves. Review the course of the internal carotid artery through the cavernous sinus and note its relationship to the optic nerve near the optic canal. Note the origin of the ophthalmic artery and its course through the optic canal. Review the course of the optic nerve through the optic canal to the eyeball. Review the attachments of each of the six extraocular muscles. Use the cadaver specimen to find each of the extraocular muscles. Use an illustration to review the movements of the eyeball and relate each movement to the extraocular muscles that are responsible. Review the ciliary ganglion and note the origin of its preganglionic parasympathetic axons and the course of its postganglionic axons to the eyeball. State the function of the muscles that are innervated by the ciliary ganglion.

POSTERIOR TRIANGLE OF THE NECK

Before you dissect . . .

Study a transverse section through the neck (Fig. 7.40). The posterior part of the neck contains the cervical vertebral column and the muscles that move it. The anterior part of the neck houses the cervical viscera. The cervical viscera include: **[G 723; N 31; R 152; C 446]**

- **Pharynx and esophagus** – the superior parts of the digestive tract
- **Larynx and trachea** – the superior parts of the respiratory tract
- **Thyroid gland and parathyroid glands**

The visceral part of the neck has the following boundaries:

- **Posterior** – the cervical vertebrae
- **Posterolateral** – the scalene muscles
- **Lateral** – the sternocleidomastoid muscle
- **Anterior** – the infrahyoid muscles

Large vessels and nerves lie lateral to the cervical viscera (Fig. 7.40). The **carotid artery** (**internal carotid artery** at more superior levels), **internal jugular vein**, and **vagus nerve** are contained within the **carotid sheath.**

For descriptive purposes the neck is divided into an anterior triangle and a posterior triangle (Fig. 7.41). The **boundaries of the posterior triangle** of the neck are:

- **Anterior** – the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle
- **Posterior** – the anterior border of the trapezius muscle
- **Inferior** – the middle 1/3 of the clavicle
- **Superficial (roof)** – investing layer of the deep cervical fascia
- **Deep (floor)** – muscles of the neck covered by prevertebral fascia

The order of dissection will be as follows: The skin will be removed from the anterior and lateral neck. The platysma muscle will be studied and reflected. The external jugular vein will be identified. Several cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus (great auricular nerve, lesser occipital nerve, transverse cervical nerve, and supraclavicular nerves) will be dissected. The accessory nerve (XI) will be identified and traced from the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the trapezius muscle.

Dissection Instructions

SKIN INCISIONS

1. The skin is thin on the neck. Be careful when removing it.
2. Refer to Figure 7.42 and make a skin incision from the mastoid process (E) to the medial end of the clavicle (F).
3. If the upper limb has not been dissected previously, make a second skin incision along the clavicle from its medial end to a point 3 cm lateral to the acromion.
4. Posterior to the first skin incision, reflect the skin as far as the anterior border of the trapezius muscle and detach it.
5. Anterior to the first incision, reflect the skin as far as the midline and detach it.

STRUCTURES IN THE POSTERIOR TRIANGLE [G 722; N 22; R 172; C 440]

1. Examine the **platysma muscle**, which is in the superficial fascia (Fig. 7.43). The platysma muscle covers the lower part of the posterior triangle. At its inferior end, the platysma muscle passes superficial to the clavicle and attaches to the superficial fascia of the deltoid and pectoral regions. Superiorly, the platysma muscle is attached to the mandible, skin of the cheek, angle of the mouth, and orbicularis oris muscle. It is innervated by the facial nerve.
2. Note that the supraclavicular nerves, the transverse cervical nerve and the external jugular vein are in contact with the deep surface of the platysma muscle. Preserve them in the next dissection step.
3. Use a probe to raise the posterior border of the platysma muscle. Use blunt dissection to free the platysma muscle from the deeper structures and re-

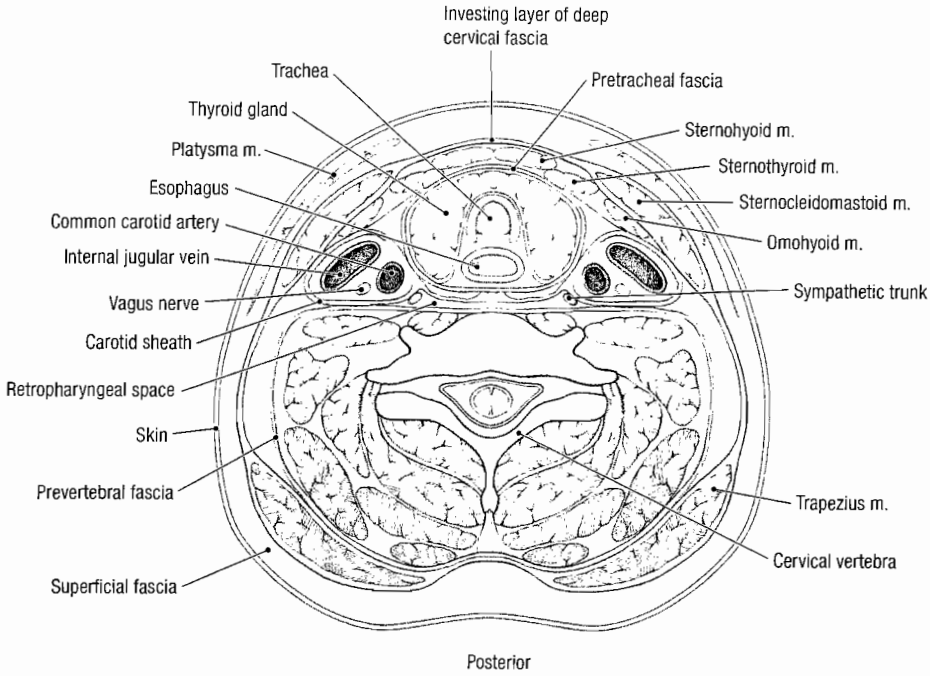


Figure 7.40. Transverse section through the neck.

flect it superiorly. Detach the platysma muscle from its superior attachments and place it in the tissue container.

4. Identify the **external jugular vein** (Fig. 7.44). The external jugular vein begins posterior to the angle of the mandible and crosses the superficial surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. About 3 cm superior to the clavicle, the external jugular vein pierces the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia (roof of the posterior triangle) to drain into the subclavian vein. Follow the external jugular vein until it passes through the investing layer of deep cervical fascia. **[G 730; N 27; R 174; C 441]**

5. The skin of the neck and posterior head is innervated by **cutaneous nerves** that are branches of the **cervical plexus** (Fig. 7.44). The cutaneous nerves enter the superficial fascia at the midpoint of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Identify:
   - **Lesser occipital nerve** – passes superiorly along the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The lesser occipital nerve supplies the scalp.
   - **Great auricular nerve** – crosses the superficial surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle parallel to the external jugular vein. The great auricular nerve supplies the skin of the lower part of the ear and an area of skin extending from the angle of the mandible to the mastoid process.
   - **Transverse cervical nerve** – passes transversely across the sternocleidomastoid muscle and neck. It supplies the skin of the anterior triangle of the neck.
   - **Supraclavicular nerves** – pass inferiorly to the region of the shoulder. Observe medial, intermediate, and lateral branches.

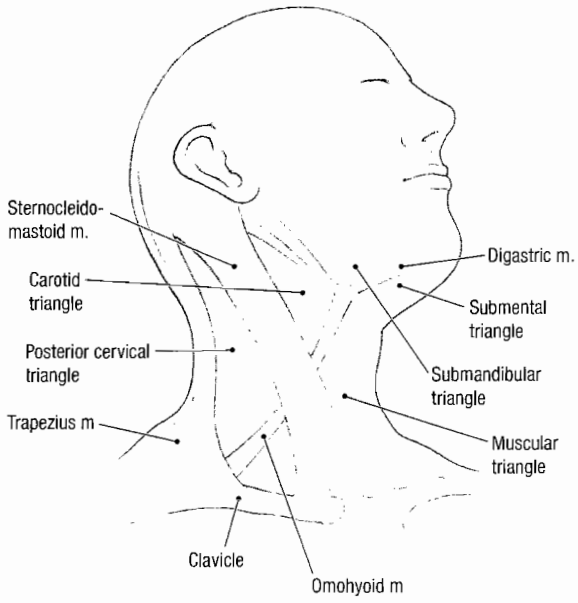


Figure 7.41. Boundaries of the cervical triangles.

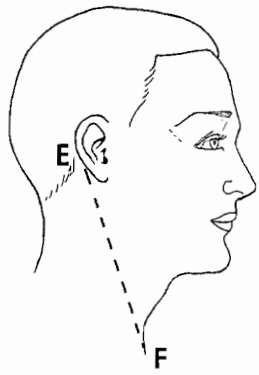


Figure 7.42. Skin incision.

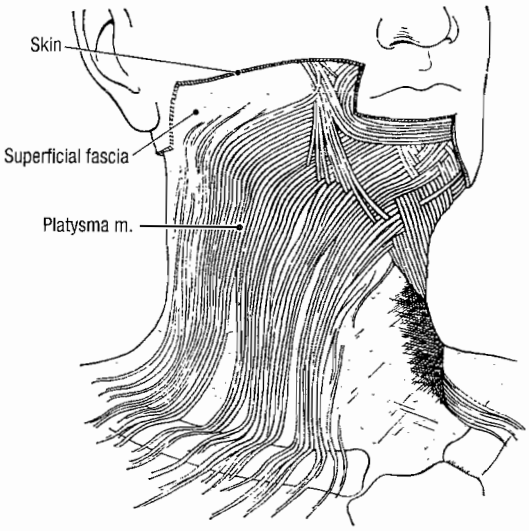


Figure 7.43. The platysma muscle.

6. The **accessory nerve (XI)** courses from slightly superior to the midpoint of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the anterior border of the trapezius muscle (Fig. 7.44). The accessory nerve lies deep to the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia. Use blunt dissection to free the accessory nerve from the surrounding connective tissue. Note that branches of spinal nerves C3 and C4 join the accessory nerve in the posterior cervical triangle. The accessory nerve innervates the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the trapezius muscle. If the back has been dissected, confirm that the accessory nerve may be found on the deep surface of the trapezius muscle.
7. The inferior portion of the posterior triangle will be dissected with the root of the neck.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Diaphragmatic Pain Referred to the Shoulder

The supraclavicular nerves and the phrenic nerve arise from spinal cord segments C3 and C4. Irritation of the diaphragmatic pleura or peritoneum produces pain that is carried by the phrenic nerve and referred to the area supplied by the supraclavicular nerves (shoulder and clavicular region).

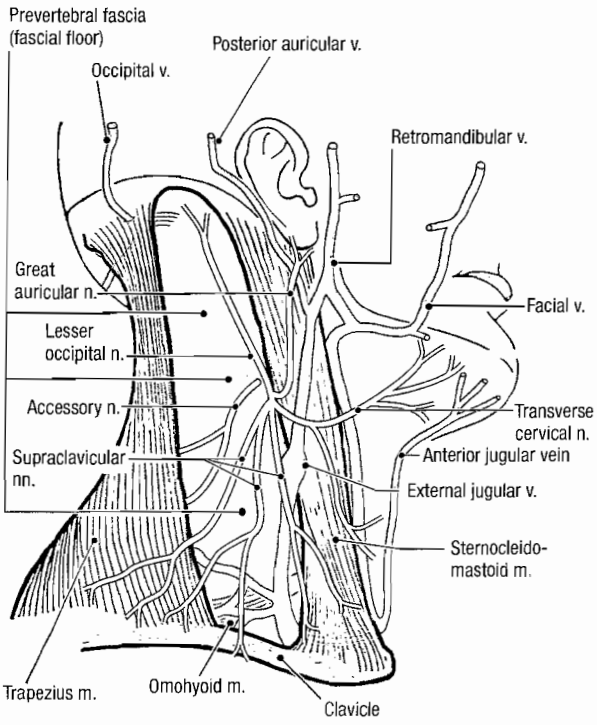


Figure 7.44. Posterior triangle of the neck. The external jugular vein lies superficial to the investing layer of deep cervical fascia.

After you dissect . . .

Use an illustration to review the relationship of the platysma muscle to the cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus. Note that the transverse cervical nerve crosses the neck deep to the platysma muscle but that its branches pass through the muscle to reach the skin of the anterior neck. Review the area of distribution of the other cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus. Review the course of the accessory nerve. Note that the accessory nerve is superficial in the neck where it is vulnerable to injury by laceration or blunt trauma. Review the course of the occipital artery at the apex of the posterior triangle.

ANTERIOR TRIANGLE OF THE NECK [G 739; N 24; R 173; C 447]

Before you dissect . . .

The boundaries of the **anterior triangle of the neck** are (Fig. 7.41):

- **Anterior** – the median line of the neck
- **Posterior** – the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle
- **Superior** – the inferior border of the mandible
- **Superficial (roof)** – investing layer of the deep cervical fascia
- **Deep (floor)** – larynx and pharynx

For descriptive purposes, the anterior triangle is divided by the digastric and omohyoid muscles into smaller triangles: **muscular**, **carotid**, **submandibular**, and **submental** (Fig. 7.41).

BONES AND CARTILAGES

Use an illustration to identify bony and cartilaginous landmarks that will be used as reference structures (Fig. 7.45): [G 740; N 25; R 173; C 447]

- **Hyoid bone** – at the angle between floor of the mouth and the superior end of the neck.
- **Thyrohyoid membrane** – stretching between the thyroid cartilage and hyoid bone.
- **Thyroid cartilage** – in the anterior midline of the neck.

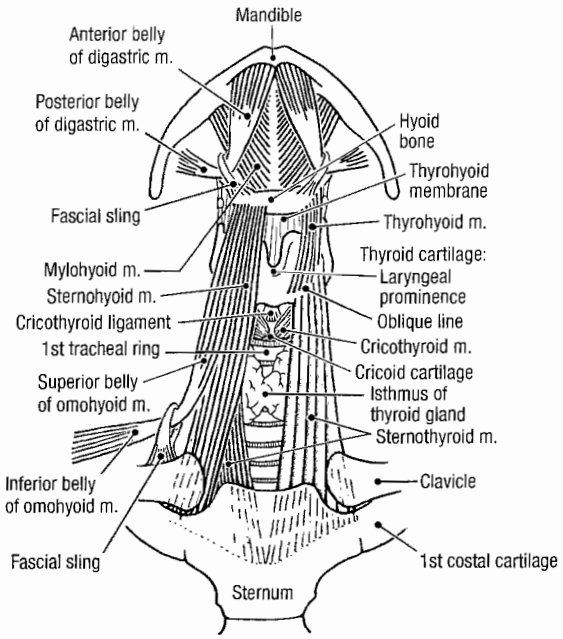


Figure 7.45. The muscular triangle of the neck.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The superficial veins of the anterior triangle will be studied. The contents of each subdivision of the anterior triangle will be dissected in the following order: muscular triangle, carotid triangle, submandibular triangle and submental triangle.

Dissection Instructions

SUPERFICIAL FASCIA [G 739; N 27; R 172; C 450]

1. The platysma muscle has been removed, revealing the **external jugular vein**. Follow the external jugular vein superiorly and observe that it is formed by the joining of the **retromandibular vein** and the **posterior auricular vein** (Fig. 7.44).
2. In the superficial fascia near the anterior midline, note the **anterior jugular vein** (Fig. 7.44). It courses inferiorly near the midline to the suprasternal region where it penetrates the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia. The anterior jugular vein passes deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle to join the external jugular vein in the root of the neck.

MUSCULAR TRIANGLE [G 739; N 25; R 173; C 447]

1. The contents of the **muscular triangle** of the neck are the infrahyoid muscles, the thyroid gland, and the parathyroid glands. The **boundaries of the muscular triangle** are (Fig. 7.41):
   - **Superolateral** – superior belly of the omohyoid muscle
   - **Inferolateral** – anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle
   - **Medial** – median plane of the neck
2. In the midline of the neck, use a probe to break through the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia and identify the **sternohyoid muscle** (Fig. 7.45). The inferior attachment of the sternohyoid muscle is the sternum and its superior attachment is the body of the hyoid bone. The sternohyoid muscle depresses the hyoid bone.
3. Lateral to the sternohyoid muscle, identify the **superior belly of the omohyoid muscle**. The inferior attachment of the omohyoid muscle is the superior border of the scapula near the suprascapular notch and its superior attachment is the inferior border of the hyoid bone. The omohyoid muscle depresses the hyoid bone.
4. Use blunt dissection to loosen the medial border of the sternohyoid muscle from the structures that lie deep to it. Use scissors to transect the sternohyoid muscle close to the hyoid bone and reflect the muscle inferiorly.
5. Use a probe to raise the medial border of the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle and loosen it from deeper structures. Use scissors to transect the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle close to the hyoid bone and reflect it inferiorly.
6. Identify the **sternothyroid muscle** (Fig. 7.45). The inferior attachment of the sternothyroid muscle is the sternum and its superior attachment is the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage. The sternothyroid muscle depresses the larynx.
7. Identify the **thyrohyoid muscle**. The inferior attachment of the thyrohyoid muscle is the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage and its superior attachment is the hyoid bone. The thyrohyoid muscle elevates the larynx.
8. The **ansa cervicalis** innervates the infrahyoid muscles. It will be identified later.
9. Gently retract the right and left sternothyroid muscles to widen the gap in the midline. Identify (Fig. 7.45): **[G 749; N 27; R 173; C 452]**
   - **Laryngeal prominence**
   - **Cricothyroid ligament**
   - **Cricoid cartilage**
   - **1st tracheal ring**
   - **Isthmus of the thyroid gland**

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Tracheotomy

Tracheotomy (tracheostomy) is the creation of an opening into the trachea. As an emergency operation, it must be rapidly performed in cases with sudden obstruction of the airway (for example: aspiration of a foreign body, edema of the larynx or paralysis of the vocal folds). The opening is made in the midline between the infrahyoid muscles of the neck.

CAROTID TRIANGLE [G 739; N 28; R 178; C 442]

1. The contents of the **carotid triangle** are the carotid arteries (common, internal, and external), the branches of the external carotid artery, the hypoglossal nerve, and branches of the vagus nerve (X). The **boundaries of the carotid triangle** are (Fig. 7.41):
   - **Inferomedial** – superior belly of the omohyoid muscle
   - **Inferolateral** – anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle
   - **Superior** – posterior belly of the digastric muscle
2. Transect the sternocleidomastoid muscle about 5 cm superior to its attachments to the sternum and clavicle. Do not damage the cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus that radiate from the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Free the superior portion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle from the surrounding fascia and reflect it superiorly.
3. Find the accessory nerve (XI) where it crosses the deep surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle near the base of the skull. Trace the accessory nerve superiorly as far as possible. Recall that the accessory nerve passes through the jugular foramen.
4. To allow better access to deeper structures cut the **facial vein** where it empties into the internal jugular vein.
5. Palpate the **tip of the greater horn of the hyoid bone** (Fig. 7.46). Find the hypoglossal nerve superior to the tip of the greater horn of the hyoid bone. Observe that a muscular branch of the occipital artery crosses superior to the hypoglossal nerve. The hypoglossal nerve carries axons of spinal nerve C1 that branch off as the **nerve to the thyrohyoid muscle.** **[G 739; N 28; R 178; C 443]**
6. Use blunt dissection to trace the **hypoglossal nerve** anteriorly. Verify that the hypoglossal nerve passes medial to the **posterior belly of the digastric muscle** (Fig. 7.46).
7. The **superior root of the ansa cervicalis** travels with the hypoglossal nerve (Fig. 7.47). The superior root of the ansa cervicalis is mainly composed of fibers from C1. The **inferior root of the ansa cervicalis** (C2, C3) passes around the carotid sheath to join the superior root. Thus, a loop (L., *ansa*, handle) is formed.
8. Clean the ansa cervicalis and trace its delicate branches to the lateral borders of the infrahyoid muscles (Fig. 7.47).
9. Use a probe to raise the posterior border of the thyrohyoid muscle and identify the **thyrohyoid membrane** that extends between the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid bone (Fig. 7.48). Find the **internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve** where it passes through the thyrohyoid membrane. The internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve supplies the mucosa of the larynx with sensory fibers.
10. Follow the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve proximally until it is joined by the **external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve.** The nerve proximal to the joining is the **superior laryngeal nerve** (Fig. 7.48).
11. Trace the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve distally and observe that it innervates the **cricothyroid muscle.** It also innervates part of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle.
12. While preserving the ansa cervicalis, use scissors to open the **carotid sheath.** The carotid sheath contains the common carotid artery, internal carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and vagus nerve (X).

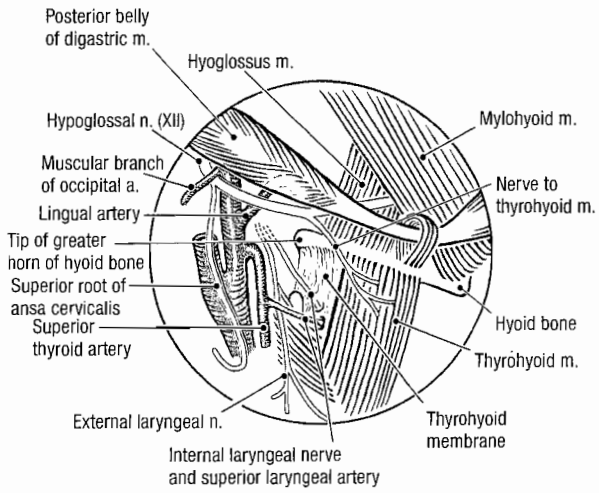


Figure 7.46. The carotid triangle of the neck. The tip of the greater horn of the hyoid bone is an important reference point.

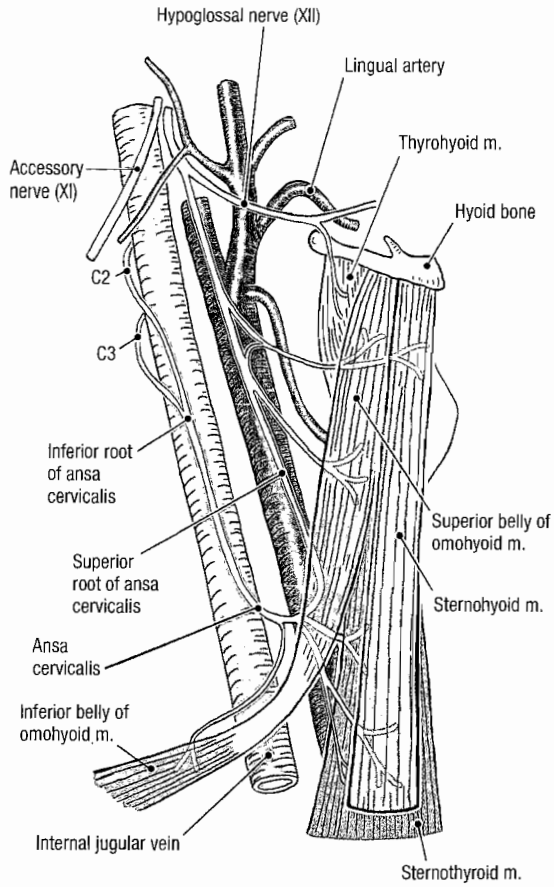


Figure 7.47. The ansa cervicalis.

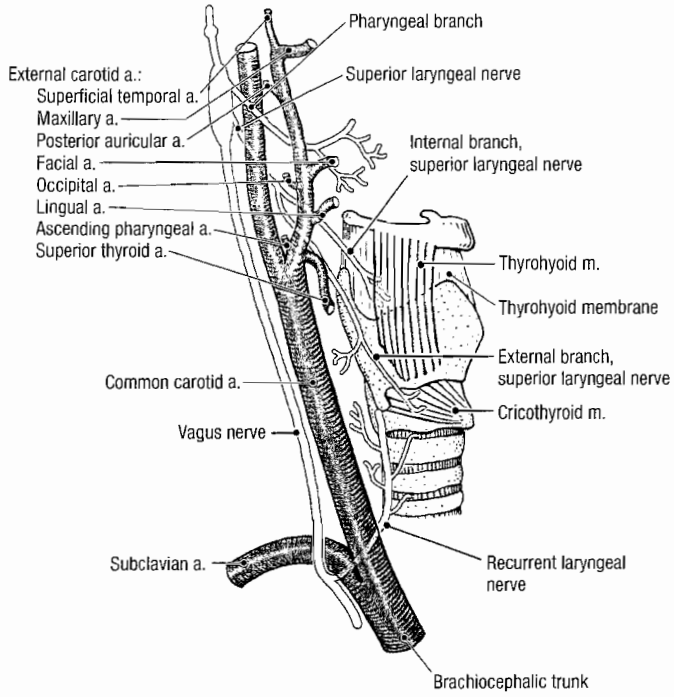


Figure 7.48. Branches of the external carotid artery and right vagus nerve (X) in the neck.

13. Observe that the **internal jugular vein** is located lateral to the common carotid or internal carotid artery in the carotid sheath. Use an illustration to study its largest tributaries: **common facial vein, superior thyroid vein**, and **middle thyroid vein**. Use blunt dissection to separate the internal jugular vein from the common or internal carotid artery. To clear the dissection field, remove the tributaries of the internal jugular vein.
14. At the level of the superior horn of the thyroid cartilage, find the origin of the **external carotid artery** (Fig. 7.48). Use blunt dissection to follow the external carotid artery superiorly until it passes on the medial side of (deep to) the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. **[G 741; N 30; R 179; C 443]**
15. The external carotid artery has six branches in the carotid triangle (Fig. 7.48). Each branch has a companion vein that may be removed to clear the dissection field. Identify:
    - **Ascending pharyngeal artery** – the first branch to arise from the external carotid artery. It branches from the medial surface near the carotid bifurcation. To find the ascending pharyngeal artery, insert a probe medial to the external carotid artery and slide the probe inferiorly until it is stopped by the ascending pharyngeal artery.
    - **Superior thyroid artery** – arises from the anterior surface of the external carotid artery inferior to the greater horn of the hyoid bone. The superior thyroid artery descends to the superior pole of the lobe of the thyroid gland. The **superior laryngeal artery** is a branch of the superior thyroid artery, which pierces the thyrohyoid membrane together with the internal laryngeal nerve.
    - **Lingual artery** – arises from the anterior surface of the external carotid artery at the level of the greater horn of the hyoid bone (Fig. 7.48). It passes deeply into the muscles of the tongue. Do not follow it at this time.
    - **Facial artery** – arises from the anterior surface of the external carotid artery immediately superior to the lingual artery (Fig. 7.48). The facial artery courses deep to the submandibular gland before appearing on the face. Do not follow it at this time. In 20% of cases, the lingual and facial arteries arise from a common trunk.
    - **Occipital artery** – arises from the posterior surface of the external carotid artery and supplies the scalp (Fig. 7.48).
    - **Posterior auricular artery** – arises from the posterior surface of the external carotid artery and passes posterior to the ear to supply the scalp.
16. Clean the **bifurcation of the common carotid artery**. Observe the **carotid sinus**, a dilation of the origin of the internal carotid artery. The wall of the carotid sinus contains pressoreceptors that monitor blood pressure. The carotid sinus is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX).
17. The **carotid body** is a small mass of tissue located on the medial aspect of the carotid bifurcation. The carotid body monitors changes in oxygen and carbon dioxide concentration of the blood. The carotid body is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX).
18. Identify the **internal carotid artery** and note that it has no branches in the neck.
19. Identify the **vagus nerve (X)** within the carotid sheath where it lies between and posterior to the vessels (Fig. 7.48). To see the vagus nerve, retract the internal jugular vein laterally and the common carotid artery medially.

SUBMANDIBULAR TRIANGLE [G 739; N 28; R 179; C 461]

1. The contents of the **submandibular triangle** are the submandibular gland, facial artery, facial vein, stylohyoid muscle, hypoglossal nerve (XII), and lymph nodes. The **boundaries of the submandibular triangle** are (Fig. 7.41):
    - **Superior** – inferior border of the mandible
    - **Anteroinferior** – anterior belly of the digastric muscle
    - **Posteroinferior** – posterior belly of the digastric muscle
    - **Floor** – mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles
    - **Roof** – investing layer of deep cervical fascia
2. Refer to a skull. On the temporal bone, identify the **mastoid process** and the **styloid process**.
3. Examine the **inner aspect of the mandible** and identify: **[G 655; N 13; R 55; C 543]**
    - **Digastric fossa**
    - **Mylohyoid line**
    - **Submandibular fossa**
    - **Mylohyoid groove**

4. On the cadaver, identify the submandibular gland and use a probe to define its borders. Note that a portion of the gland extends deep to the mylohyoid muscle.
5. Use blunt dissection to separate the facial artery and vein from the submandibular gland. Note that the facial vein passes superficial to the submandibular gland and the facial artery courses deep to the gland.
6. Preserve the facial vessels and remove the superficial part of the submandibular gland. Do not disturb the deep part of the gland.
7. Identify the **anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle.** The anterior attachment of the anterior belly is the digastric fossa of the mandible and it is innervated by the mylohyoid nerve (a branch of V_3). The posterior attachment of the posterior belly is the mastoid process of the temporal bone and it is innervated by the facial nerve (VII). The two bellies attach to each other by an **intermediate tendon**. The intermediate tendon is attached to the body and the greater horn of the hyoid bone by a fibrous sling. The digastric muscle elevates the hyoid bone and depresses the mandible.
8. Identify the **tendon of the stylohyoid muscle**, which attaches to the body of the hyoid bone by passing on either side of the intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle. The stylohyoid muscle is innervated by the facial nerve and it elevates the hyoid bone.
9. Use a probe to follow the **hypoglossal nerve (XII)** into the submandibular triangle. Observe that the nerve passes deep to the **mylohyoid muscle** (Fig. 7.46).

SUBMENTAL TRIANGLE [G 748; N 27; R 172; C 460]

1. The contents of the **submental triangle** are the submental lymph nodes. The submental triangle is an unpaired triangle that crosses the midline. The **boundaries of the submental triangle** are (Fig. 7.41):
   - **Right and left** – anterior bellies of the right and left digastric muscles
   - **Inferior** – hyoid bone
   - **Floor** – mylohyoid muscle
   - **Roof** – investing layer of the deep cervical fascia
2. Use a probe to clean the superficial fascia from the surface of the right and left mylohyoid muscles. Each mylohyoid muscle has a proximal attachment on the mylohyoid line of the mandible and distal attachments on the hyoid bone and the mylohyoid raphe. The mylohyoid muscle is innervated by the mylohyoid nerve and it supports the floor of the oral cavity.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the infrahyoid muscles in their normal anatomical positions. Review the cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus. Review the attachments and actions of the infrahyoid muscles. Review the ansa cervicalis. Use the dissected specimen to review the positions of the common carotid and internal carotid arteries, internal jugular vein, and vagus nerve within the carotid sheath. Follow each branch of the external carotid artery through the regions dissected, noting their relationships to muscles, nerves, and glands. Trace the branches of the superior laryngeal nerve. Review the course of the hypoglossal nerve. Note the relationship of the superior laryngeal nerve and the hypoglossal nerve to the internal and external carotid arteries.

THYROID AND PARATHYROID GLANDS [G 757; N 70, 72; R 180; C 451]

Before you dissect . . .

The cervical viscera include the pharynx, esophagus, larynx, trachea, thyroid gland, and parathyroid glands. The thyroid gland and parathyroid glands lie between the infrahyoid muscles and the larynx and trachea, and will be dissected now. The other cervical viscera will be dissected later.

Dissection Instructions

1. Once again, reflect the sternocleidomastoid and sternohyoid muscles.
2. Use a probe to loosen the sternothyroid muscle from deeper structures. Use scissors to transect the sternothyroid muscle near the sternum and reflect it superiorly.
3. Observe the **thyroid gland**. The thyroid gland is located at vertebral levels C5-T1. Laterally, the thyroid gland is in contact with the carotid sheath (Fig. 7.49B).
4. Identify the **right lobe** and **left lobe** of the **thyroid gland**. The two lobes are connected by the **isthmus**, which crosses the anterior surface of tracheal rings 2 and 3 (Fig. 7.49A).
5. Frequently, the thyroid gland has a **pyramidal lobe** that extends superiorly from the isthmus. The pyramidal lobe is a remnant of development that shows the route of descent of the thyroid gland.
6. Identify the **superior thyroid artery** and recall that it is a branch of the external carotid artery. The inferior thyroid artery will be dissected later.
7. The **superior and middle thyroid veins** are tributary to the internal jugular vein. The **right and left inferior thyroid veins** descend into the thorax on the anterior surface of the trachea. The right and left inferior thyroid veins drain into the right and left brachiocephalic veins, respectively.
8. Use scissors to cut the isthmus of the thyroid gland. Use blunt dissection to detach the capsule of the thyroid gland from the 1st tracheal ring. Spread the lobes widely apart.
9. On both sides of the cadaver, use blunt dissection to display the **recurrent laryngeal nerve** that ascends immediately posterior to the thyroid gland in the groove between the trachea and esophagus. Note the close relationship of the recurrent laryngeal nerve to the thyroid gland.

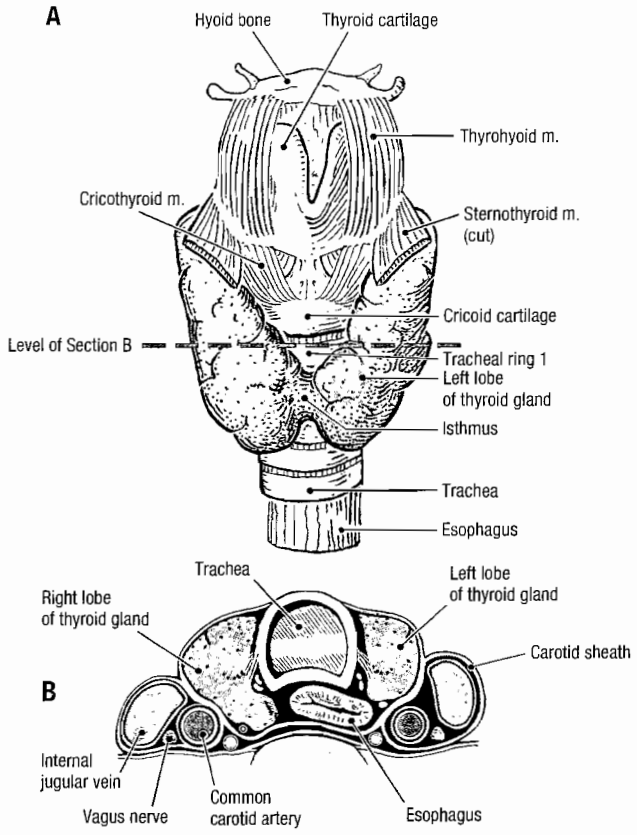


Figure 7.49. The relationships of the thyroid gland. **A.** Anterior view. Dashed line indicates the level of section. **B.** Transverse section.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Recurrent Laryngeal Nerve

If a recurrent laryngeal nerve is injured by a thyroid tumor or during thyroidectomy (removal of the thyroid gland), paralysis of the laryngeal muscles will occur on the affected side. The result is hoarseness of the voice.

10. Cut all blood vessels leading to or from the left lobe of the thyroid gland. Use a probe to free the left lobe from surrounding connective tissue and remove it.
11. Examine the posterior aspect of the left lobe of the thyroid gland and attempt to identify the **parathyroid glands.** The parathyroid glands are about 5 mm in diameter and may be darker in color than the thyroid gland. Usually, there are two parathyroid glands on each side. However, the number may vary from 1 to 3.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Parathyroid Glands

The parathyroid glands play a vital role in the regulation of calcium metabolism. During thyroidectomy, these small endocrine glands are in danger of being damaged or removed. To maintain proper serum calcium levels, at least one parathyroid gland must be retained during surgery.

After you dissect . . .

Review the relationship of the thyroid gland to the infrahyoid muscles, carotid sheaths, larynx and trachea. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the blood supply and venous drainage of the thyroid gland. Note that there are only two thyroid arteries (superior and inferior) but there are three thyroid veins (superior, middle and inferior). Review the relationship of the parathyroid glands to the thyroid gland. Use an embryology textbook to review the origin and migration of the thyroid and parathyroid glands during development.

ROOT OF THE NECK [G 756; N 29; R 180; C 444]

Before you dissect . . .

The **root (base) of the neck** is the junction between the thorax and the neck. The root of the neck is an important area because it lies superior to the **superior thoracic aperture**. All structures that pass between the head and thorax or the upper limb and thorax must pass through the root of the neck. The **boundaries of the root of the neck** are:

- **Anterior** – the manubrium of the sternum
- **Lateral** – the first pair of ribs
- **Posterior** – the body of vertebra T1

The order of dissection will be as follows: The anterior thoracic wall will be removed. The branches of the subclavian artery will be dissected. The course of the vagus and phrenic nerves will be studied. The muscles that form the floor of the posterior cervical triangle will be studied. Some of these structures will be followed superiorly or inferiorly beyond the boundaries of the root of the neck.

Dissection Instructions

1. The clavicle has been cut at its midlength during dissection of the thorax.
2. Reflect the sternocleidomastoid muscle, sternohyoid muscle, and sternothyroid muscle.
3. Use scissors to cut the fascial sling that binds the omohyoid muscle to the clavicle. Use blunt dissection to free the distal portion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle from structures that lie deep to it. Preserve the anterior jugular vein.
4. On each side, cut the internal thoracic artery close to the subclavian artery. Remove the anterior thoracic wall.
5. Clean the **omohyoid muscle**. Note that its inferior belly and superior belly are joined by an **intermediate tendon**. Review its attachments and action.
6. Follow the **external jugular vein** through the investing layer of deep cervical fascia. It is a tributary of the subclavian vein. To expose the blood vessels in the root of the neck, remove the investing layer of deep cervical fascia that forms the roof of the lower part of the posterior cervical triangle.
7. Identify the **subclavian vein** (Fig. 7.50). Use blunt dissection to loosen the subclavian vein from struc-

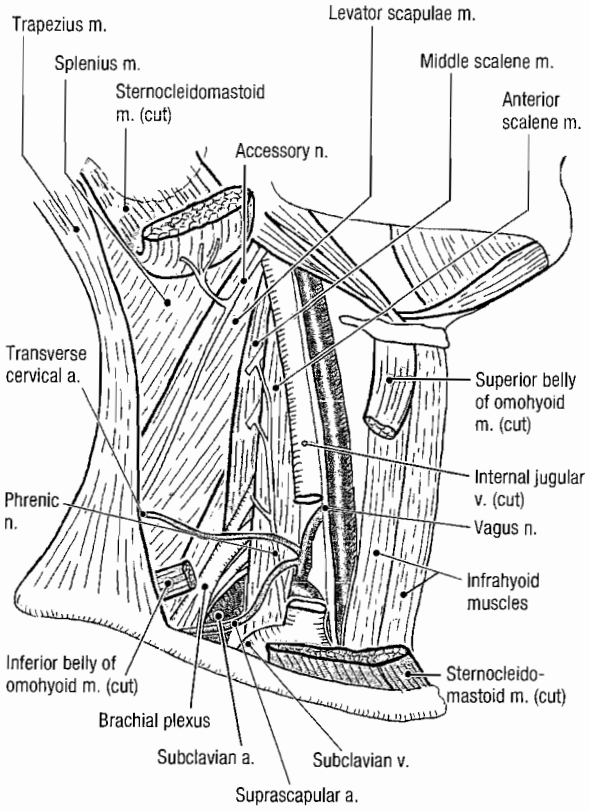


Figure 7.50. The root of the neck.

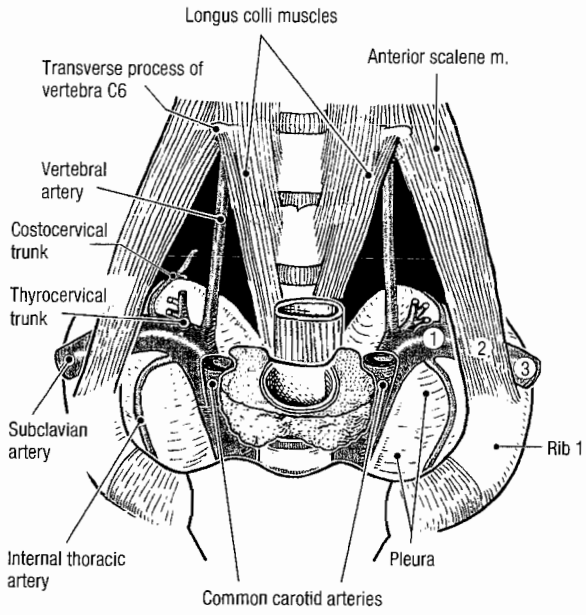


Figure 7.51. Subclavian artery.

tures that lie deep to it. The subclavian vein receives tributaries that correspond to the branches of the subclavian artery. To clear the dissection field, remove the tributaries of the subclavian vein.

8. Follow the subclavian vein proximally to the point where it is joined by the **internal jugular vein** to form the **brachiocephalic vein**.
9. Identify the **subclavian artery**. Observe that the right subclavian artery is a branch of the brachiocephalic trunk and the left subclavian artery is a branch of the aortic arch. **[G 760; N 29; R 168, 180; C 459]**
10. The subclavian artery has three parts that are defined by the presence of the anterior scalene muscle (Fig. 7.51):
    - **First part** – from its origin to the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle
    - **Second part** – posterior to the anterior scalene muscle
    - **Third part** – between the lateral border of the anterior scalene muscle and the lateral border of the first rib
11. The **first part of the subclavian artery** has three branches:
    - **Vertebral artery** – courses superiorly between the anterior scalene muscle and the longus colli muscle (Fig. 7.51). Trace the vertebral artery superiorly until it passes deeply to enter the transverse foramen of vertebra C6.
    - **Internal thoracic artery** – arises from the anteroinferior surface of the subclavian artery and passes inferiorly to supply the anterior thoracic wall (Fig. 7.51).
    - **Thyrocervical trunk** – arises from the anterosuperior surface of the subclavian artery (Fig. 7.51). The thyrocervical trunk has three branches:
      Transverse cervical artery – crosses the root of the neck about 2 to 3 cm superior to the clavicle and deep to the omohyoid muscle (Fig. 7.52). It supplies the trapezius muscle.
      Suprascapular artery – passes laterally and posteriorly to the region of the suprascapular notch (Fig. 7.52). It passes superior to the transverse scapular ligament and supplies the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles.
      Inferior thyroid artery – passes medially toward the thyroid gland. Trace the inferior thyroid artery toward the thyroid gland and note that it passes posterior to the **cervical sympathetic trunk**. The **ascending cervical artery** is a branch of the inferior thyroid artery.
12. The **second part of the subclavian artery** has one branch, the **costocervical trunk** (Fig. 7.51). The costocervical trunk arises from the posterior aspect of the second part of the subclavian artery and passes posteriorly, making it difficult to find. The costocervical trunk divides into the **deep cervical artery** and the **supreme intercostal artery**. The supreme intercostal artery gives rise to posterior intercostal arteries 1 and 2.
13. The **third part of the subclavian artery** has one branch, the **dorsal scapular artery**. The dorsal scapular artery passes between the superior and middle trunks of the brachial plexus to supply the muscles of

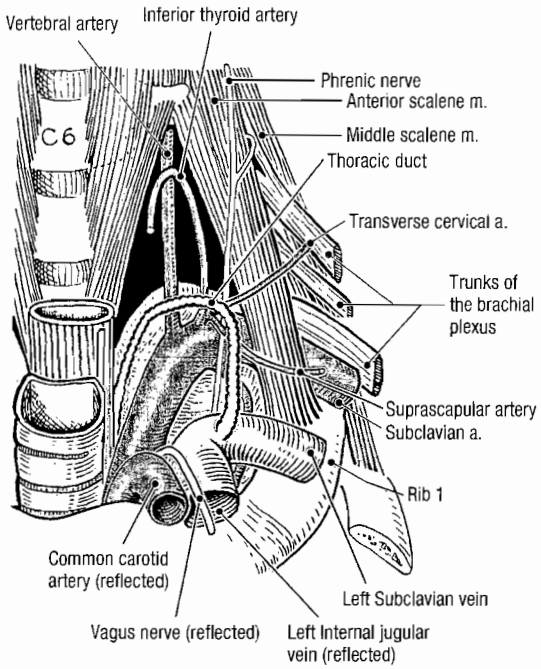


Figure 7.52. Termination of the thoracic duct.

the scapular region. In about 30% of cases the dorsal scapular artery arises from the transverse cervical artery instead of from the subclavian artery.

14. Find the **thoracic duct**, which ascends from the thorax into the neck. The thoracic duct is posterior to the esophagus at the level of the superior thoracic aperture, then arches anteriorly and to the left to join the venous system near the junction of the **left subclavian vein** and the **left internal jugular vein** (Fig. 7.52). The thoracic duct is usually a single structure, which has the same diameter as a small vein, but it may be represented by several smaller ducts. **[G 758; N 202; R 178; C 156]**
15. On the right side of the neck, several small lymphatic vessels join with lymph vessels from the right upper limb and right side of the thorax to form the **right lymphatic duct**, which drains into the junction of the right subclavian and right internal jugular veins.
16. On both sides, find the **vagus nerve** in the carotid sheath and follow it into the thorax. Note that the vagus nerve passes posterior to the root of the lung. **[G 756; N 28; R 180; C 445]**
17. The right vagus nerve passes anterior to the subclavian artery where it gives off the **right recurrent laryngeal nerve**. The **left recurrent laryngeal nerve** is given off as the left vagus nerve passes the aortic arch.
18. Follow the right and left recurrent laryngeal nerves superiorly along the lateral surface of the trachea and esophagus. Trace them as far as the first tracheal ring. Do not follow them into the larynx at this time.
19. Verify that the **phrenic nerve** crosses the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle (Fig. 7.52). Follow the phrenic nerve into the thorax and confirm that it passes anterior to the root of the lung.
20. Identify the cervical portion of the **sympathetic trunk**. Note that the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion is located in the root of the neck. Verify that the cervical sympathetic trunk is continuous with the thoracic sympathetic trunk.
21. Examine the muscles that form the floor of the posterior cervical triangle. Identify the **splenius capitis**, **levator scapulae**, and the **anterior**, **middle**, and **posterior scalene muscles**. **[G 758; N 29; R 181; C 452]**
22. Use blunt dissection to define the borders of the **anterior scalene** and **middle scalene muscles**. The anterior and middle scalene muscles attach to the first rib. The first rib and the adjacent borders of the anterior and middle scalene muscles form the boundaries of the **interscalene triangle**. Observe (Fig. 7.52):
    - The **subclavian artery** and the **roots of the brachial plexus** pass through the interscalene triangle (posterior to the anterior scalene muscle).
    - The **subclavian vein**, **transverse cervical artery**, and **suprascapular artery** cross the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle.
    - The **phrenic nerve** descends vertically across the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle.
23. Use blunt dissection to clean the **roots of the brachial plexus** at the level of the interscalene triangle. Identify the parts of the supraclavicular portion of the brachial plexus: **roots**, **trunks**, and **divisions**.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Interscalene Triangle

The **interscalene triangle** becomes clinically significant when anatomical variations (additional muscular slips, an accessory cervical rib, or exostosis on the 1st rib) narrow the interval. As a result, the subclavian artery and/or roots of the brachial plexus may be compressed, resulting in ischemia and nerve dysfunction in the upper limb.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the anterior thoracic wall in its correct anatomical position. Replace the infrahyoid muscles and sternocleidomastoid muscle in their correct anatomical positions. Review the boundaries of the posterior cervical triangle. Review the attachments of the infrahyoid muscles. Review the distribution of the cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus. Remove the anterior thoracic wall. Review the origin and course of the brachiocephalic artery, left common carotid artery, and left subclavian artery in the superior mediastinum. Review the three parts and the branches of the subclavian artery. Review the distribution of the transverse cervical, suprascapular, and dorsal scapular arteries to the posterior thoracoappendicular and scapulohumeral muscles. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the course of the vertebral artery from its origin to the posterior cranial fossa.

PAROTID REGION

Before you dissect . . .

The parotid region (parotid bed) is the area occupied by the parotid gland and the vessels and nerves that pass through it. The parotid gland develops as an evagination of the oral mucosa and it occupies all available space around the ramus of the mandible. Therefore, the parotid gland is in close contact with vessels, muscles, bones, and ligaments in the region. The superficial portion of the parotid gland was removed to expose the branches of the facial nerve. The goal of this dissection is to remove the remainder of the parotid gland piece-by-piece, preserving the nerves and vessels that pass through it.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The branches of the facial nerve will be reviewed and then followed posteriorly toward the stylomastoid foramen. Parotid tissue will be removed during this process. The facial nerve will be transected near the lobe of the ear and reflected anteriorly to preserve its branching pattern. The retromandibular vein will be followed superiorly through the parotid gland as more parotid tissue is removed. The external carotid artery will then be followed superiorly as additional parotid tissue is removed.

SKELETON OF THE PAROTID REGION

Refer to a skull and identify (Fig. 7.53):

- **Temporal bone [G 654; N 4; R 25; C 481]**
  - **Mandibular fossa**
  - **External acoustic meatus**
  - **Styloid process**
  - **Stylomastoid foramen**
  - **Mastoid process**
- **Mandible [G 654; N 13; R 55; C 543]**
  - **Head**
  - **Neck**
  - **Angle**
  - **Ramus**

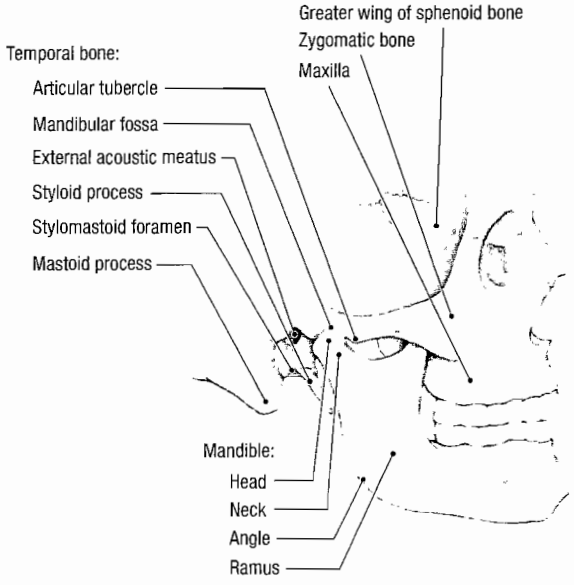


Figure 7.53. Skeleton of the parotid region in lateral view.

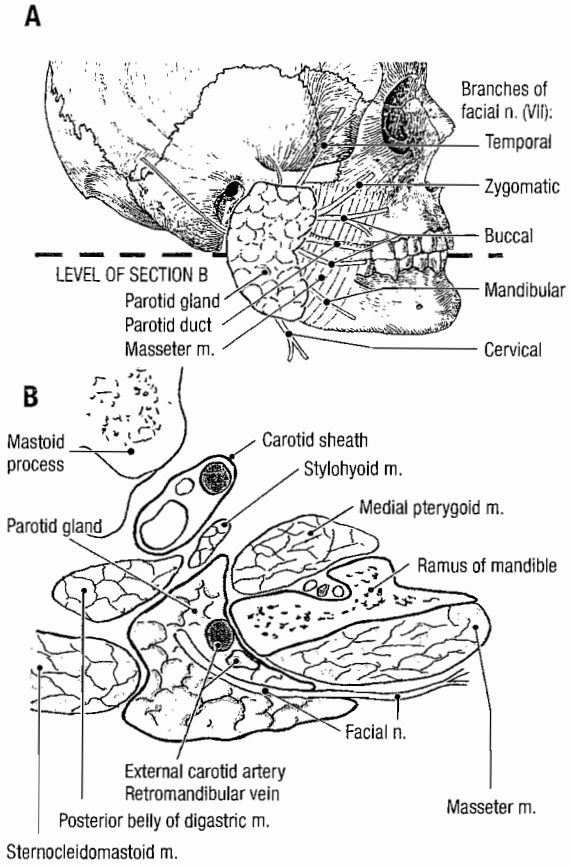


Figure 7.54. Topographic relations of the parotid gland. A. Lateral view. Dashed line indicates the level of section B. B. Transverse section through the parotid bed.

Use the skull and an illustration to define the **boundaries of the parotid bed** (Fig. 7.54B): **[G 653; N 30; R 77; C 467]**

- **Posterior** – mastoid process and posterior belly of the digastric muscle
- **Anterior** – medial pterygoid muscle, ramus of the mandible, and masseter muscle
- **Medial** – styloid process and associated muscles (stylopharyngeus, styloglossus, and stylohyoid)
- **Posterosuperior** – floor of the external acoustic meatus

Dissection Instructions

1. Review the course of the parotid duct. The parotid duct enters the oral vestibule lateral to the second maxillary molar tooth.
2. Review the branches of the facial nerve: temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical (Fig. 7.54A). **[G 652; N 21; R 77; C 469]**
3. The parotid gland is enclosed within the **parotid sheath**. The parotid sheath and the stroma of the parotid gland are continuations of the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia. This tough connective tissue will not yield to probe dissection. To dissect into the parotid gland, use the tip of a scalpel blade as you would normally use a probe.
4. Trace the facial nerve branches posteriorly toward the lobe of the ear. Remove small pieces of the parotid

gland and place them in the tissue container. The branches will unite to form the **facial nerve**.

5. Follow the facial nerve as far as possible toward the stylomastoid foramen. Cut the facial nerve, leaving a short stump emerging from the stylomastoid foramen. Reflect the facial nerve and all of its branches anteriorly.
6. Cut the **parotid duct** at the anterior margin of the parotid gland and reflect the duct anteriorly. Do not disturb its passage through the buccinator muscle.
7. Identify the **auriculotemporal nerve**, a branch of the mandibular nerve (V_3). The auriculotemporal nerve passes between the head of the mandible and the external acoustic meatus. It crosses the zygomatic process of the temporal bone to innervate the skin of the anterior side of the ear and temporal region. The auriculotemporal nerve carries postganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers from the otic ganglion to the parotid gland.
8. In the neck, find the **external jugular vein**. Use blunt dissection to follow the external jugular vein superiorly to the point where it is formed by the joining of the posterior auricular vein and the retromandibular vein.
9. Use blunt dissection to follow the retromandibular vein superiorly until it enters the parotid gland. Do not cut the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. Switch to the scalpel dissection technique and remove small pieces of parotid tissue as you follow the retromandibular vein through the parotid gland.
10. Trace the retromandibular vein to the point where it is formed by the joining of the **maxillary vein** and the **superficial temporal vein**. The maxillary vein will be dissected later.
11. Follow the **superficial temporal vein** superiorly and note that it crosses the superficial surface of the zygomatic arch. The branches of the superficial temporal vein are in the connective tissue layer of the scalp. The auriculotemporal nerve crosses the zygomatic arch posterior to the superficial temporal vein.
12. Return to the neck and find the **external carotid artery**. Use blunt dissection to follow the external carotid artery to the inferior border of the parotid gland, then switch to the scalpel dissection technique. **[G 653; N 30; R 79; C 476]**
13. Follow the external carotid artery superiorly. It passes along the posterior edge of the ramus of the mandible (Fig. 7.54B). Posterior to the neck of the mandible, the external carotid artery divides into its two terminal branches, the **maxillary artery** and the **superficial temporal artery**. The maxillary artery will be dissected later.
14. Use the scalpel dissection technique to clean the **superficial temporal artery**. The superficial temporal artery crosses the zygomatic process of the temporal bone just anterior to the external acoustic meatus. At this location, the superficial temporal artery is anterior to the auriculotemporal nerve. The superficial temporal artery supplies the lateral portion of the scalp.
15. Clean the lateral surface of the **posterior belly of the digastric muscle** and the **stylohyoid muscle**. Use the scalpel technique to remove all other remnants of the parotid gland.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Parotid Gland

Because of the close relationship between the parotid gland and the external acoustic meatus, swelling of the parotid gland (as occurs in mumps, for example) pushes the ear lobe superiorly and laterally. During parotidectomy (surgical excision of the parotid gland), the facial nerve is in danger of being injured. If the facial nerve is damaged, the facial muscles are paralyzed.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the facial nerve in its correct anatomical position and approximate the cut ends. Replace the parotid duct in its correct anatomical position. Use an illustration, a skull and the dissected specimen to review the course of the facial nerve from the internal acoustic meatus to the facial muscles. Review the superficial venous drainage of the lateral side of the head and neck, beginning with the superficial temporal veins and ending with the subclavian vein in the root of the neck. Review the origin, course, and branches of the external carotid artery. Review the boundaries of the parotid bed.

TEMPORAL REGION

Before you dissect . . .

The **temporal region** consists of two fossae: temporal and infratemporal. The **temporal fossa** is located superior to the zygomatic arch and it contains the temporalis muscle. The **infratemporal fossa** is inferior to the zygomatic arch and deep to the ramus of the mandible. The infratemporal fossa contains the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles, branches of the mandibular nerve (V_3), and the maxillary artery and vein. The infratemporal and temporal fossae are in open communication with each other through the interval between the zygomatic arch and the lateral surface of the skull.

The dissection will proceed as follows: The masseter muscle will be studied and reflected. The zygomatic arch will be removed and the temporalis muscle will be studied. The superior part of the ramus of the mandible will then be removed and the maxillary artery will be traced across the infratemporal fossa. The branches of the mandibular nerve will be dissected. The medial and lateral pterygoid muscles will be studied and the temporomandibular joint will be dissected.

SKELETON OF THE TEMPORAL REGION

Refer to a skull and identify the following (Fig. 7.03): **[G 654; N 4; R 25; C 481]**

- **Superior and inferior temporal lines** – on the parietal bone
- **Temporal fossa** – formed by parts of four cranial bones: parietal, frontal, squamous part of temporal, and greater wing of sphenoid. Review the location of the pterion.

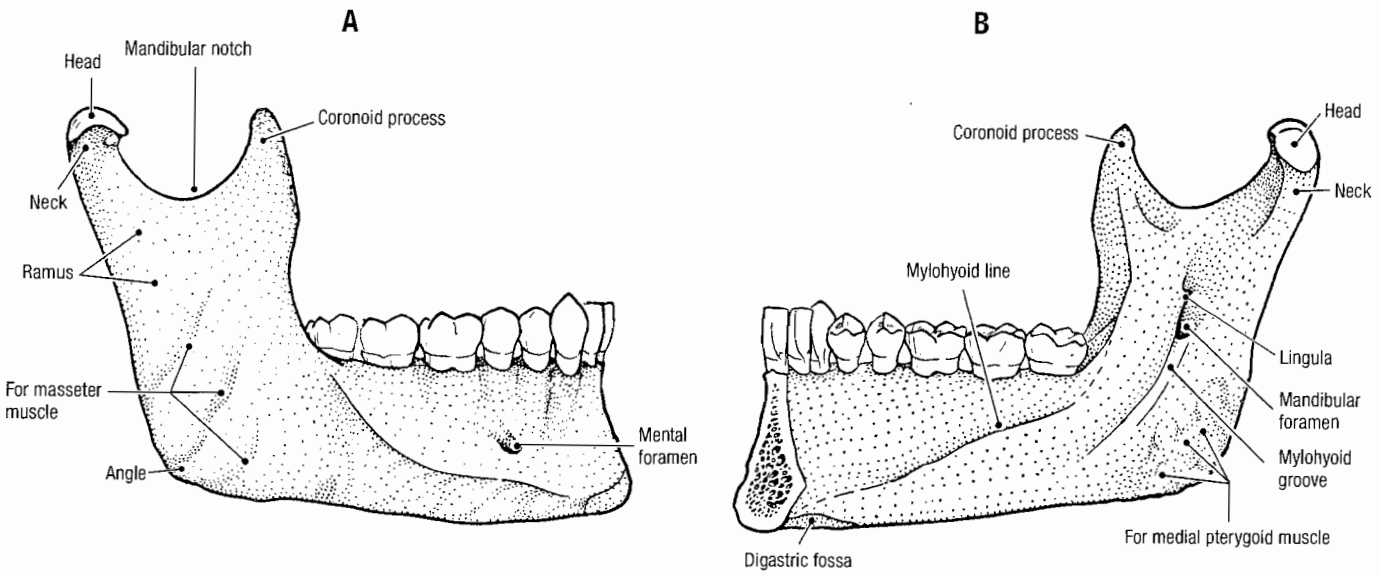


Figure 7.55. Mandible. **A.** External surface. **B.** Internal surface.

- **Zygomatic arch** – formed by **the zygomatic process of the temporal bone** and the **temporal process of the zygomatic bone**
- **Mandibular fossa and articular tubercle** – on the temporal bone (Fig. 7.53)

On the **external surface of the mandible**, identify (Fig. 7.55A): **[G 654; N 13; R 55; C 543]**

- **Head**
- **Neck**
- **Mandibular notch**
- **Coronoid process**
- **Ramus**
- **Angle**

On the **internal surface of the mandible**, identify (Fig. 7.55B):

- **Lingula** – for the attachment of the sphenomandibular ligament
- **Mandibular foramen** – for the inferior alveolar nerves and vessels
- **Mylohyoid groove** – for the mylohyoid nerve and vessels

Remove the mandible from the skull and view the bones of the infratemporal fossa from the lateral perspective. Identify (Fig. 7.56): **[G 655; N 4; C 503]**

- **Pterygomaxillary fissure** – between the lateral plate of the pterygoid process and the maxilla
- **Inferior orbital fissure** – between the greater wing of the sphenoid bone and the maxilla
- **Infratemporal surface** of the maxilla
- **Greater wing of the sphenoid bone** – contains the **foramen ovale** and the **foramen spinosum**
- **Lateral plate of the pterygoid process** of the sphenoid bone
- **Pterygopalatine fossa** – at the superior end of the pterygomaxillary fissure
- **Sphenopalatine foramen** – opening into the nasal cavity

Reposition the mandible on the skull and identify the **boundaries of the infratemporal fossa**:

- **Lateral** – ramus of the mandible
- **Anterior** – the infratemporal surface of the maxilla
- **Medial** – lateral plate of the pterygoid process
- **Roof** – greater wing of the sphenoid bone

Dissection Instructions

REMOVAL OF THE ZYGOMATIC ARCH

1. Reflect the facial nerve branches and the parotid duct anteriorly.
2. Clean the lateral surface of the **masseter muscle**. The superior attachment of the masseter muscle is the inferior border of the zygomatic arch and its inferior attachment is the lateral surface of the ramus of the mandible. The masseter muscle elevates the mandible (closes the jaw) and protrudes the mandible. **[G 656; N 50; R 58; C 467]**

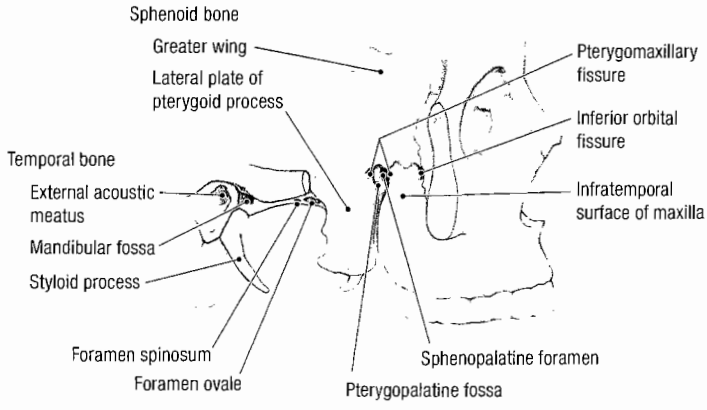


Figure 7.56. Skeleton of the infratemporal region.

3. Use scissors to cut the **temporal fascia** along its attachment to the superior border of the zygomatic arch.
4. Insert a probe deep to the zygomatic arch as far anteriorly as possible (arrow 1, Fig. 7.57). Use a saw to cut through the zygomatic bone to the probe.
5. Insert the probe deep to the zygomatic arch near the anterior border of the head of the mandible (arrow 2, Fig. 7.57). Use a saw to cut through the zygomatic arch to the probe.
6. Reflect the masseter muscle and the attached portion of the zygomatic arch in the inferior direction. Use a scalpel to detach the masseter muscle from the lateral surface of the coronoid process and the superior part of the ramus of the mandible, but leave the masseter muscle attached to the inferior part of the ramus. During reflection, the nerve and vessels to the masseter muscle will be cut.

TEMPORAL FOSSA [G 656; N 50; R 58; C 467]

1. Note that the superficial temporal vessels and the auriculotemporal nerve are located in the scalp, superficial to the temporal fascia.
2. The temporal fascia is attached to the superior temporal line and was cut at that location when the calvaria was removed. Cut the temporal fascia along the superior border of the zygomatic arch and remove the fascia completely.
3. Identify the **temporalis (temporal) muscle**. Observe that the:
   - Temporalis muscle is attached to the deep surface of the temporal fascia.
   - Inferior attachment of the temporalis muscle is the coronoid process of the mandible.
   - Fibers of the anterior portion of the temporalis muscle have a vertical direction (important for elevation of the mandible).
   - Fibers of the posterior portion of the temporalis muscle have a more horizontal direction (important for retrusion of the mandible).

INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA [G 658; N 36; R 80; C 478]

1. The ramus of the mandible must be removed to view the contents of the infratemporal fossa. *Wear eye protection for all steps that require the use of bone cutters.*
2. Insert a probe through the mandibular notch and push it anteroinferiorly toward the third mandibular molar tooth (arrow 1, Fig. 7.58). Keep the probe in close contact with the deep surface of the mandible. Use a saw to cut through the coronoid process to the probe.
3. Reflect the coronoid process together with the temporalis muscle in the superior direction. Use blunt dissection to release the temporalis muscle from the skull and note that the temporal nerves enter the muscle from its deep surface. The temporal nerves are accompanied by deep temporal arteries.
4. Insert a probe medial to the neck of the mandible (arrow 2, Fig. 7.58). Use a saw to cut through the neck of the mandible to the probe.
5. Hold a mandible beside the cadaver and estimate the position of the lingula. Use a pencil to mark the position of the lingula on the lateral surface of the cadaver's mandible.
6. Insert the handle of a probe medial to the neck of the mandible and slide it inferiorly until it catches on the lingula (arrow 3, Fig. 7.58). Use a saw to cut down to the probe and remove the superior part of the ramus of the mandible.
7. Deep to the mandible, identify the **lateral pterygoid muscle** (Fig. 7.59A). The lateral pterygoid muscle has two heads. The anterior attachment of the superior head is the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone. The anterior attachment of the inferior head is the lateral surface of the lateral plate of the pterygoid process. The posterior attachments of the lateral pterygoid muscle are the neck of the mandible and the articular disc within the capsule of the temporomandibular joint. The lateral pterygoid muscle depresses the mandible (opens the jaw). **[G 662; N 51; R 59; C 478]**

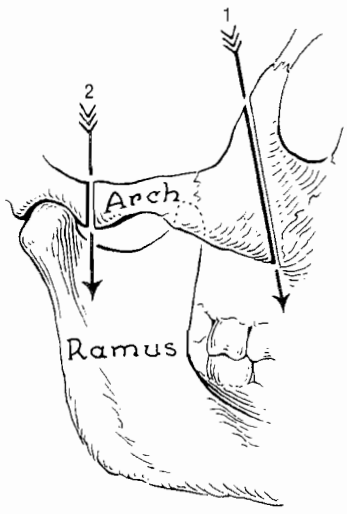


Figure 7.57. How to cut the zygomatic arch.

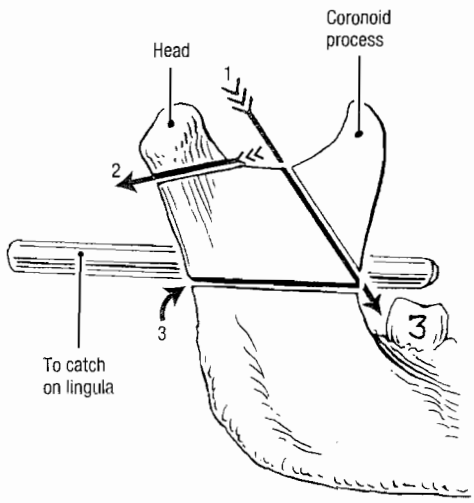


Figure 7.58. How to cut the ramus of the mandible.

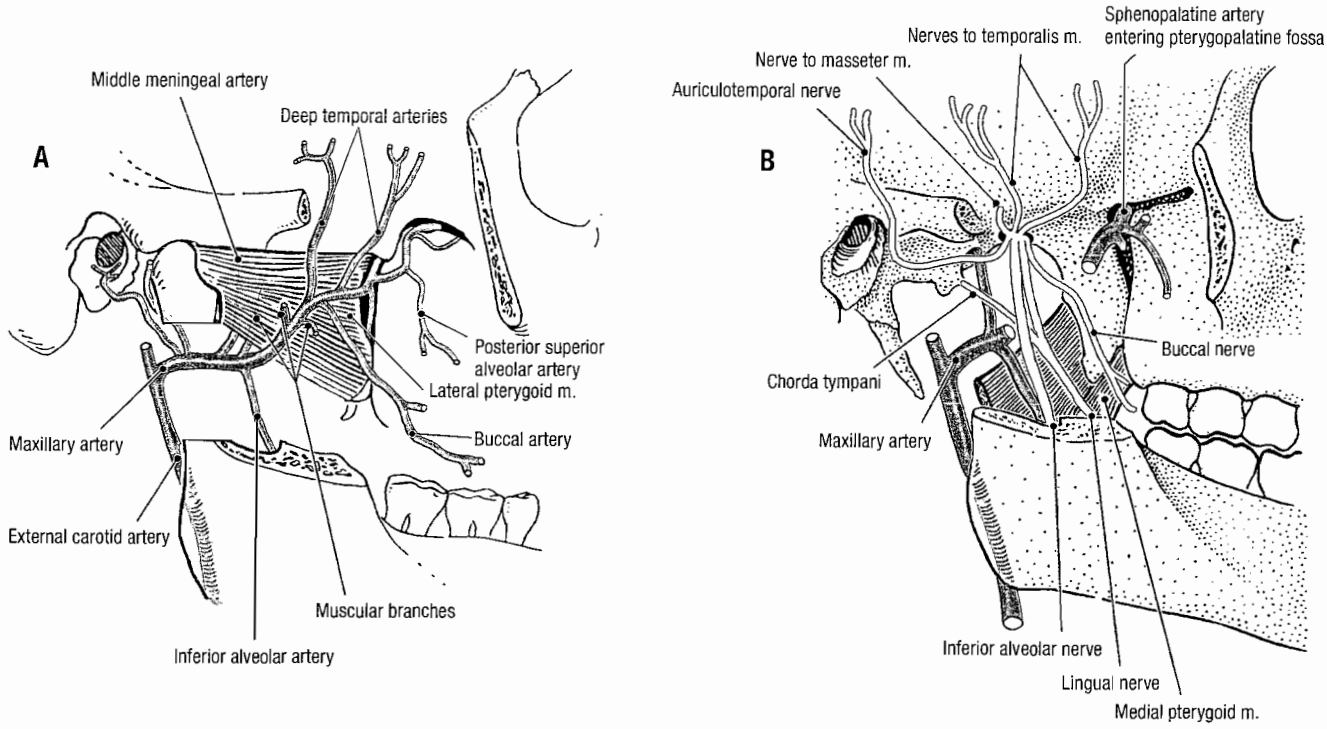


Figure 7.59. Arteries and nerves of the infratemporal fossa. **A.** Branches of the maxillary artery. **B.** Branches of the mandibular nerve (V_3).

8. Identify the **medial pterygoid muscle** (Fig. 7.59B). The proximal attachments of the medial pterygoid muscle are the maxilla and the medial surface of the lateral plate of the pterygoid process. The distal attachment of the medial pterygoid muscle is the inner surface of the ramus of the mandible. The medial pterygoid muscle elevates the mandible (closes the jaw).
9. On the superficial surface of the medial pterygoid muscle, identify the **inferior alveolar nerve** and **vessels** (Fig. 7.59A,B). Clean the inferior alveolar nerve and follow it to the mandibular foramen. The mylohyoid nerve arises from the inferior alveolar nerve at the mandibular foramen.
10. The inferior alveolar nerve and vessels enter the mandibular foramen and pass distally in the **mandibular canal**. Note that the inferior alveolar nerve provides sensory innervation to the **mandibular teeth**. The **mental nerve** is a branch of the inferior alveolar nerve, which passes through the mental foramen to innervate the chin and lower lip.
11. Identify the **lingual nerve**. The lingual nerve emerges between the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles just anterior to the inferior alveolar nerve. The lingual nerve passes medial to the third mandibular molar tooth and it innervates the mucosa of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and floor of the oral cavity.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Dental Anesthesia

A mandibular nerve block is produced by injecting an anesthetic agent into the infratemporal fossa. Understand from your dissection that the mandibular nerve block will not only anesthetize the mandibular teeth but also the lower lip, the chin, and the tongue.

12. Identify the **maxillary artery** where it arises from the bifurcation of the external carotid artery (Fig. 7.59A). The maxillary artery crosses either the superficial surface (2/3) or the deep surface (1/3) of the lateral pterygoid muscle. If the maxillary artery in your specimen passes deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle, perform step 14 first and then return to step 13. **[G 659, 660; N 36; R 80; C 479]**
13. Use blunt dissection to trace the maxillary artery through the infratemporal fossa. The maxillary artery has 15 branches. Identify only the following (Fig. 7.59A):
    - **Middle meningeal artery** – arises medial to the neck of the mandible and passes through the foramen spinosum to supply the dura mater.
    - **Deep temporal arteries (anterior and posterior)** – pass across the roof of the infratemporal

fossa at bone level and enter the deep surface of the temporalis muscle.
- **Masseteric artery** – passes through the mandibular notch to enter the deep surface of the masseter muscle (cut in a previous dissection step).
- **Inferior alveolar artery** – enters the mandibular foramen with the inferior alveolar nerve.
- **Buccal artery** – passes anteriorly to supply the cheek.

14. Remove the **lateral pterygoid muscle** to see the deeper part of the infratemporal fossa. Define the inferior border of the lateral pterygoid muscle by inserting a probe between it and the medial pterygoid muscle. Use scissors to cut the lateral pterygoid muscle close to its posterior attachments to the neck of the mandible and the articular disc. Remove the muscle in a piecemeal fashion to preserve superficially positioned nerves and vessels.
15. Use a probe to follow the **inferior alveolar nerve** and the **lingual nerve** to the foramen ovale in the roof of the infratemporal fossa. Identify the **chorda tympani**, which joins the posterior side of the lingual nerve (Fig. 7.59B).
16. Follow the maxillary artery toward the **pterygopalatine fossa**. Within the pterygopalatine fossa the maxillary artery divides into four terminal branches: posterior superior alveolar artery, infraorbital artery, descending palatine artery and sphenopalatine artery. Identify only the **posterior superior alveolar artery**, which enters the infratemporal surface of the maxilla (Fig. 7.59A). The other branches will be dissected later.

TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT [G 665; N 14; R 56; C 473]

1. Identify the capsule of the **temporomandibular joint**. The joint capsule is loose and its lateral surface is reinforced by the **temporomandibular ligament**.
2. Insert the point of a scalpel into the temporomandibular joint close to the mandibular fossa and open the **superior synovial cavity** of the joint (Fig. 7.60). Remove the head of the mandible along with the articular disc.

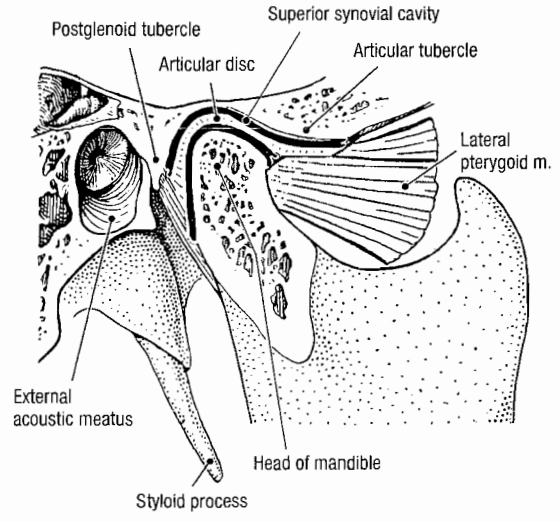


Figure 7.60. The temporomandibular joint.

3. Examine the isolated specimen and note that the tendon of the lateral pterygoid muscle is attached to the neck of the mandible and the articular disc (Fig. 7.60). Cut the articular capsule to open the **inferior synovial cavity** and observe the shape and variable thickness of the articular disc.
4. Two types of movements occur in the temporomandibular joint. In the superior synovial cavity, gliding movements occur between the articular disc and the articular tubercle (protrusion and retrusion). In the inferior synovial cavity, hinge movements occur between the head of the mandible and the articular disc.
5. Place your 5th digit in the cartilaginous portion of your external acoustic meatus. Perform hinge movements of the mandible, then protrude and retrude your mandible as you palpate the head of the mandible.

After you dissect . . .

Review the attachments and actions of the four muscles of mastication (masseter, temporalis, medial pterygoid and lateral pterygoid). In the middle cranial fossa, review the origin of the mandibular nerve (V_3) at the trigeminal ganglion and trace it to the foramen ovale. Follow the mandibular nerve through the foramen ovale into the infratemporal fossa. Review the sensory and motor branches of the mandibular nerve. Follow the external carotid artery from its origin at the level of the hyoid bone to the infratemporal fossa. Review the course of the superficial temporal artery and the maxillary artery. Follow the branches of the maxillary artery that were dissected to their regions of supply. Note the relationship of the middle meningeal artery to the auriculotemporal nerve. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the termination of the maxillary artery in the pterygopalatine fossa.

CRANIOVERTEBRAL JOINTS AND REMOVAL OF THE HEAD

Before you dissect . . .

The head must be detached from the vertebral column to allow a posterior approach to the cervical viscera. The joints between the skull and the first cervical vertebra (craniovertebral joints) are the logical site for separation of the head from the vertebral column.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The retropharyngeal space will be opened from the base of the skull to the superior thoracic aperture. The ligaments of the craniovertebral joints will be cut. The atlanto-occipital joints (left and right) will be disarticulated and the prevertebral muscles will be cut.

SKELETON OF THE SUBOCCIPITAL REGION

Refer to a skeleton and identify the following: **[G 320; N 15, 17, 18; R 193; C 419, 420]**

- **Atlas (C1)** (Fig. 7.61)
  - **Anterior arch**
  - **Superior articular facet**
  - **Transverse process**
  - **Posterior arch**
- **Axis (C2)**
  - **Dens**

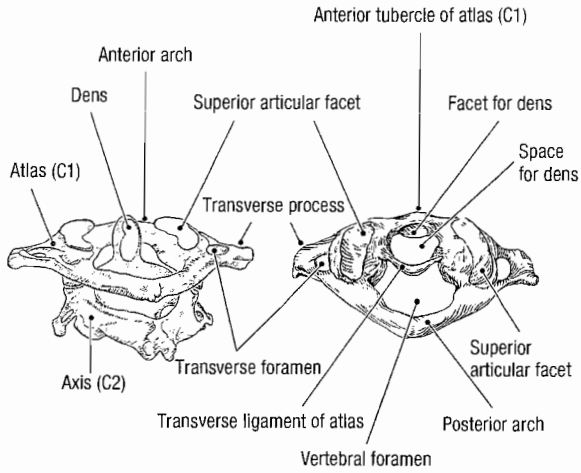


Figure 7.61. Skeleton and ligaments of the atlanto-axial joint.

- **Occipital bone** (Fig. 7.62)
  Occipital condyle
  Pharyngeal tubercle
  Foramen magnum
- **Atlanto-occipital joint** – between the occipital condyle and the superior articular facet of the atlas
- **Transverse ligament of the atlas** – holds the dens to the anterior arch of the atlas (Fig. 7.61)

Dissection Instructions

RETROPHARYNGEAL SPACE

1. Review the structures that pass through the foramen magnum: brainstem, vertebral arteries (left and right), and the cervical roots of the accessory nerves (left and right). Review the hypoglossal nerve (XII) where it enters the hypoglossal canal. Review the structures that enter the jugular foramen: glossopharyngeal nerve (IX), vagus nerve (X), accessory nerve (XI), and sigmoid sinus.
2. Reflect the sternocleidomastoid muscle on both sides, taking care to separate each muscle from deeper structures all the way to the mastoid process.
3. Insert the fingers of both hands posterior to the carotid sheaths (arrow in Fig. 7.63). Push your fingers medially until they meet posterior to the cervical viscera. Your fingers are now in the **retropharyngeal space**.
4. To separate the viscera from the vertebral column, work your fingers superiorly as far as the basilar part of the occipital bone. This is the superior limit of the retropharyngeal space. Work your fingers inferiorly toward the superior thoracic aperture. Note that the retropharyngeal space extends into the superior mediastinum.

CRANIOVERTEBRAL JOINTS

1. Turn the cadaver to the prone position. A wedge-shaped portion of the occipital bone was removed earlier (Fig. 7.64).
2. If not already done during the dissection of the suboccipital region, use bone cutters to remove the posterior arch of the atlas (Fig. 7.64). Open the spinal dura mater and remove the cervical spinal cord.
3. Strip the dura mater from the anterior border of the foramen magnum and identify the **tectorial membrane** (Fig. 7.65). The tectorial membrane is continuous with the posterior longitudinal ligament. Superior to the anterior border of the foramen magnum, cut the tectorial membrane and reflect it inferiorly as far as possible (Fig. 7.65). **[G 321; N 18; R 193; C 420]**
4. Anterior to the tectorial membrane identify the **cruciate ligament of the atlas** (Fig. 7.65). The cruciate ligament has three parts:
   - **Superior longitudinal band**
   - **Transverse ligament of the atlas**
   - **Inferior longitudinal band**
5. Use a scalpel to cut the superior longitudinal band. Anterior to the cruciate ligament of the atlas, identify the left and right **alar ligaments** (Fig. 7.65). The alar

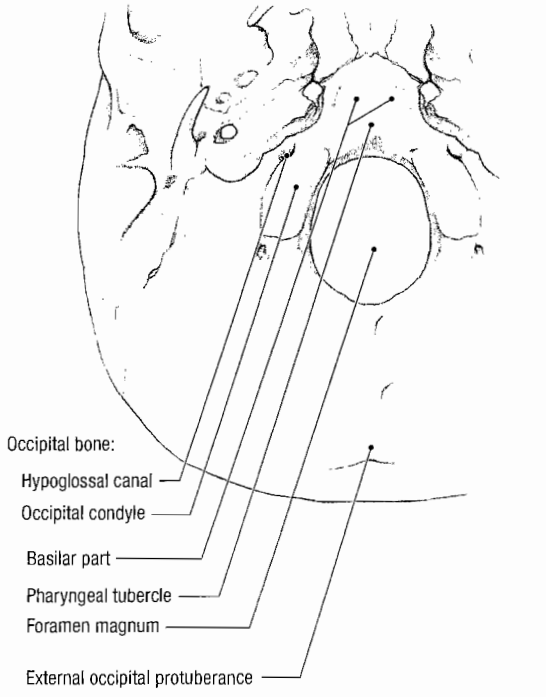


Figure 7.62. Occipital bone, inferior view.

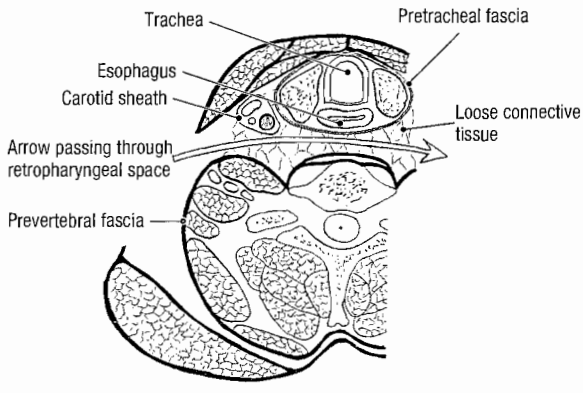


Figure 7.63. Transverse section through the neck.

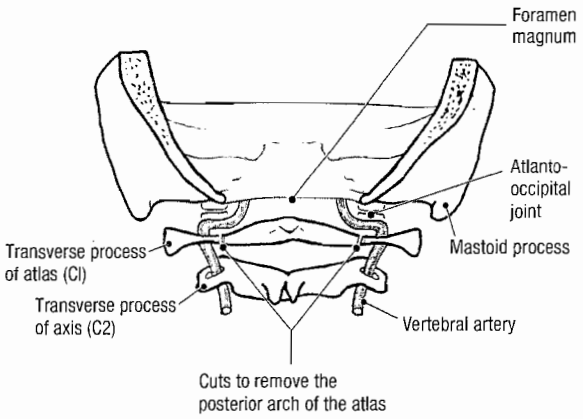


Figure 7.64. Atlanto-occipital joint in posterior view.

ligaments extend from the dens to the lateral margins of the foramen magnum and they control lateral rotation and side-to-side movements of the head.

6. Use a scalpel to cut the alar ligaments close to the dens. Note that the rotation of the head is now very easy and extensive.

REMOVAL OF THE HEAD

1. Use a scalpel to open the capsule of the **atlanto-occipital joint** on both sides (Fig. 7.64). Force a chisel into each atlanto-occipital joint and disarticulate it.
2. Turn the cadaver to the supine position. Retract the cervical viscera and contents of the carotid sheath anteriorly. **[G 761; N 26; C 456]**
3. Identify the **sympathetic trunk** and the **superior cervical sympathetic ganglion** on the anterior surface of the cervical vertebral column. On the left side, sever the **internal carotid nerve** just superior to the superior cervical ganglion and leave the sympathetic trunk attached to the vertebral column. On the right side, reflect the sympathetic trunk and the superior cervical ganglion with the head and cervical viscera.
4. Protect cranial nerves IX, X, XI, and XII where they emerge from the base of the skull near the internal jugular vein. Insert a scalpel blade between the transverse process of the atlas and the occipital bone and sever the **rectus capitis lateralis muscle** on each side (Fig. 7.66). Repeat this cut on the opposite side of the neck.
5. More medially, sever the **rectus capitis anterior** and **longus capitis muscles**. Repeat this cut on the opposite side of the neck. Cut across the median plane just superior to the anterior arch of the atlas. Push the head anteriorly to detach it from the vertebral column.

PREVERTEBRAL AND LATERAL VERTEBRAL REGIONS [G 760; N 124; R 180; C 452]

1. On the anterior surface of the cervical vertebral column, examine the **prevertebral fascia.** The prevertebral fascia covers the prevertebral muscles (longus colli and longus capitis muscles) and the lateral vertebral muscles (anterior, middle and posterior scalene muscles).
2. On the left side of the cervical vertebral column, study the **sympathetic trunk**. Identify the **superior, middle**, and **inferior cervical sympathetic ganglia.** Observe the **gray rami communicantes** that connect the sympathetic ganglia with the ventral rami of cervical spinal nerves. Frequently, the inferior cervical ganglion is fused with the 1st thoracic ganglion to form the **cervicothoracic (stellate) ganglion.**

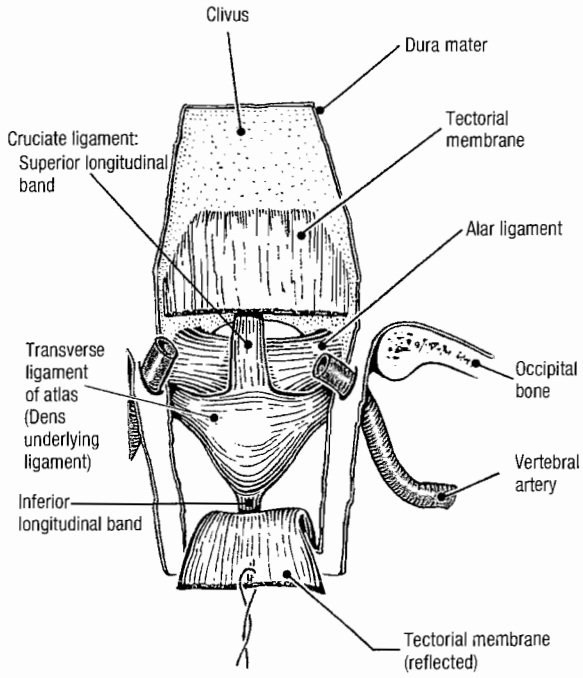


Figure 7.65. Atlantoaxial joint, posterior view.

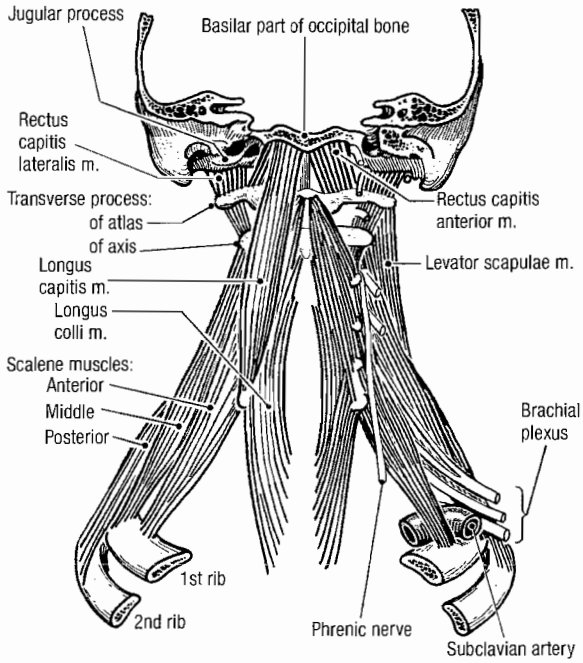


Figure 7.66. Prevertebral muscles.

3. Identify the **longus colli, longus capitis** and **anterior scalene muscles** (Fig. 7.66). Review the contributions to the brachial plexus made by the ventral rami of spinal nerves C5-C8.
4. Follow the vertebral artery into the transverse foramen of vertebra C6 and observe where it emerges from the transverse foramen of the atlas (C1). Appreciate that the vertebral artery is well protected within the foramina transversaria.

After you dissect . . .

Use a skull to review the anatomy of the occipital bone. In the cadaver, review the structures that pass through the foramen magnum, hypoglossal canal, and jugular foramen. Use a skeleton to study the atlanto-axial and atlanto-occipital joints. Review the course of the sympathetic trunk from the upper thorax to the base of the skull. Review the origin and relationships of the roots of the brachial plexus.

PHARYNX

Before you dissect . . .

The airway crosses the digestive tract in the pharynx. The pharynx extends from the base of the skull to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage (vertebral level C6). The **pharyngeal wall** consists of three layers. From outside inward these layers are:

- **Buccopharyngeal fascia** – the adventitia of the pharynx that is continuous with the connective tissue that covers the buccinator muscle
- **Muscular layer** – composed of an outer circular part and an inner longitudinal part
- **Mucous membrane**

The order of dissection will be as follows: The external surface of the pharynx will be dissected from the posterior direction. The pharyngeal plexus of nerves will be identified and the borders of the pharyngeal constrictor muscles will be defined. The stylopharyngeus muscle and glossopharyngeal nerve will be identified. The contents of the carotid sheath will be examined and cranial nerves IX, X, XI, and XII will be followed from the base of the skull to their regions of distribution. The sympathetic trunk will be studied.

Dissection Instructions

MUSCLES OF THE PHARYNGEAL WALL [G 767, 768; N 63; R 165; C 548, 550]

1. The cadaver should be in the supine position. Push the head anteroinferiorly and let the chin rest on the thorax. Use a probe to clean the buccopharyngeal fascia from the posterior surface of the pharynx.
2. Identify the **inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle**. The anterior attachments of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle are the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage and the lateral surface of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 7.67B). The posterior attachment of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle is the **pharyngeal raphe**. Beginning near the thyroid cartilage, use blunt dissection to clean the superior border of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle.
3. Identify the **middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle**. The anterior attachments of the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle are the greater horn of the hyoid bone and the inferior portion of the stylohyoid ligament (Fig. 7.67B). The posterior attachment of the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle is the pharyngeal raphe. Note that the inferior part of the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle lies deep to the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle. Use blunt dissection to clean the superior border of the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle.
4. Superior to the middle pharyngeal constrictor, identify the **superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle**. The anterior attachment of the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle is the **pterygomandibular raphe** and its posterior attachments are the pharyngeal raphe and **pharyngeal tubercle** of the occipital bone (Fig. 7.67A). Note that the inferior part of the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle lies deep to the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle.
5. Use blunt dissection to define the superior border of the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle. The dense connective tissue membrane that attaches the superior edge of the superior constrictor to the base of the skull is the **pharyngobasilar fascia**.
6. To find the **stylopharyngeus muscle**, palpate the greater horn of the hyoid bone. One finger's width above the greater horn of the hyoid bone, the stylopharyngeus muscle passes between the superior pharyngeal constrictor and the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscles (Fig. 7.67A).
7. Use a probe to clean the posterior and lateral surfaces of the stylopharyngeus muscle. Identify the **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)** that courses around the lateral surface of the stylopharyngeus muscle to enter the pharynx (Fig. 7.68A). **[G 769; N 67; R 163; C 551]**
8. Examine the inferior border of the inferior constrictor muscle (Fig. 7.68B). Note that the most inferior fibers of the inferior constrictor muscle are continuous with the circular fibers of the esophagus. At this location the **recurrent laryngeal nerve** enters the pharyngeal wall.
9. Identify the **pharyngeal plexus of nerves** (Fig. 7.68A). The pharyngeal plexus is located on the posterolateral aspect of the pharynx. The pharyngeal plexus receives branches from the glossopharyngeal nerve (sensory to the pharyngeal mucosa), vagus nerve (motor to the pharyngeal constrictor muscles), and superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (vasomotor).
10. Identify the **contents of the carotid sheath** from the posterior view (Fig. 7.68A). Follow the internal carotid artery superiorly as far as possible. Note that the internal jugular vein is lateral to the internal carotid artery.
11. Identify the **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)**, **vagus nerve (X)**, and **accessory nerve (XI)** where they exit

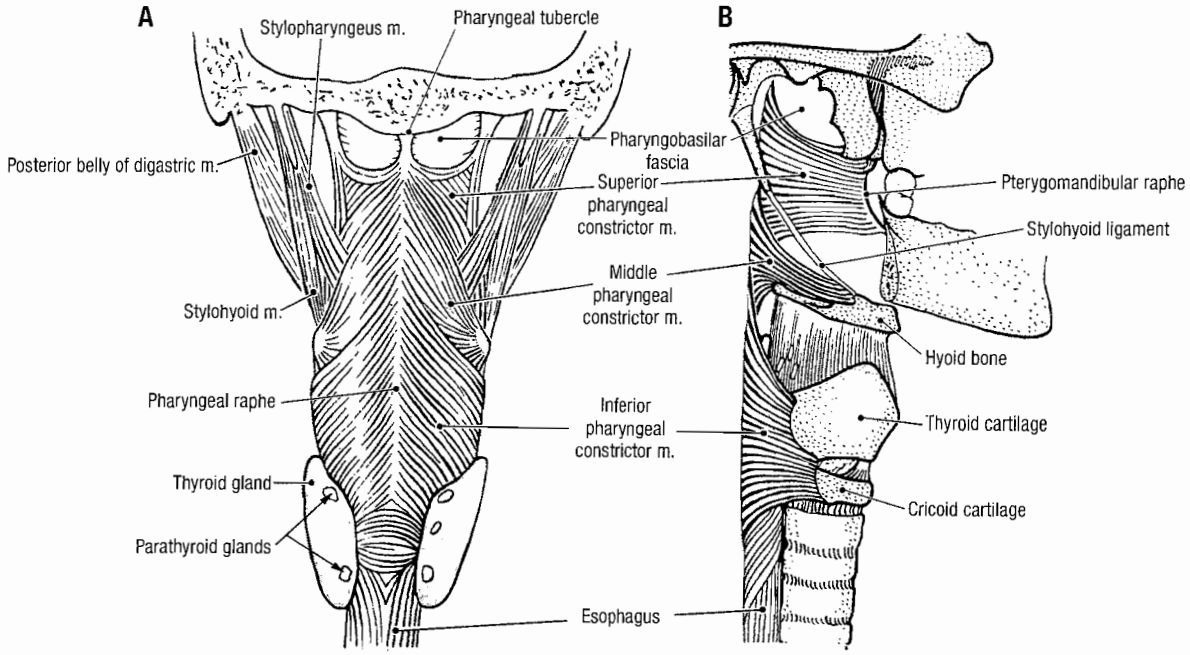


Figure 7.67. Muscles of the pharynx. **A.** Posterior view. **B.** Lateral view.

the jugular foramen medial to the internal jugular vein (Fig. 7.68A).

- **Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)** – passes between the internal and external carotid arteries as it approaches the stylopharyngeus muscle.
- **Vagus nerve** – lies posterior to the internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein in the carotid sheath. Trace the vagus nerve from the base of the skull to the thorax. The **superior laryngeal nerve** arises from the vagus nerve about 2.5 cm inferior to the base of the skull. Trace the branches of the superior laryngeal nerve to the larynx (Fig. 7.68B).

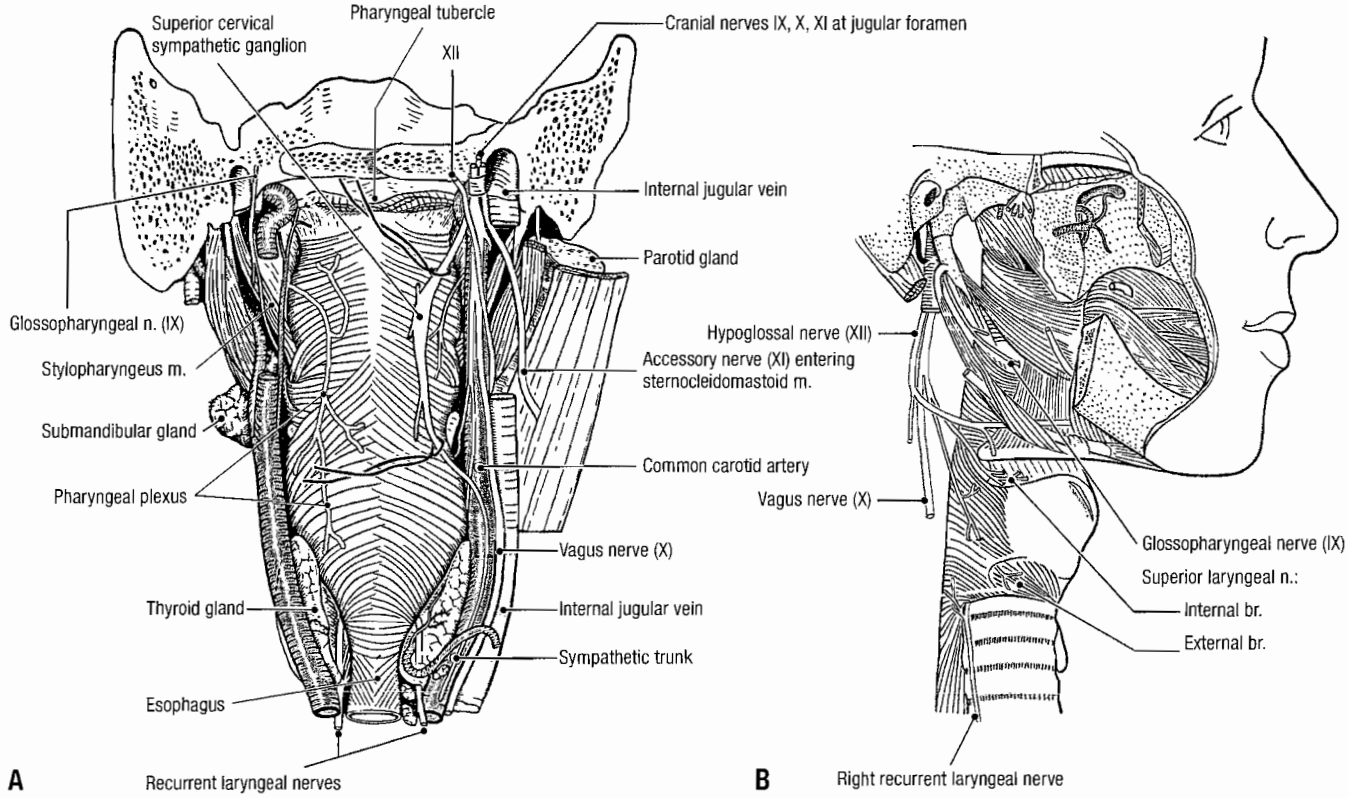


Figure 7.68. Nerves and vessels related to the pharyngeal wall. **A.** Posterior view. **B.** Lateral view.

The **pharyngeal branch of the vagus nerve** arises near the base of the skull. Follow the pharyngeal branch to the pharyngeal plexus.

- **Accessory nerve (XI)** – passes between the internal jugular vein and the internal carotid artery to reach the deep surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 7.68A).

12. Identify the **hypoglossal nerve (XII)** in the submandibular triangle and follow it posteriorly and superiorly as far as the base of the skull (Fig. 7.68B). Note that the hypoglossal nerve passes lateral to the internal and external carotid arteries.
13. On the right side of the cadaver, verify that the **superior cervical sympathetic ganglion** and the **sympathetic trunk** are posterior to the carotid sheath (Fig. 7.68A).

BISECTION OF THE HEAD

1. Use scissors to cut the posterior wall of the pharynx in the midline. Start at the superior end of the esophagus and cut through the pharyngeal raphe up to the pharyngeal tubercle.
2. Use a scalpel to divide the uvula and the soft palate in the median plane.
3. Turn the specimen and use a scalpel to cut through the upper lip in the midline.
4. The skull must be sawed just lateral to the median plane. The nasal septum may not be in the median plane, so you must examine each nasal cavity and decide on which side the saw cut should be made in order to avoid the nasal septum.
5. On the chosen side, use a scalpel to cut through the cartilages of the external nose parallel to the nasal septum.
6. Examine a skull and study the bones through which you must cut:
   - **Nasal bone** and **frontal bone**
   - **Cribriform plate** of one ethmoid bone
   - **Body of the sphenoid bone**
   - **Hard palate**
   - **Basilar part of the occipital bone** as far as the **foramen magnum**
7. Saw through the skull from superior to inferior. Begin lateral to the crista galli and keep the blade close to the nasal septum. Cut through the nasal and frontal bones, ethmoid bone, body of the sphenoid, dorsum sellae, basilar part of the occipital bone, and hard palate. Stop when the saw has passed into the foramen magnum. Do not cut the tongue or mandible at this time.
8. The two superior halves of the head should separate from each other. The tongue should be exposed.

INTERNAL ASPECT OF THE PHARYNX [G 788; N 59; R 153; C 549]

1. The lumen of the pharynx communicates anteriorly with three cavities: nose, mouth, and larynx (Fig. 7.69). Identify the parts of the pharynx: **nasopharynx**, **oropharynx**, and **laryngopharynx (hypopharynx)**.
2. The **nasopharynx** lies posterior to the nose and superior to the soft palate (Fig. 7.69). Identify the posterior nasal aperture (**choana**) that is the transition region from the nasal cavity to the nasopharynx. The choanae of the two sides are separated by the posterior end of the nasal septum. **[G 774; N 60; C 525]**
3. On the lateral wall of the nasopharynx identify the **opening of the pharyngotympanic tube (auditory tube, eustachian tube)**.
4. Posterior to the opening of the pharyngotympanic tube, identify the **torus tubarius**, which is the cartilage of the pharyngotympanic tube that is covered by mucosa (Fig. 7.69). The **salpingopharyngeal fold** extends posteroinferiorly from the torus tubarius.
5. Posterior to the torus tubarius identify the **pharyngeal recess**. The **pharyngeal tonsil (adenoid)** is located in the mucous membrane of the pharyngeal recess.
6. The **oropharynx** lies posterior to the oral cavity. It is bounded superiorly by the soft palate and inferiorly by the epiglottis of the larynx (Fig. 7.69).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Adenoids

Enlarged pharyngeal tonsils are called adenoids. Adenoids obstruct the flow of air from the nose through the nasopharynx, making mouth breathing necessary.

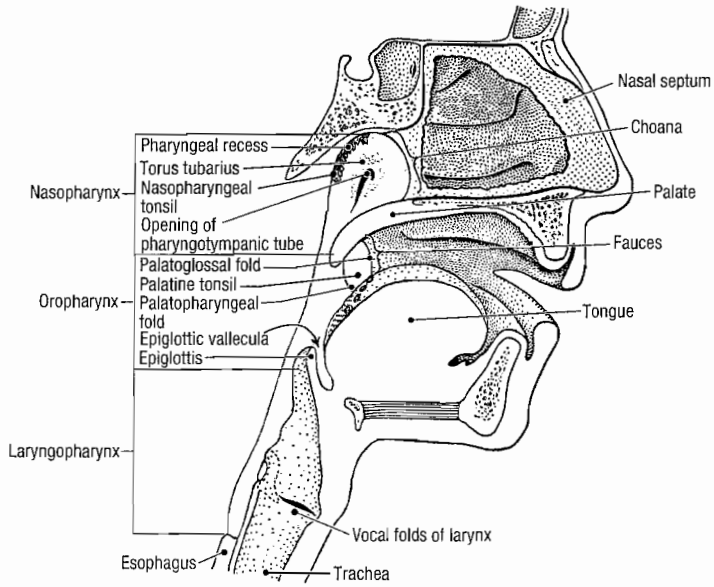


Figure 7.69. Regions of the pharynx.

7. In the oropharynx, identify the **palatoglossal fold**. The palatoglossal fold forms a dividing line between the oral cavity and the oropharynx. The transitional region between the right and left palatoglossal folds is called the **fauces**.
8. Identify the **palatopharyngeal fold**, which is posterior to the palatoglossal fold. The palatopharyngeal fold descends along the lateral wall of the oropharynx. Between the palatoglossal fold and the palatopharyngeal fold is the **palatine tonsil**. Use a mirror to identify the palatine tonsil on yourself.
9. The **laryngopharynx** lies posterior to the larynx. This portion of the pharynx extends from the epiglottis to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 7.69). **[G 770; N 62; R 161; C 552]**
10. In the midline of the laryngopharynx, identify the **epiglottis** and the **inlet (aditus) of the larynx**. Farther inferiorly, identify the **piriform recess**, which is lateral to the midline. The borders of the piriform recess are:
    - **Medial** – larynx
    - **Lateral** – thyroid cartilage
    - **Posterior** – inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle

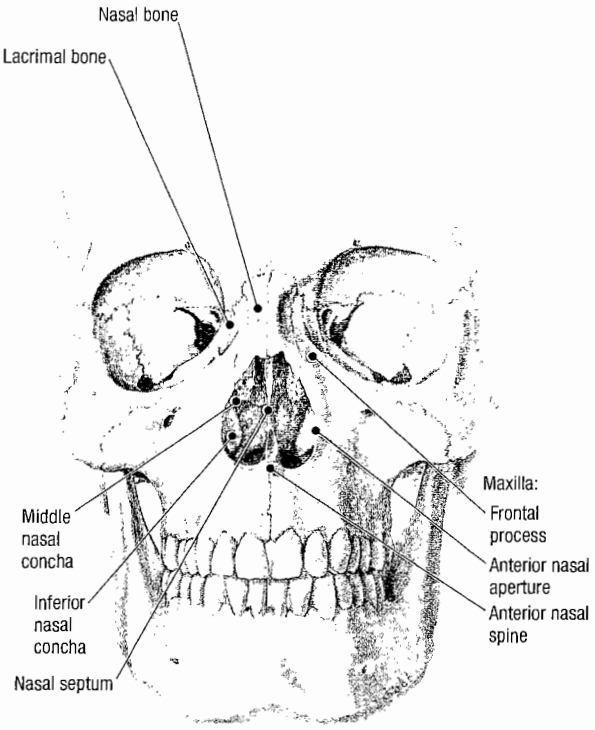


Figure 7.70. Skeleton of the nasal region.

After you dissect . . .

Review the attachments, innervation, and action of the pharyngeal constrictor muscles. Use a textbook description and the cadaver to review the pharyngeal plexus. Trace each of the following cranial nerves from the posterior cranial fossa to its area of distribution: glossopharyngeal (IX), vagus (X), accessory (XI), and hypoglossal (XII). Review the relationships of the contents of the carotid sheath.

NOSE AND NASAL CAVITY

Before you dissect . . .

The nostril (naris) is the anterior entrance to the nasal cavity. Posteriorly, the nasal cavity opens into the nasopharynx through the choanae. The nasal cavity is lined by mucosa that is attached directly to bones and cartilages. The bones and cartilages give the walls of the nasal cavity their characteristic shape. The superior 1/3 of the nasal mucosa is olfactory in nature and the remainder is respiratory in nature. The nasal mucosa is highly vascular and capable of engorgement.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The nose and nasal cartilages will be studied. The nasal septum will be examined and removed. The features of the lateral nasal wall will be studied. The openings of the paranasal sinuses will be identified. The maxillary sinus will be opened and examined.

SKELETON OF THE NASAL CAVITY

Refer to a skull. In an anterior view of the skull, identify (Fig. 7.70): **[G 589; N 2; R 26; C 480]**

- **Nasal bone**
- **Lacrimal bone**
- **Maxilla**
  - **Frontal process**
  - **Anterior nasal aperture**
  - **Anterior nasal spine**
- **Nasal septum** – bony part
- **Middle nasal concha** – part of the ethmoid bone
- **Inferior nasal concha**

Identify the following features of the lateral nasal wall (Fig. 7.71): **[G 681; N 34; R 48; C 523]**

- **Ethmoid bone**
  - **Cribriform plate**
  - **Superior nasal concha**
  - **Middle nasal concha**
- **Lacrimal bone**
- **Inferior nasal concha**
- **Maxilla**
  - **Palatine process**
  - **Incisive canal**
- **Sphenoid bone**
  - **Opening of the sphenoidal sinus**
  - **Sphenoidal sinus**
  - **Body**
  - **Medial plate of the pterygoid process**
  - **Lateral plate of the pterygoid process**
- **Palatine bone**
  - **Perpendicular plate**
  - **Horizontal plate**
- **Sphenopalatine foramen**

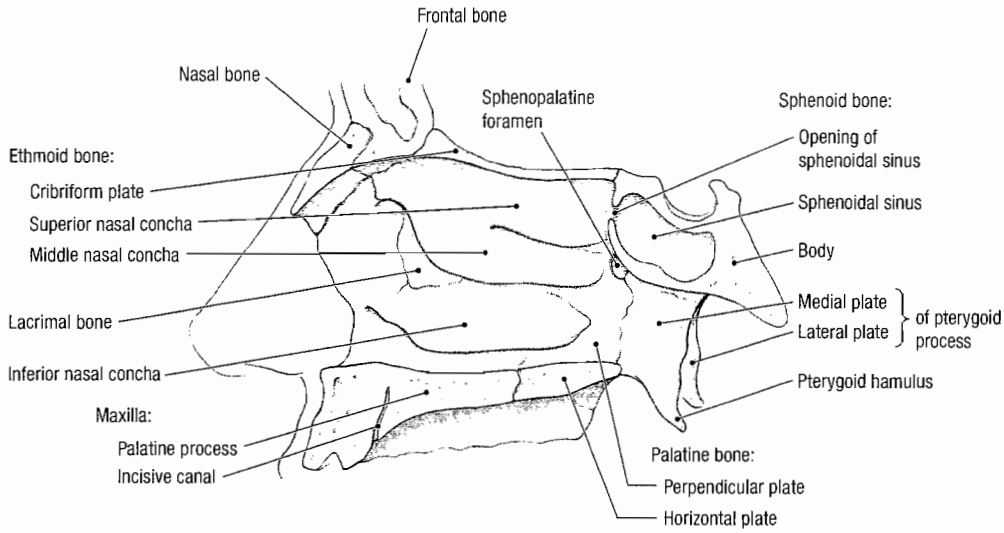


Figure 7.71. Skeleton of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.

Dissection Instructions

EXTERNAL NOSE [G 680; N 32; R 49; C 522]

1. On the cadaver, palpate the nasal bone. Inferior to the nasal bone palpate the **lateral nasal cartilage** (Fig. 7.72). The lateral nasal cartilage gives shape to the bridge of the nose.
2. The lateral nasal cartilage is an extension of the **septal cartilage**. The septal cartilage separates the right and left nasal cavities and forms the anterior part of the nasal septum.
3. Lateral to the septal cartilage is the **alar cartilage** (Fig. 7.72). The alar cartilage gives shape to the nostril.

NASAL CAVITY

1. The **boundaries of the nasal cavity** are:
   Roof – a narrow region bounded by the nasal septum and by parts of three other bones: nasal bone, cribriform plate of ethmoid bone, and sphenoid bone.
   Floor – palatine process of the maxilla and horizontal plate of the palatine bone
   Medial wall – nasal septum
   Lateral wall – maxilla, lacrimal bone, ethmoid bone, inferior nasal concha, and perpendicular plate of the palatine bone
2. In the cadaver, observe that the bones and cartilages of the nasal cavity are obscured by the mucosa that covers them. The vessels and nerves of the nasal cavity are contained within this mucosa.

NASAL SEPTUM [G 681; N 35; R 141; C 524]

1. Examine the half of the head that contains the **nasal septum**. Strip the mucosa completely off of the nasal septum and identify: **perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone**, **vomer**, and **septal cartilage** (Fig. 7.73).
2. Use a probe and forceps to remove the bony and cartilaginous parts of the nasal septum. Leave intact the mucosa that lines the other side of the nasal septum. In the mucosa of the nasal septum, identify the **nasopalatine nerve** and the **sphenopalatine artery**

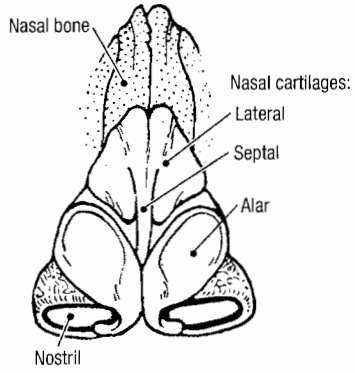


Figure 7.72. Cartilages of the external nose.

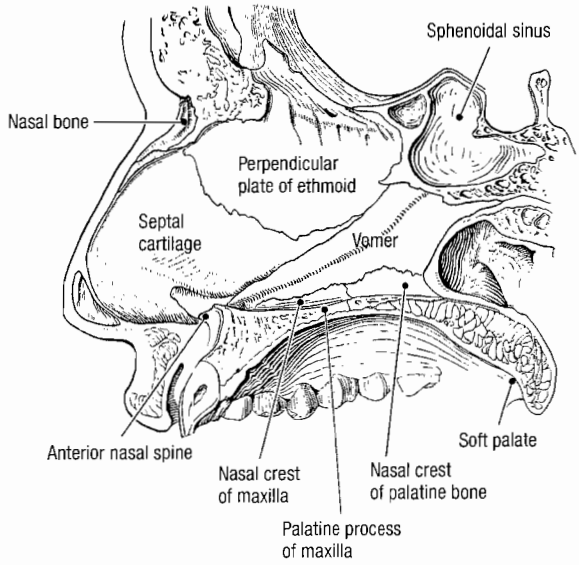


Figure 7.73. The nasal septum.

(Fig. 7.74). Note that the nasopalatine nerve and the sphenopalatine artery pass diagonally down the nasal septum from the sphenopalatine foramen to the incisive canal. In addition to the nasal septum, the nasopalatine nerve and sphenopalatine artery supply a portion of the oral mucosa that covers the hard palate.

3. Note that the mucosa near the cribriform plate is the **olfactory area** (Fig. 7.74). The olfactory area also extends down the lateral wall of the nasal cavity for a short distance.

LATERAL WALL OF THE NASAL CAVITY [G 684, 685; N 33; R 142, 143; C 525]

1. Remove the mucosa and remnants of the nasal septum.
2. Inspect the **lateral wall of the nasal cavity** (Fig. 7.75). Identify:
   - **Sphenoethmoidal recess** – above the superior concha
   - **Superior concha**
   - **Superior meatus** – inferior to the superior concha
   - **Middle concha**
   - **Middle meatus** – inferior to the middle concha
   - **Inferior concha**
   - **Inferior meatus** – inferior to the inferior concha
   - **Vestibule** – the area superior to the nostril and anterior to the inferior meatus
   - **Atrium** – the area superior to the vestibule and anterior to the middle meatus
3. Use scissors to remove the **inferior concha**. Use a probe and forceps to remove the mucosa from the lateral wall of the inferior meatus. Identify the opening of the **nasolacrimal duct** (Fig. 7.76).
4. Use scissors to remove the **middle concha**. In the middle meatus identify a curved slit, the **semilunar hiatus (hiatus semilunaris)** (Fig. 7.76). Posterior to the curvature of the semilunar hiatus identify the **ethmoidal bulla (bulla ethmoidalis)**.
5. Within the semilunar hiatus, identify (Fig. 7.76):
   - **Opening of the frontal sinus**

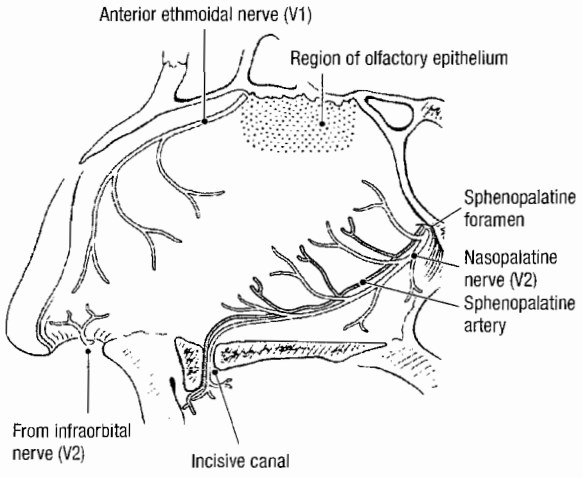


Figure 7.74. Nerve and arterial supply to the mucosa of the nasal septum.

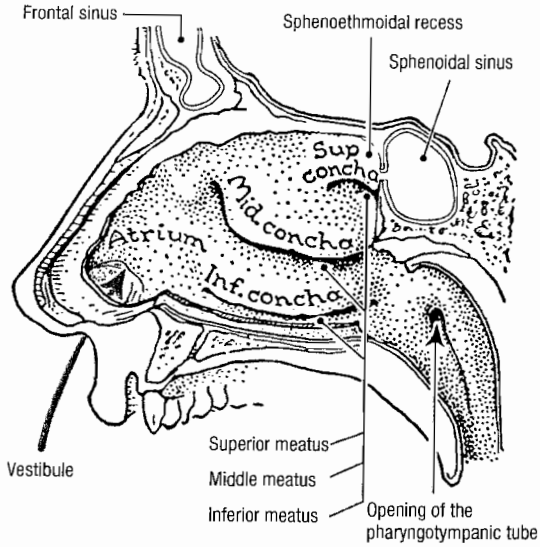


Figure 7.75. Conchae and meatuses of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.

   - **Opening of the anterior ethmoidal cells**
   - **Opening of the maxillary sinus**
6. Identify the **opening of the middle ethmoidal cells** on the summit of the ethmoidal bulla.
7. Identify the **opening of the posterior ethmoidal cells** in the superior meatus.
8. Identify the **opening of the sphenoidal sinus** in the sphenoethmoidal recess.
9. Examine the **sphenoidal sinus** (Fig. 7.76). The sphenoidal sinus is a paired structure that is lined by mucosa that is continuous with the mucosa of the nasal cavity. Note that the sphenoidal sinus lies directly inferior to the hypophyseal fossa and pituitary gland. **[G 687; N 44; R 142; C 528]**

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Sphenoidal Sinus

Surgical approaches to the pituitary gland take advantage of the fact that the sphenoidal sinus and nasal cavity provide a direct approach.

10. Note that the **ethmoidal cells** are located between the nasal cavity and the orbit (Figs. 7.77, 7.78). The ethmoidal cells may be observed from the superior perspective by reviewing the dissection of the orbit that was completed previously.
11. Use an illustration to study the **maxillary sinus** and note the following (Fig. 7.78):
    - The maxillary sinus is a three-sided pyramid with an average adult capacity of 15 ml.
    - The roof of the maxillary sinus is the floor of the orbit and the infraorbital nerve innervates the mucosa of the sinus.

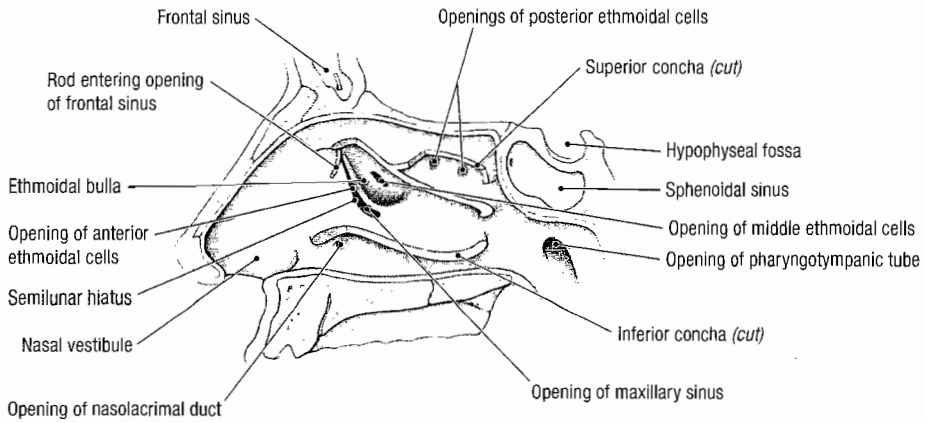


Figure 7.76. Openings in the lateral wall of the nasal cavity.

- The floor of the maxillary sinus is the alveolar process of the maxilla.
- The opening of the maxillary sinus is near its roof.
- The roots of the maxillary teeth may project into the maxillary sinus.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Maxillary Sinus

When the head is in the upright position, the maxillary sinus cannot drain. If infections of the maxillary sinus persist, to promote drainage an opening is surgically created through the inferior meatus near the floor of the maxillary sinus.

When the roots of maxillary teeth project into the maxillary sinus, they are covered only by mucosa. During extraction of a maxillary molar or premolar tooth, the mucosa superior to the projecting root may be torn. As a result, a fistula may be formed between the oral cavity and the maxillary sinus.

HARD PALATE AND SOFT PALATE

Before you dissect . . .

The palate forms the floor of the nasal cavity and the roof of the oral cavity. The palate consists of two portions: the **hard palate** forms the anterior 2/3 and the **soft palate** constitutes the posterior 1/3. The palate is covered by nasal mucosa on its superior surface and oral mucosa on its inferior surface. Numerous mucous glands (**palatine glands**) are present on the oral surface of the palate.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The mucosal folds of the inner pharyngeal wall will be reviewed. The mucosa will be stripped from the inner surface of the pharynx and the muscles that constitute the inner longitudinal muscle layer will be examined. Muscles that move the soft palate will then be studied. The nerves and blood vessels of the palate will be identified. The palatine canal and pterygopalatine fossa will be dissected from the medial aspect. The pterygopalatine ganglion will be dissected. The nerves and vessels of the nasal cavity and palate will be summarized.

After you dissect . . .

Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the features of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. Review the relationship of the paranasal sinuses to the orbit, anterior cranial fossa, and nasal cavity. Review the drainage point of each paranasal sinus.

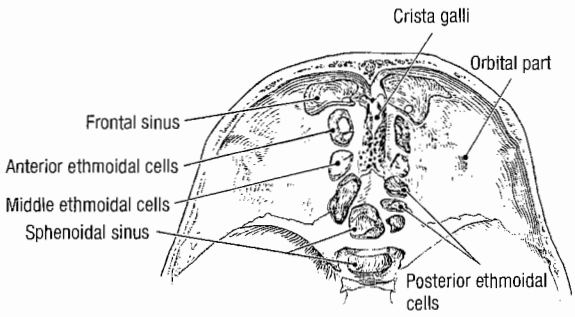


Figure 7.77. Ethmoidal cells in superior view.

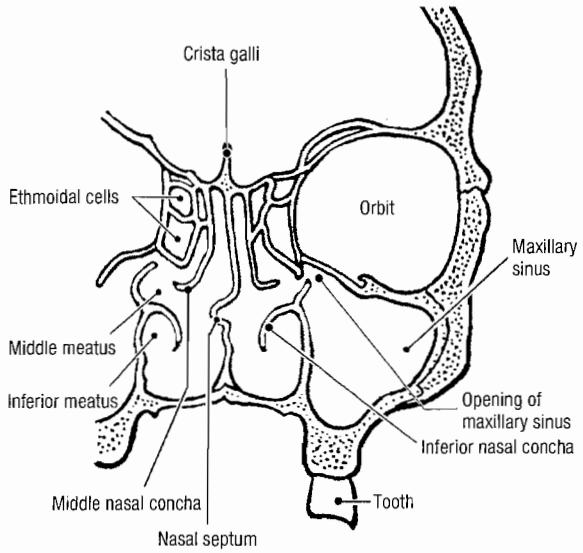


Figure 7.78. Relationship of the maxillary sinus to the orbit and nasal cavity.

SKELETON OF THE PALATE

Refer to a skull. From an inferior view, identify (Fig. 7.79): **[G 672; N 8; R 45; C 544]**

- **Maxilla**
  - **Incisive foramen**
  - **Alveolar process**
  - **Palatine process**
- **Palatine bone**
  - **Horizontal plate**
  - **Greater palatine foramen**
  - **Lesser palatine foramina**
  - **Posterior nasal spine**
- **Sphenoid bone**
  - **Hamulus of the medial plate of the pterygoid process**
  - **Medial plate of the pterygoid process**
  - **Lateral plate of the pterygoid process**
  - **Scaphoid fossa**
  - **Pterygoid canal**

In the infratemporal fossa, identify (Fig. 7.80): **[G 655; N 4; C 503]**

- **Inferior orbital fissure**
- **Sphenopalatine foramen**
- **Pterygopalatine fossa**
- **Pterygomaxillary fissure**

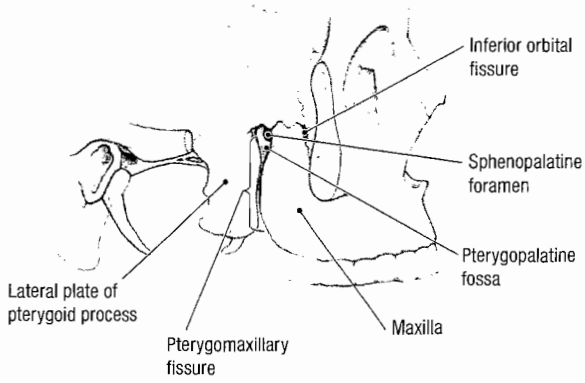


Figure 7.80. Entry to the pterygopalatine fossa and nasal cavity from the infratemporal fossa.

Dissection Instructions

SOFT PALATE

1. Review the mucosal features of the inner pharyngeal wall (Fig. 7.81): **[G 774, 775; N 60; R 142; C 531]**
   - **Torus tubarius**
   - **Opening of the pharyngotympanic tube**
   - **Salpingopalatine fold**
   - **Salpingopharyngeal fold**
   - **Palatoglossal fold**
   - **Palatopharyngeal fold**
2. Examine the cut edge of the **soft palate** and observe (Fig. 7.81):
   - The thickness of the soft palate is partly due to the presence of palatine glands.
   - The strength of the soft palate is due to the palatine aponeurosis.
   - The mobility of the soft palate is due to muscles that attach to its posterior 2/3.
3. Remove the mucosa from the palatopharyngeal fold and identify the **palatopharyngeus muscle** (Fig. 7.82). The superior attachments of the palatopharyngeus muscle are the hard palate and palatine aponeurosis and its inferior attachments are the thyroid cartilage and pharyngeal wall. The palatopharyngeus muscle elevates the larynx during swallowing.

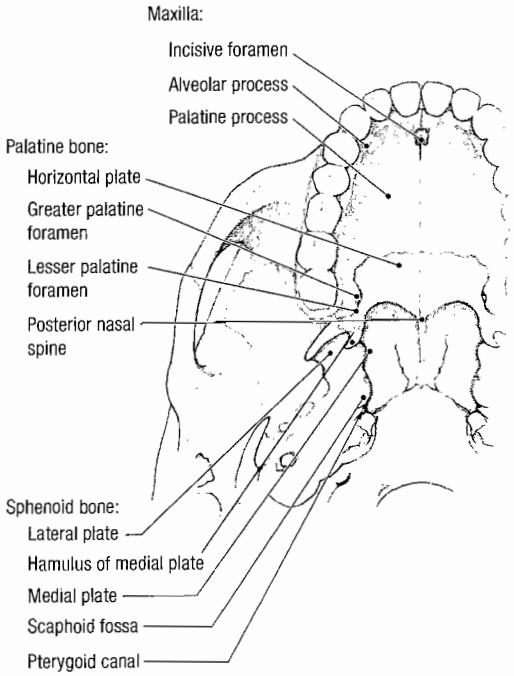


Figure 7.79. Skeleton of the palate, inferior view.

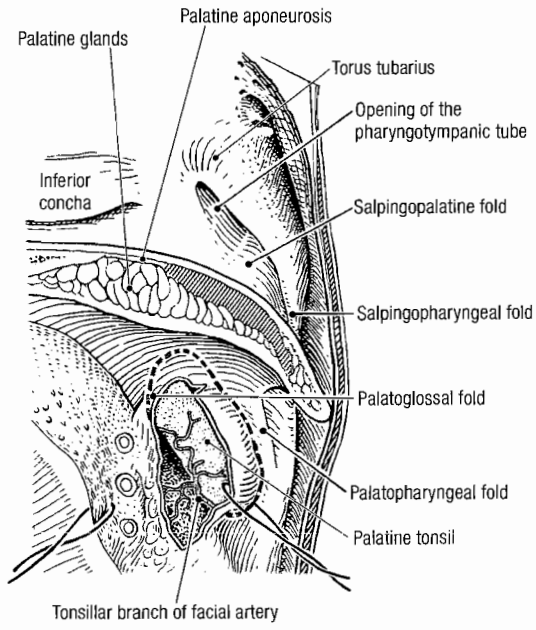


Figure 7.81. Mucosal folds in the pharynx.

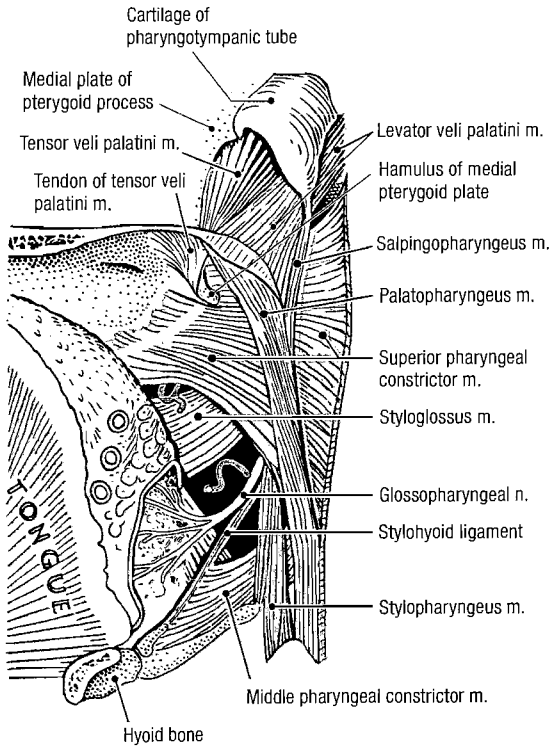


Figure 7.82. Muscles of the pharyngeal wall, internal view. Bed of the palatine tonsil.

4. Remove the mucosa from the salpingopharyngeal fold and identify the **salpingopharyngeus muscle** (Fig. 7.82). The superior attachment of the salpingopharyngeus muscle is the cartilage of the pharyngotympanic tube. Its distal attachments and action are the same as the palatopharyngeus muscle, with which it blends. Note that the palatopharyngeus and salpingopharyngeus muscles contribute to the inner longitudinal muscle layer of the pharynx.
5. Remove the remaining mucosa from the inner surface of the nasopharynx and oropharynx. Identify the **stylopharyngeus muscle**, which enters the pharynx between the superior and middle pharyngeal constrictor muscles (Fig. 7.82). The stylopharyngeus muscle lies anterior and parallel to the palatopharyngeus and salpingopharyngeus muscles.
6. The gap between the superior border of the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle and the base of the skull is closed by the **pharyngobasilar fascia**. Passing through this gap are the **pharyngotympanic tube** and the **levator veli palatini muscle** (Fig. 7.82).
7. The **pharyngotympanic tube (auditory tube)** connects the nasopharynx to the tympanic cavity. The distal 2/3 of the pharyngotympanic tube is cartilaginous and the proximal 1/3 passes through the temporal bone.
8. Remove the mucosa from the **salpingopalatine fold** and identify the **levator veli palatini muscle** (Fig. 7.82). The superior attachments of the levator veli palatini muscle are the cartilage of the pharyngotympanic tube and the adjacent part of the temporal bone. Its distal attachment is the palatine aponeurosis of the soft palate. The levator veli palatini muscle elevates the soft palate.
9. Remove the mucosa from the posterior border of the **medial plate of the pterygoid process** (Fig. 7.82). Identify the **tensor veli palatini muscle**, which lies lateral to the medial plate. The superior attachment of the tensor veli palatini muscle is the **scaphoid fossa**. The belly of the tensor veli palatini muscle is located between the medial and lateral plates of the pterygoid process and its tendon turns medially around the **hamulus of the medial pterygoid plate** to attach to the palatine aponeurosis. The tensor veli palatini muscle tenses the soft palate. Palpate the hamulus and find the tendon of the tensor veli palatini muscle.
10. Six muscles of the soft palate and pharynx are innervated by the vagus nerve via the pharyngeal plexus: salpingopharyngeus, levator veli palatini, palatoglossus, palatopharyngeus, glossopharyngeus, and musculus uvulae. The tensor veli palatini muscle is innervated by the mandibular nerve (V_3).
11. To remove the mucosa from the hard palate, use a probe to raise the mucosa on the inferior surface of the hard palate where it was cut during head bisection. Grasp the mucosa with your fingers and peel it from medial to lateral. Detach the mucosa along the medial side of the alveolar process of the maxilla. **[G 673; N 48; R 145; C 531]**
12. Identify the **greater palatine nerve** and **vessels** where they emerge from the **greater palatine foramen** (Fig. 7.83). Use blunt dissection to follow the greater palatine nerve anteriorly. Note that the **nasopalatine nerve** supplies the mucosa over the anterior part of the hard palate.
13. Posterior to the greater palatine nerve, identify the **lesser palatine nerve** and use blunt dissection to follow it to the soft palate.

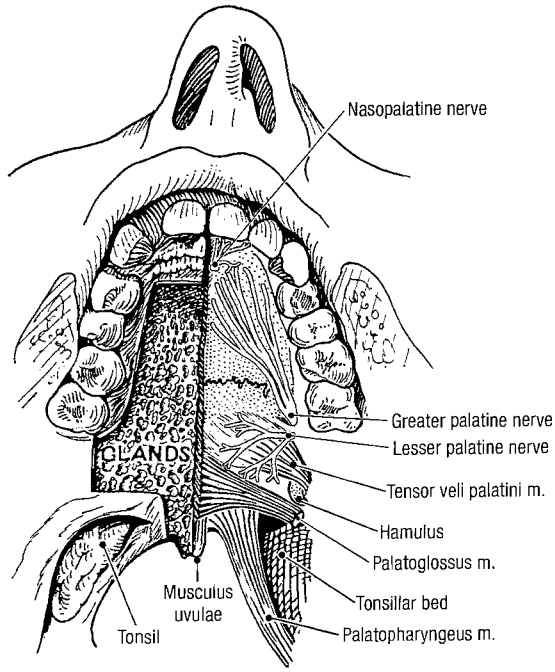


Figure 7.83. Nerves of the hard and soft palate.

TONSILLAR BED [G 776; N 60; R 145; C 531]

1. Identify the **palatine tonsil** (Fig. 7.81). The palatine tonsil is located in the triangular interval between the **palatoglossal fold** and the **palatopharyngeal fold**. In older individuals, the palatine tonsil may be inconspicuous or absent.
2. Use blunt dissection to remove the mucosa from the palatoglossal fold and identify the **palatoglossus muscle**, which lies within the fold. The superior attachment of the palatoglossus muscle is the palatine aponeurosis and its inferior attachment is the lateral side of the tongue. The palatoglossus muscle elevates the tongue and depresses the soft palate.
3. If the cadaver has a palatine tonsil, use blunt dissection to remove it (Fig. 7.81). Section the tonsil and observe the **crypts** that extend into its surface.
4. Remove the mucosa from the **tonsillar bed** (Fig. 7.82). The tonsillar bed is bounded anteriorly by the palatoglossal fold and posteriorly by the palatopharyngeal fold. The **styloglossus muscle** and the **glossopharyngeal nerve** pass deep to the tonsillar bed.
5. The superior attachment of the **styloglossus muscle** is the styloid process and its inferior attachment is the lateral side of the tongue. The styloglossus muscle retracts the tongue and draws it superiorly. The styloglossus muscle is innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (XII).
6. The **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)** passes between the superior and the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscles to enter the tonsillar bed. The glossopharyngeal nerve innervates the mucosa of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue and the posterior wall of the pharynx.

SPHENOPALATINE FORAMEN AND PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA [G 673; N 38; R 145; C 527]

1. Do not dissect the arterial network of the lateral nasal wall, but use an illustration to study the following branches of the **sphenopalatine artery**:
   - **Posterior lateral nasal artery** – to the lateral nasal wall
   - **Posterior septal branch** – to the nasal septum
2. Remove the mucosa from the posterior part of the lateral nasal wall.
3. Use a probe to locate the **sphenopalatine foramen** (Fig. 7.84). Insert a probe into the sphenopalatine foramen and direct it inferiorly toward the greater palatine foramen. Pull the probe medially to break open the medial wall of the greater palatine canal.
4. Identify the **greater palatine nerve**, the **lesser palatine nerve**, and the **descending palatine artery** in the greater palatine canal (Fig. 7.85). The descending palatine artery is one of the terminal branches of the maxillary artery.
5. At the inferior end of the greater palatine canal, use a fine probe to separate the nerves and vessels. Note that the descending palatine artery divides to give rise to the **greater palatine artery** and the **lesser palatine artery**.

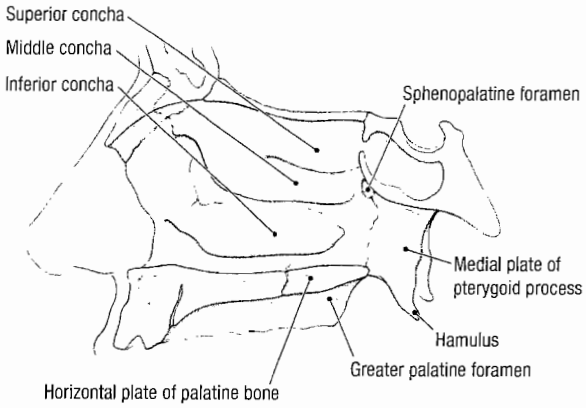


Figure 7.84. Skeleton of the lateral nasal wall.

6. Place the fine probe between the greater palatine nerve and the lesser palatine nerve and slide it superiorly until it stops. This is the inferior extent of the **pterygopalatine ganglion** (Fig. 7.85).
7. The **nerve of the pterygoid canal** enters the pterygopalatine fossa from posteriorly. To find it, remove the mucosa from the floor of the sphenoidal sinus. Observe the ridge in the floor of the sphenoidal sinus that is produced by the pterygoid canal (Fig. 7.85). Use a probe to break open the pterygoid canal and identify the nerve of the pterygoid canal.
8. Follow the nerve of the pterygoid canal anteriorly toward the pterygopalatine ganglion. The nerve of the pterygoid canal contains preganglionic parasympathetic axons from the greater petrosal nerve and postganglionic sympathetic axons from the deep petrosal nerve.

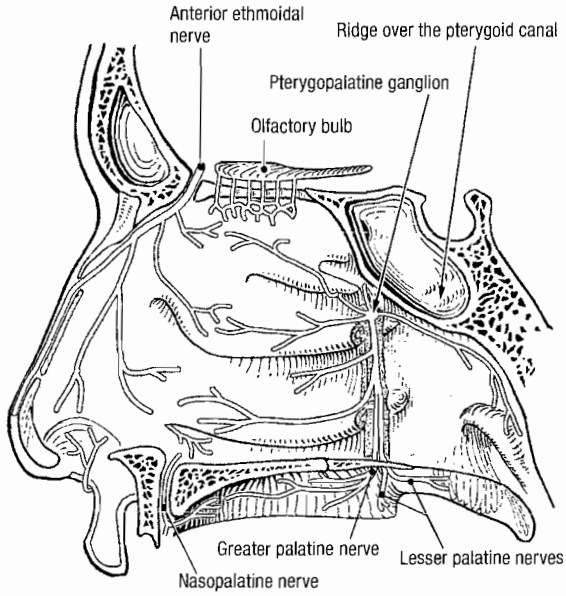


Figure 7.85. Nerve supply to the mucosa of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. Pterygopalatine ganglion.

9. Turn the specimen and approach it from the lateral aspect. Deep in the **infratemporal fossa** identify: [G 659; N 65; R 80; C 478]
   - **Maxillary artery** – courses deeply toward the pterygomaxillary fissure. The maxillary artery gives off the **descending palatine artery**, the **sphenopalatine artery**, and the **infraorbital artery** at this location. Note that the sphenopalatine artery passes first through the pterygopalatine fossa and then through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity. The descending palatine artery enters the greater palatine canal where it was dissected from the medial side. The infraorbital artery passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the infraorbital canal and emerge on the face at the infraorbital foramen.
   - **Maxillary nerve (V_2)** – courses from the foramen rotundum to the inferior orbital fissure. The maxillary nerve passes through the pterygopalatine fossa and gives off pterygopalatine branches that will form the greater and lesser palatine nerves.
   - **Pterygopalatine ganglion** – attached to the maxillary nerve by two pterygopalatine branches. The pterygopalatine ganglion is the location for synapse of preganglionic axons of the facial nerve that course first in the greater petrosal nerve and then in the nerve of the pterygoid canal. Postganglionic axons that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion distribute with branches of the maxillary nerve. The pterygopalatine ganglion stimulates secretion from the mucosa of the nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, nasopharynx, roof of the mouth and soft palate. The pterygopalatine ganglion also stimulates the lacrimal gland.

After you dissect . . .

Use the dissected specimen and an illustration to reconstruct the branching pattern of the maxillary nerve. Use a skull and the dissected specimen to follow the maxillary nerve from the trigeminal ganglion through the foramen rotundum, pterygopalatine fossa, and inferior orbital fissure to the infraorbital groove. Review the distribution of the following branches of the maxillary nerve: greater palatine, lesser palatine, nasopalatine, and infraorbital nerves. Return to the carotid triangle of the neck and follow the external carotid artery superiorly into the infratemporal fossa. Review the origin of the maxillary artery and its course through the infratemporal fossa. Review all branches of the maxillary artery that you dissected previously. Use an illustration to review the four terminal branches of the maxillary artery (posterior superior alveolar, infraorbital, descending palatine, and sphenopalatine) and use the dissected specimen to review these branches where you have dissected them. Review the muscles that move the soft palate. State their attachments and actions. Review the pharyngeal wall, placing the pharyngeal constrictor muscles, the muscles of the soft palate, and the mucosa into the correct layers. Review the pharyngeal plexus on the posterior surface of the pharynx and recall its role in innervation of the pharyngeal mucosa and the muscles of the pharynx and soft palate. Use the dissected specimen and an illustration to review the course of the glossopharyngeal nerve from the jugular foramen to the posterior 1/3 of the tongue.

ORAL REGION

Before you dissect . . .

The **oral region** includes the oral cavity and its contents (teeth, gums, and tongue), the palate, and the part of the oropharynx that contains the palatine tonsils. The palate and palatine tonsils have been dissected previously. The **oral cavity** consists of the **oral vestibule** and the **oral cavity proper**. The oral vestibule is bounded externally by the lips and cheeks and internally by the teeth and gums. The oral cavity proper is the area between the alveolar arches and teeth. The largest content of the oral cavity proper is the tongue.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The superficial features of the oral region will be examined on a living person. On the cadaver, the tongue will be inspected, then the tongue and mandible will be bisected in the midline. The intrinsic muscles of the tongue will be inspected. The sublingual region will be studied and the dissection of the deep part of the submandibular gland will be completed. Finally, the extrinsic muscles of the tongue will be studied.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF THE ORAL VESTIBULE [N 47; C 530]

Use a mirror to examine your mouth and a clean finger to palpate the following structures through the mucosa that lines your oral vestibule:

- **Zygomatic bone** – its inferior border
- **Maxilla**
  - **Anterior (facial) surface**
  - **Infratemporal surface**
  - **Alveolar process**
- **Mandible**
  - **Coronoid process** and the **tendon of the temporalis muscle**
  - **Alveolar process**
- **Masseter muscle** – best palpated when the teeth are clenched
- **Communication between the oral vestibule and the oral cavity proper** – posterior to the third molar tooth

Turn down your lower lip and lift your upper lip. Identify the **frenulum** in the midline of each lip.

Examine the inner surface of your cheek. Identify the **opening of the parotid duct** located lateral to the 2nd maxillary molar tooth.

SURFACE ANATOMY OF THE ORAL CAVITY PROPER

Observe the borders of your oral cavity:

- **Lateral and anterior** -- the teeth and gums
- **Superior** – the hard palate
- **Inferior** – the mucosa covering the tongue and sublingual area
- **Posterior** – the palatoglossal folds (right and left)

In your oral cavity, identify:

- **Tongue**
  - **Body**
  - **Apex**
  - **Median sulcus**
- **Sublingual area**
  - **Frenulum of the tongue (sublingual frenulum)**

Sublingual fold (plica sublingualis)
Sublingual caruncle
Opening of submandibular duct – on the sublingual caruncle
Deep lingual veins – seen on either side of the frenulum of the tongue

Dissection Instructions

TONGUE [G 666; N 54; R 147; C 539]

1. Inspect the **tongue** in the cadaver specimen. Identify (Fig. 7.86):
   - **Root** – the posterior 1/3
   - **Body** – the anterior 2/3
   - **Apex**
   - **Dorsum**
     Foramen cecum – in the midline at the point of the terminal sulcus
     Terminal sulcus (sulcus terminalis) – divides the anterior 2/3 from the posterior 1/3
     Lingual tonsil – posterior to the terminal sulcus
     Lingual papillae – four types: vallate, filiform, fungiform, and foliate
     Median sulcus
2. Note that the **body of the tongue** lies horizontally in the oral cavity and the **root of the tongue** lies more vertically. The root of the tongue constitutes the anterior wall of the oropharynx.
3. At the root of the tongue, identify the **median glossoepiglottic fold**, a midline fold of mucosa that runs from the dorsum of the tongue to the **epiglottis** (Fig. 7.86). More laterally, identify the **lateral glossoepiglottic fold**, one on each side. Between these folds is a depression called the **epiglottic vallecula**.

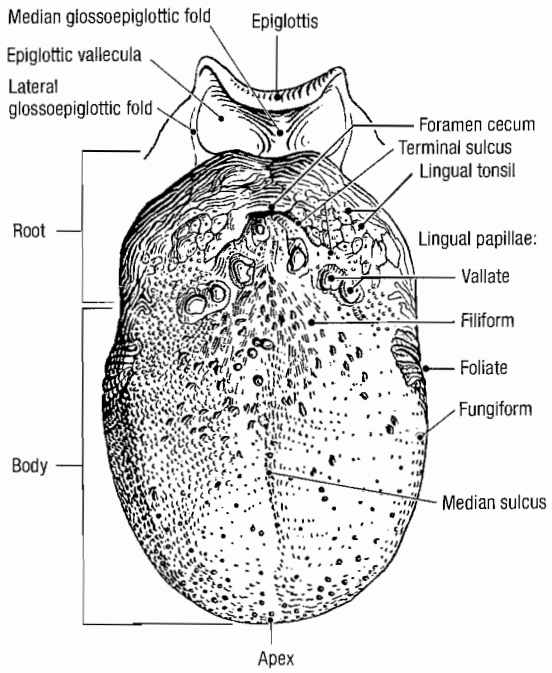


Figure 7.86. Dorsum of the tongue.

BISECTION OF THE MANDIBLE AND FLOOR OF THE MOUTH

1. Use a new scalpel blade. Turn the specimen to expose the submental triangle.
2. Use the scalpel to split the **mylohyoid muscles** along their median raphe. Use a probe to separate the mylohyoid muscles from deeper structures.
3. Identify the **geniohyoid muscle**, which is deep to the mylohyoid muscle. The anterior attachment of the geniohyoid muscle is the inferior mental spine of the mandible and its posterior attachment is the body of the hyoid bone. The geniohyoid muscle pulls the hyoid bone anteriorly.
4. Use blunt dissection to separate the geniohyoid muscles in the midline. Use a saw to cut through the mandible in the median plane. Do not allow the saw to pass between the geniohyoid muscles on the deep side of the mandible.
5. Do not bisect the epiglottis, the hyoid bone or the larynx at this time. Use a scalpel to bisect the tongue in the median plane, beginning at the apex and proceeding toward the epiglottis. Cut as far inferiorly as the hyoid bone.

SUBLINGUAL REGION [G 743; N 47; R 151; C 532]

1. On the sectioned surface of the tongue, identify the **genioglossus muscle**. The anterior attachment of the genioglossus muscle is the superior mental spine of the mandible and its posterior attachments are the hyoid bone and the tongue. The genioglossus muscle protrudes the tongue.
2. Use the cadaver specimen to review the sublingual features that were identified in your oral cavity:
   - **Frenulum of the tongue**
   - **Sublingual fold**
   - **Sublingual caruncle**
   - **Opening of the submandibular duct**
3. Use a probe to incise the mucous membrane between the sublingual fold and mandible. Start the incision at the frenulum of the tongue and stop near the 2nd mandibular molar tooth. Use a probe and forceps to peel the mucosa laterally and medially.
4. Identify the **sublingual gland** immediately deep to the mucosa (Fig. 7.87). The sublingual gland rests on the mylohyoid muscle. The sublingual gland has about 12 small ducts that drain along the summit of the sublingual fold.
5. Use a probe to dissect along the medial side of the sublingual gland and find the **submandibular duct** (Fig. 7.87). Follow the submandibular duct anteriorly to its opening on the sublingual caruncle. Use a probe to trace the submandibular duct posteriorly to the **deep part of the submandibular gland**. Note that the submandibular gland is folded around the posterior border of the mylohyoid muscle.

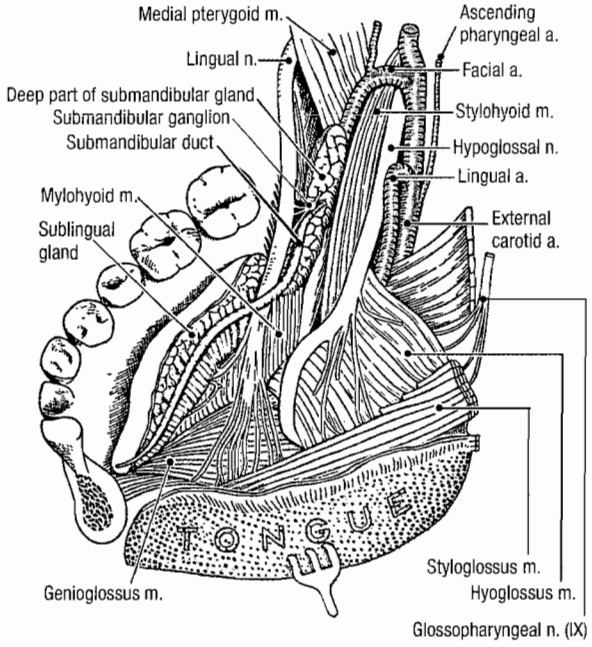


Figure 7.87. Dissection of the sublingual region (right side).

6. Turn the specimen to expose the infratemporal fossa. Find the **lingual nerve** and trace it into the sublingual region. Observe that the lingual nerve passes lateral, inferior, and medial to the submandibular duct (Fig. 7.87). The lingual nerve has several branches that supply the mucosa of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue with general sensation and taste fibers. **[G 743; N 57; R 151; C 537]**
7. Near the third mandibular molar tooth, identify the **submandibular ganglion** that is suspended from the lingual nerve by two short branches. Read a text book description of the parasympathetic function of the submandibular ganglion.
8. Turn the specimen so that the submandibular triangle is exposed. Find the **hypoglossal nerve (XII)** and use a probe to trace it into the sublingual region. Note that the hypoglossal nerve passes between the submandibular gland and the hyoglossus muscle (Fig. 7.87). Observe that both the hypoglossal nerve and the lingual nerve pass between the hyoglossus muscle and the mylohyoid muscle to enter the sublingual region. The course of the hypoglossal nerve is inferior to the course of the lingual nerve.
9. From the lateral perspective, define the attachment of the mylohyoid muscle to the hyoid bone. Use scissors to detach the mylohyoid muscle from the hyoid bone and reflect the muscle superiorly.
10. Identify the **hyoglossus muscle**, which is deep to the mylohyoid muscle (Fig. 7.88). The inferior attachments of the hyoglossus muscle are the body and greater horn of the hyoid bone and its superior attachment is the side of the tongue. The hyoglossus muscle depresses and retracts the tongue.
11. Near the superior end of the hyoglossus muscle, identify the **styloglossus muscle** (Fig. 7.88). The proximal attachment of the styloglossus muscle is the styloid process and its distal attachment is the side of the tongue. The styloglossus muscle retracts the tongue and draws it superiorly. **[G 746; N 55]**
12. Return to the carotid triangle and locate the **lingual artery** where it arises from the external carotid artery (Fig. 7.88). Follow the lingual artery until it passes medial to the hyoglossus muscle. Do not follow the lingual artery into the tongue. Use an illustration to study the branches of the lingual artery.
13. On one side only, make a transverse section through the body of the tongue. On the cut surface, note the **intrinsic muscles of the tongue** consisting of **vertical, transverse, superior longitudinal**, and **inferior longitudinal fibers. [G 669; N 56; R 147; C 540]**
14. The intrinsic muscles of the tongue and the extrinsic muscles of the tongue (styloglossus, genioglossus, and hyoglossus) are innervated by the **hypoglossal nerve (XII)**.

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Hypoglossal Nerve

The genioglossus muscle protrudes the tongue. If one genioglossus muscle does not function (hypoglossal nerve dysfunction on that side), the tongue cannot be protruded in the midline. The functional side of the tongue protrudes normally and side with the dysfunctional nerve is protruded less or not at all. Therefore, in testing for hypoglossal nerve lesions, the protruded tongue deviates toward the side of the nerve lesion.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the tongue in its correct anatomical position. Review the surface features of the tongue. Review the innervation of the lingual mucosa. Follow the submandibular duct from the submandibular triangle to the sublingual caruncle. Trace the lingual nerve from the infratemporal fossa to the tongue. Note the relationship of the lingual nerve to the submandibular duct, hyoglossus muscle, and mylohyoid muscle. Review the chorda tympani and the role that it plays in sensory innervation of the

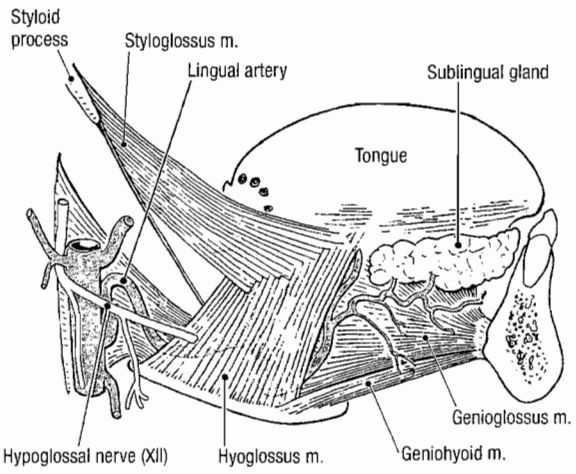


Figure 7.88. Blood supply to the tongue from a lateral view.

tongue and parasympathetic innervation of the submandibular and sublingual glands. Locate the submandibular ganglion and state its function. Trace the hypoglossal nerve from the base of the skull to the tongue, noting its relationships to arteries and muscles. Organize the muscles of the tongue into extrinsic and intrinsic groupings and state the attachments, innervation, and action of each extrinsic muscle. Use an illustration and the dissected specimen to review the origin and course of the facial and lingual arteries.

LARYNX

Before you dissect . . .

The larynx is contained in the visceral part of the neck. The thyroid gland lies anterior to it and the pharynx posterior to it. The larynx is the entrance to the airway and it contains the **glottis**, a valve that serves the dual function of controlling the airway and producing sound during phonation. The *intrinsic* muscles of the larynx control the glottis. The *extrinsic* muscles of the larynx (infrahyoid muscles, suprahyoid muscles, and stylopharyngeus muscle) control the position of the larynx in the neck. Usually, the larynx is located at vertebral levels C3-C6.

The order of dissection will be as follows: Illustrations and models will be used to study the cartilages of the larynx. Dissection of the larynx involves removal of the mucous membrane and identification of the underlying muscles. First, the mucosa will be removed from the posterior part of the larynx to expose two intrinsic muscles. One lamina of the thyroid cartilage will then be reflected to expose the remaining intrinsic muscles. The larynx will be opened and the mucosal features will be studied. Finally, the nerves to the larynx will be reviewed.

SKELETON OF THE LARYNX [G 778; N 73; R 156; C 558]

The **skeleton of the larynx** is responsible for maintaining a patent airway. It consists of a series of articulating cartilages that are united by membranes. Use an illustration and a model of the larynx to study the cartilages and membranes (Fig. 7.89). Identify:

- **Epiglottic cartilage** – an unpaired, heart-shaped cartilage that lies posterior to the tongue and hyoid bone. The **stalk** of the epiglottic cartilage is attached within the angle formed by the thyroid laminae.
- **Thyrohyoid membrane** – connects the superior border of the thyroid cartilage to the hyoid bone. When the suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles move the hyoid bone, the larynx also moves.
- **Thyroid cartilage** – formed by two **laminae** that are joined in the anterior midline to form the **laryngeal prominence**. The **superior horn** of the thyroid cartilage projects superiorly. The **inferior horn** of the thyroid cartilage articulates with the cricoid cartilage through the **cricothyroid joint**.
- **Cricoid cartilage** – shaped like a ring (G. *krikos*, ring). Its **lamina** is a broad, flat area that is positioned posteriorly and its **arch** is located anteriorly.

The **arytenoid cartilages** are situated on the superior border of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage. Each arytenoid cartilage is pyramid-shaped and articulates with the cricoid cartilage through a synovial joint. Each arytenoid cartilage has a **muscular process** for attachment of intrinsic laryngeal muscles and a **vocal process** for attachment of the vocal ligament. The arytenoid cartilages are capable of several movements:

- Tilting anteriorly and posteriorly
- Sliding toward each other (adduction)
- Sliding away from each other (abduction)
- Rotation

Use an illustration to identify the **vocal ligaments** (Fig. 7.89). The posterior end of each vocal ligament is attached to the vocal process of an arytenoid cartilage. The anterior end of each vocal ligament is attached to the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage at the angle formed by the laminae.

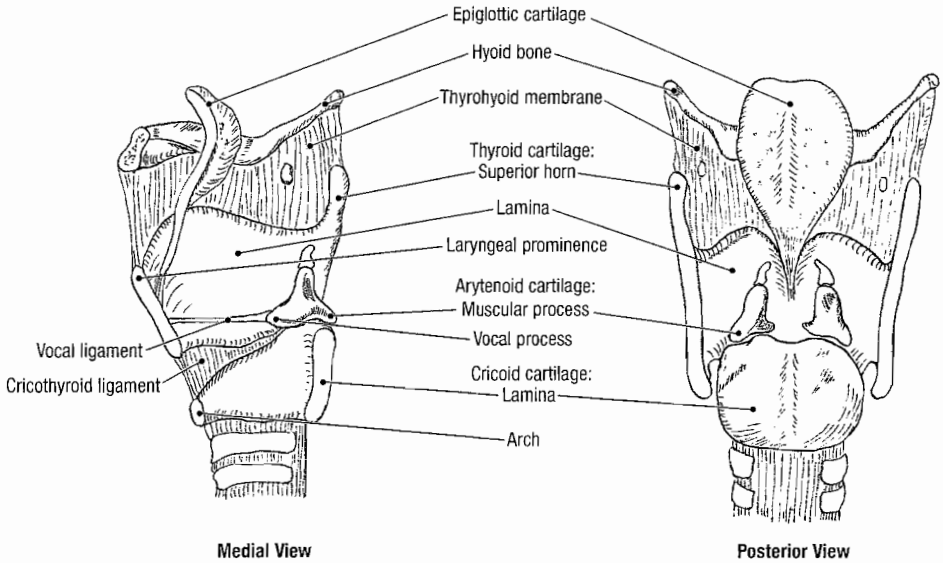


Figure 7.89. Cartilages of the larynx.

Dissection Instructions

INTRINSIC MUSCLES OF THE LARYNX [G 784, 785; N 74; R 158; C 560, 561]

1. Review the external features of the larynx that have been dissected previously:
   - Infrahyoid muscles
     - Sternohyoid muscle
     - Omohyoid muscle
     - Sternothyroid muscle
     - Thyrohyoid muscle
   - Internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve
   - Superior laryngeal artery
   - External branch of the superior laryngeal nerve
2. On the external surface of the larynx, identify the **cricothyroid muscle**. The proximal attachment of the cricothyroid muscle is the lateral surface of the cricoid cartilage and its distal attachment is the inferior margin of the thyroid cartilage. The cricothyroid muscle tilts the thyroid cartilage anteriorly which lengthens the vocal fold. The cricothyroid muscle is innervated by the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve.
3. To expose the posterior surface of the larynx, push the head forward and allow the chin to rest on the thoracic wall.
4. Palpate the **lamina of the cricoid cartilage**. Lateral to the lamina identify the **piriform recess**.
5. Remove the mucosa from the piriform recess. Immediately deep to the mucosa identify the **internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve** and the **inferior laryngeal nerve** (Fig. 7.90).
6. Use a probe to strip the mucosa from the lamina of the cricoid cartilage and expose the **posterior cricoarytenoid muscle** (Fig. 7.90). The proximal attachment of the posterior cricoarytenoid muscle is the posterior surface of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage and its distal attachment is the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage. The posterior cricoarytenoid muscle causes the arytenoid cartilage to rotate, moving the vocal process laterally (abduction of the vocal folds).
7. Superior to the posterior cricoarytenoid muscle identify the **arytenoid muscle** (Fig. 7.90). The arytenoid muscle attaches to both arytenoid cartilages. Observe that the arytenoid muscle has **transverse fibers** and **oblique fibers**. The arytenoid muscle slides the arytenoid cartilages together (adduction of the vocal folds).
8. The **cricothyroid joint** is a synovial joint that is reinforced by short ligaments. Observe that the recurrent laryngeal nerve enters the larynx by passing posterior to the cricothyroid joint. At this point, the name of the recurrent laryngeal nerve changes to **inferior laryngeal nerve**.
9. On the left side only, cut through the cricothyroid ligaments and disarticulate the cricothyroid joint. Use scissors to cut the left lamina of the thyroid cartilage about 8 mm to the left of the midline. Reflect the thyroid lamina inferiorly. It should remain attached to the cricoid cartilage by the cricothyroid muscle.
10. Deep to the thyroid lamina, identify the **lateral cricoarytenoid muscle** (Fig. 7.90). The inferior attachment of the lateral cricoarytenoid muscle is the arch of the cricoid cartilage and its superior attachment is the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage. The lateral cricoarytenoid muscle causes the arytenoid cartilage to rotate, moving the vocal process medially (adduction of the vocal fold).
11. Identify the **thyroarytenoid muscle**, which is located superior to the lateral cricoarytenoid muscle (Fig. 7.90). The anterior attachment of the thyroarytenoid muscle is the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage and

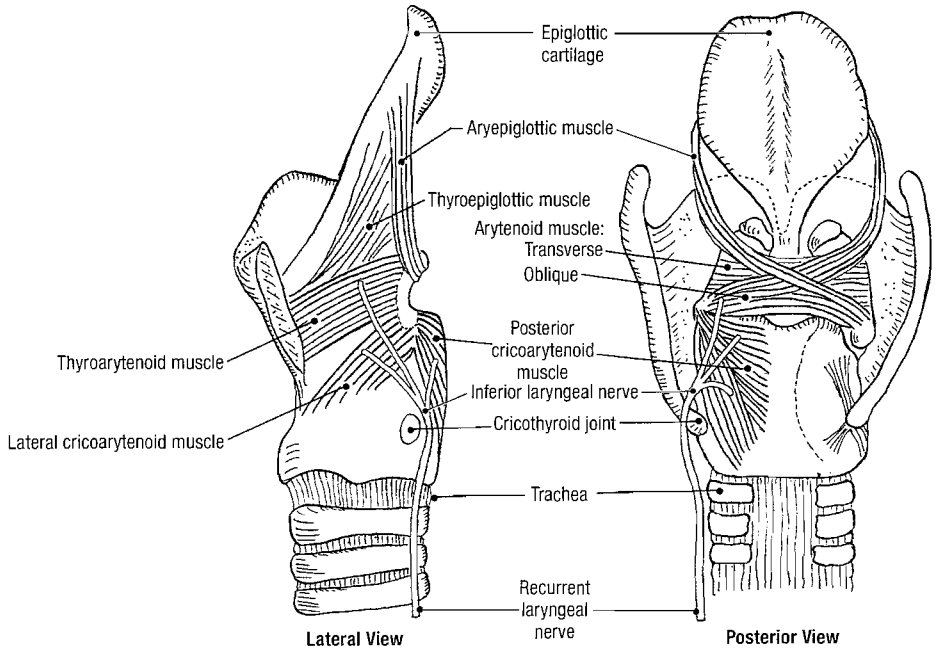


Figure 7.90. Intrinsic muscles of the larynx.

its posterior attachment is the anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage. The thyroarytenoid muscle tilts the arytenoid cartilage anteriorly, relaxing the vocal fold.

12. The **vocalis muscle** is formed by the medial fibers of the thyroarytenoid muscle. The vocalis muscle is attached to the vocal ligament and it modifies the tension in localized parts of the vocal fold, modulating pitch. The vocalis muscle cannot be seen in dissection.
13. Other delicate muscles (thyroepiglottic muscle and aryepiglottic muscle) are found superior to the thyroarytenoid muscle. Do not attempt to dissect them.
14. Observe the vocal folds from a superior view. The interval between the vocal folds is called the **rima glottidis**. The rima glottidis and the vocal folds are collectively called the **glottis**.
15. Review the function of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx. **The posterior cricoarytenoid muscle is the only muscle that opens the rima glottidis.** The cricothyroid muscle tilts the thyroid cartilage anteriorly and tenses the vocal fold (higher pitch of voice). The thyroarytenoid muscle tilts the thyroid cartilage posteriorly and relaxes the vocal fold (lower pitch of voice).

CLINICAL CORRELATION

Glottis

Laryngospasm is a spasmodic closure of the glottis and it is life threatening. Spasm of the intrinsic laryngeal muscles that close the glottis may be produced by irritating chemicals and sometimes as a side effect of medications.

The vocal folds can be readily visualized and inspected with the aid of a mirror (indirect laryngoscopy) or with a laryngoscope (direct laryngoscopy). Persistent hoarseness is an indication for laryngoscopy. Persistent hoarseness may be caused by changes of the vocal folds or it may indicate that the recurrent laryngeal nerve is compressed in the thorax or neck.

INTERIOR OF THE LARYNX [G 781; N 59; R 159; C 562]

1. Use scissors to cut the arytenoid muscle, lamina of the cricoid cartilage, and trachea in the median plane. In addition, cut the arch of the cricoid cartilage in the anterior midline.
2. Open the larynx and observe that the **laryngeal cavity** has three parts (Fig. 7.91):
   - **Vestibule** – superior to the vestibular folds
   - **Ventricle** – the depression between the vestibular fold and the vocal fold
   - **Infraglottic cavity** – inferior to the vocal folds and continuous with the trachea
3. Examine the **epiglottis** and note that it moves posteriorly during swallowing to close the laryngeal inlet.

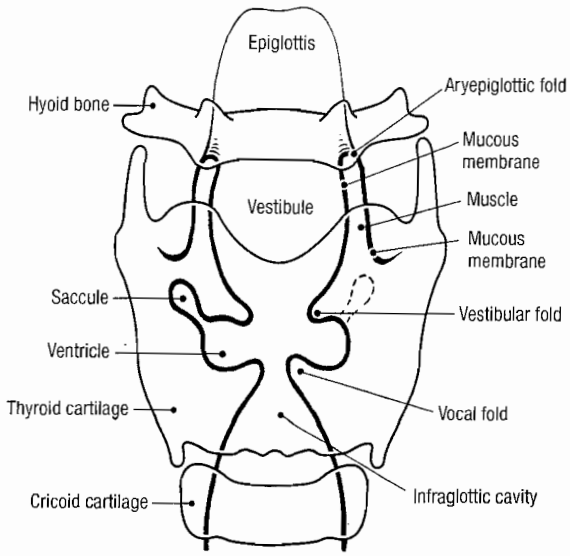


Figure 7.91. Schematic drawing of the laryngeal cavity, anterior view.

4. Inspect the mucosa that lines the interior of the larynx and identify the **vestibular fold (false vocal fold)** and the **vocal fold (true vocal fold).** The **vocal ligament** is located within the vocal fold.
5. Examine the **ventricle.** The ventricle may extend into a recess called the **saccule** (Fig. 7.91).
6. Review the **nerve supply to the larynx:**
   - **Internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve** – provides sensory innervation to the mucosa superior to the vocal folds.
   - **External branch of the superior laryngeal nerve** – innervates the cricothyroid muscle (and also the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle).
   - **Inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve** innervates all of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid muscle, and provides sensory innervation to the mucosa inferior to the vocal folds.

After you dissect . . .

Replace the head and larynx in their correct anatomical positions. Use a cross-sectional drawing of the neck and the dissected specimen to review the relationship of the larynx to the vertebral column, carotid sheaths, and other cervical viscera (Fig. 7.40). Trace the vagus nerves (right and left) into the thorax and follow the recurrent laryngeal nerves from the thorax to the larynx. Review the branches of the external carotid artery. Follow the superior thyroid artery to the thyroid gland and review the course of the superior laryngeal artery as it passes through the thyrohyoid membrane to enter the larynx. Recall that the superior laryngeal artery courses with the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. Review the course of the superior laryngeal nerve from the vagus nerve to its bifurcation. Follow the external laryngeal branch to the cricothyroid muscle. Use the dissected specimen to review the attachments and action of each intrinsic laryngeal muscle that was identified during dissection. Review the movements of the vocal folds during phonation, quiet breathing, and rapid breathing.

EAR

Before you dissect . . .

The ear is composed of three parts: external ear, middle ear, and internal ear. The external ear consists of the **auricle** and the **external acoustic meatus**. The middle ear is within the **tympanic cavity of the temporal bone**. The **ossicles** (bones of the middle ear) are located in the middle ear. The **internal ear** (vestibulocochlear organ) is the neurological part of the ear, which is contained within the petrous portion of the temporal bone.

The order of dissection will be as follows: The parts of the external ear will be examined. The facial nerve will be followed from the posterior cranial fossa into the internal acoustic meatus and the roof of the tympanic cavity will be removed. The auditory ossicles will be identified and one ossicle will be removed. The tympanic membrane will be studied. Features of the medial wall of the tympanic cavity will be examined.

TEMPORAL BONE

Refer to a skull. On the intracranial surface of the **temporal bone**, identify (Fig. 7.92): **[G 615; N 9; R 34; C 497]**

- **Groove for the greater petrosal nerve**
- **Tegmen tympani** – a portion of the floor of the middle cranial fossa
- **Internal acoustic meatus**

On the external surface of the temporal bone review the following: **[G 595; N 8; R 50; C 498]**

- **External acoustic meatus**
- **Mastoid process**
- **Stylomastoid foramen**
- **Jugular fossa**
- **Carotid canal**
- Bony portion of the **pharyngotympanic tube**

Dissection Instructions

EXTERNAL EAR [G 696; N 88; R 122; C 564]

1. Examine the **auricle** of the cadaver and identify (Fig. 7.93A):
   - **Helix** – the rim of the auricle
   - **Antihelix** – the curved prominence anterior to the helix
   - **Concha** – the deepest part of the auricle
   - **Tragus**
   - **Antitragus**
   - **Lobule of the auricle**
2. Note that the **auricular cartilage** gives the auricle its shape (Fig. 7.93B). There is no cartilage in the lobule. Palpate the auricular cartilage on yourself. By palpation, verify that the auricular cartilage is continuous with the cartilage of the external acoustic meatus.
3. The **external acoustic** meatus begins at the deepest part of the concha and ends at the tympanic membrane (a distance of about 2.5 cm in adults). The proximal 2/3 of the external acoustic meatus is bony and the distal 1/3 is cartilaginous.

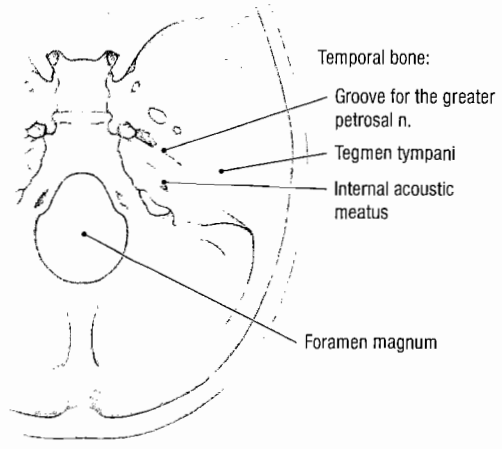


Figure 7.92. Temporal bone, superior view.

4. Note that the external acoustic meatus is S-shaped, first curving posterosuperiorly and then anteroinferiorly. The external acoustic meatus is straightened for examination by pulling the auricle upward, outward, and backward.
5. Study an illustration of the external surface of the tympanic membrane and relate its surface features to the structures that lie in the middle ear. **[G 699; N 88; R 124; C 567]**

MIDDLE EAR [G 707; N 92; R 128; C 574]

1. If the dura mater is still present in the middle cranial fossa, peel it off of the superior surface of the temporal bone. Start at the superior border of the petrous part of the temporal bone and peel the dura mater in an anterior direction.
2. The **tympanic cavity** is an air-filled space within the temporal bone. It is separated from the external acoustic meatus by the **tympanic membrane**.
3. Refer to a schematic illustration of the middle ear and preview the features of the **walls of the tympanic cavity** (Fig. 7.94): **[G 701-703; N 87; R 120; C 566]**
   - **Lateral** – the **tympanic membrane**
   - **Posterior** – the **aditus** (L., *aditus*, inlet or access), an opening into the **mastoid air cells**

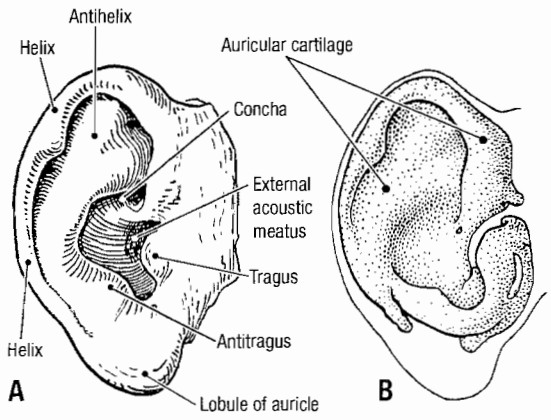


Figure 7.93. A. External ear and **B.** auricular cartilage.

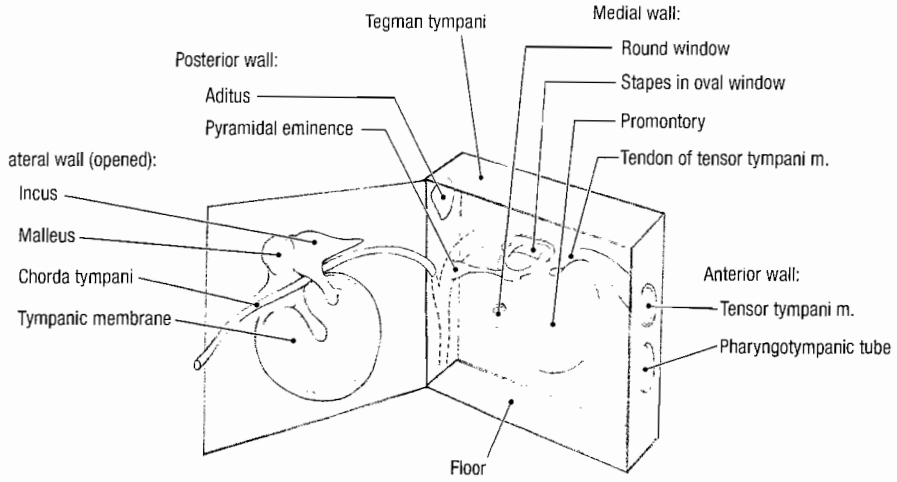


Figure 7.94. Schematic drawing of the walls of the tympanic cavity. Right ear in lateral view with the lateral wall opened.

- **Medial** – the **promontory** and **oval window (fenestra vestibuli)** containing the base (footplate) of the **stapes**
- **Anterior** – the opening of the **pharyngotympanic tube**
- **Superior** – tegmen tympani
- **Inferior** – the floor of the tympanic cavity, which is closely related to the **jugular fossa** and the **jugular bulb**

4. If a decalcified temporal bone is available, make the cuts with a scalpel. If only your cadaver specimen is available, the temporal bone must be cut with a chisel and bone cutters. *Wear eye protection for all steps that require bone to be cut.* Perform this dissection on one side only.
5. In the **posterior cranial fossa**, identify the **facial nerve (VII)** and the **vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)** as they enter the internal acoustic meatus (Fig. 7.95).
6. Remove the roof of the internal acoustic meatus and follow the course of the **facial** and **vestibulocochlear nerves**. Remain superior to the nerves when removing bone. **[G 707; N 89; C 575]**
7. Identify the **geniculate ganglion** and the origin of the **greater petrosal nerve** (Fig. 7.95). The greater petrosal nerve runs in the groove for the greater petrosal nerve and exits the middle cranial fossa by passing into the foramen lacerum. The greater petrosal nerve joins the deep petrosal nerve to form the **nerve of the pterygoid canal**. The greater petrosal nerve carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the pterygopalatine ganglion.
8. The **lesser petrosal nerve** runs a course that is parallel and lateral to the greater petrosal nerve (Fig. 7.95). The lesser petrosal nerve exits the cranial cavity by passing through the foramen ovale or a tiny foramen just posterior to the foramen ovale. The lesser petrosal nerve carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the otic ganglion.
9. Observe that the facial nerve turns posteriorly at the geniculate ganglion, travels a short distance in a posterolateral direction, then turns inferiorly. Do not attempt to follow the facial nerve further. Use an illustration to note that the facial nerve passes posterior to

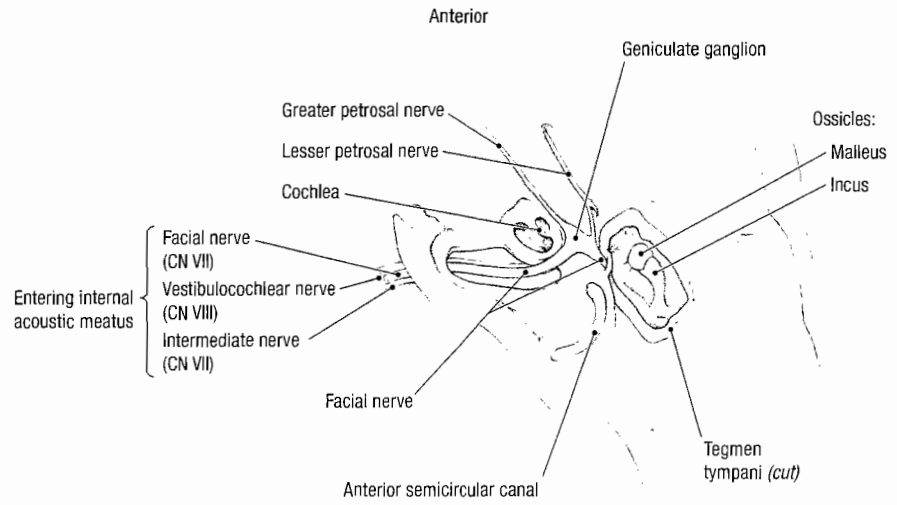


Figure 7.95. Middle ear following dissection, right side, superior view.

the tympanic cavity within the temporal bone and exits the skull at the stylomastoid foramen.

10. The **cochlea** is anterior to the internal acoustic meatus in the angle formed by the facial nerve, the geniculate ganglion and the greater petrosal nerve. In the dissected specimen the cochlea may be seen as a series of openings in the bone.
11. Remove the **tegmen tympani**. Observe the three **auditory ossicles** within the tympanic cavity (Fig. 7.95). Note that the **malleus** is attached to the tympanic membrane, the **incus** occupies an intermediate position, and the **stapes** is the most medial of the auditory ossicles. The malleus and incus are easily seen from the superior view. The stapes is located more inferiorly, making observation difficult.
12. Use forceps to remove the incus. Leave the malleus attached to the tympanic membrane.
13. On the lateral wall of the tympanic cavity, identify the **tympanic membrane** and the **chorda tympani.** The chorda tympani crosses the handle of the malleus and passes between the malleus and the incus. **[G 703; N 89; R 124; C 569]**
14. On the medial wall of the tympanic cavity, identify (Fig. 7.94): **[G 702; N 89; R 124; C 570]**
    - **Promontory** – an elevation on the medial wall
    - **Stapes** – still attached to the **vestibular window**. Look for the **stapedius tendon,** about 1 mm long, passing from the pyramidal eminence to the stapes.
    - **Round window (fenestra cochleae)** – posteroinferior to the promontory
    - **Tensor tympani muscle** – crosses the tympanic cavity from the medial wall to the superior part of the handle of the malleus.
15. Note that the tympanic cavity and its associated recesses and air cells are covered with mucous membrane. The **glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)** innervates the mucous membrane of the tympanic cavity.

INTERNAL EAR [G 708; N 91; R 127; C 575]

The vestibulocochlear organ is best seen in sectioned histological material. If you wish to dissect the internal ear, utilize a decalcified temporal bone. Refer to appropriate atlas illustrations and use a single-edge razor blade to cut thin slices of the temporal bone. This procedure will expose the canals, chambers, and nerve pathways of the internal ear. A dissecting microscope should be used to visualize these structures.

After you dissect . . .

Use an illustration to review the external appearance of the tympanic membrane. Relate the tympanic membrane to the handle of the malleus and the chorda tympani. Review the course of the facial nerve from the internal acoustic meatus to the facial muscles. Review the course of the greater petrosal nerve from the geniculate ganglion to the pterygopalatine ganglion. Summarize the distribution of the postganglionic axons that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion. Review the course of the special sensory fibers contained in the chorda tympani beginning at the tongue and ending at the internal acoustic meatus. Where are the cell bodies for these sensory axons located? Review the course of the preganglionic parasympathetic axons that synapse in the submandibular ganglion. Review the distribution of the postganglionic axons that arise from the submandibular ganglion. Review all branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve, including those that give rise to the lesser petrosal nerve. Review the course of the lesser petrosal nerve from the tympanic cavity to the otic ganglion. Review the distribution of the postganglionic parasympathetic axons that arise in the otic ganglion.

INDEX

Page numbers in *italics* indicate figure.

C

D

E

F

G

H

R

S

T

U

V

W

Z